

## TITLE

Monocyclic Or Bicyclic Carbocycles And Heterocycles As  
Factor Xa Inhibitors

## 5 CROSS-REFERENCE TO RELATED APPLICATIONS

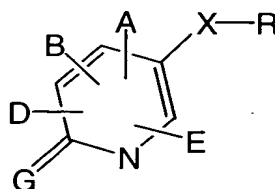
This application is a Divisional of U.S. Ser. No.  
10/003,125, filed October 29, 2001, now allowed, which in  
turn claims the priority benefit of U.S. Provisional  
Application No. 60/246,107, filed November 6, 2000, and  
10 Provisional Application No. 60/313,552, filed August 20,  
2001, all of which are expressly incorporated fully  
herein by reference.

## FIELD OF THE INVENTION

15 This invention relates generally to monocyclic or  
bicyclic carbocycles and heterocycles, which are  
inhibitors of trypsin-like serine protease enzymes,  
especially factor Xa, pharmaceutical compositions  
containing the same, and methods of using the same as  
20 anticoagulant agents for treatment and prevention of  
thromboembolic disorders.

## BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

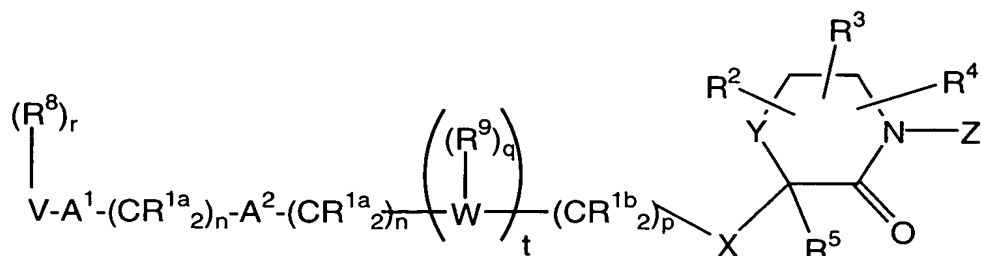
U.S. Patent No. 5,032,602 shows 2-pyridones of the  
25 following formula.



These compounds are inhibitors of HMG-CoA reductase.  
These compounds are not described as being useful for  
inhibiting factor Xa and are not considered to be part of  
30 the present invention.

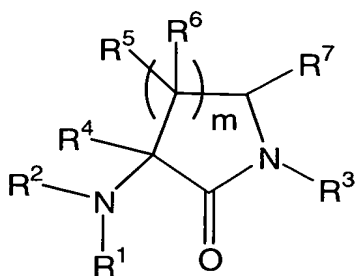
WO97/36900 describes inhibitors of farnesyl-protein  
transferase of the formula.





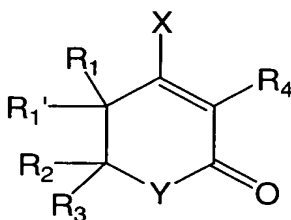
WO97/36900 does not consider inhibition of factor Xa however. The compounds of WO97/36900 are not considered to be part of the present invention.

- 5 WO99/31506 and WO99/31507 describe solution phase syntheses of lactams of the formula.



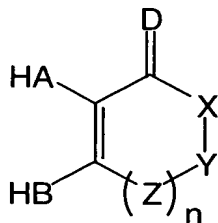
The lactams described in WO99/31506 and WO99/31507 are not considered to be part of the present invention.

- 10 WO95/14012 illustrates protease inhibitors of the formula.



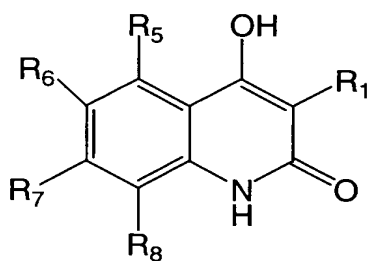
- This formula represents pyrones when Y is unsubstituted or substituted nitrogen. However, the compounds of  
15 WO95/14012 are not considered to be part of the present invention.

EP 0,908,764 depicts photographic developers of the formula below.



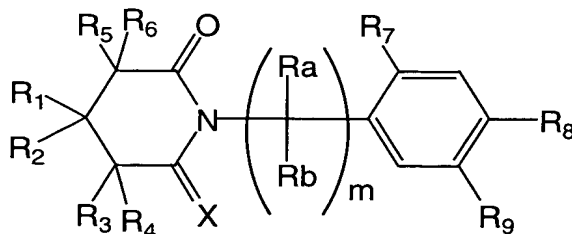
Careful selection of variables can lead one to pyrones. But, the compounds of EP 0,908,764 are not considered to be part of the present invention.

5 U.S. Patent No. 5,252,584 shows hydroxyquinolones of the following formula.



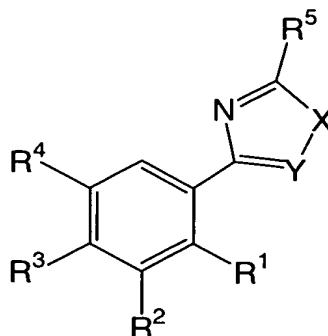
$R^1$  can be a substituted pyrone. These compounds are not described as being useful for inhibiting factor Xa and are not considered to be part of the present invention.

EP 0,454,444 describes glutarimide derivatives of the following formula.



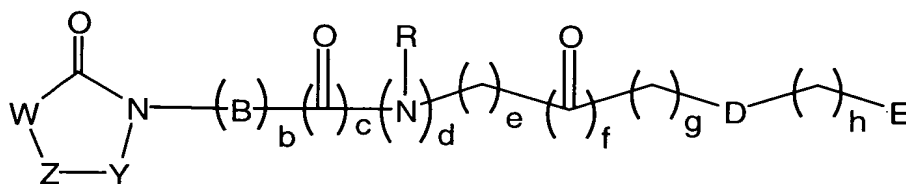
X can be O,  $R_1$  can be an alkyl, alkoxy, or halo-substituted benzyl, and  $R_9$  can be a cyclic moiety. These compounds are indicated to be herbicides. The compounds of EP 0,454,444 are not considered to be part of the present invention.

WO99/42455 illustrates antiviral agents of the formula.



R<sup>1</sup> can potentially be a cyclic amide substituted by an aryl amine. The ring containing X and Y is a 5 or 6-membered heteroaromatic ring. The compounds shown in  
 5 WO99/42455 are not considered to be part of the present invention.

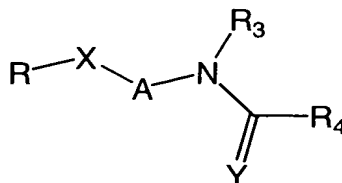
U.S. Patent No. 5,998,447 shows heterocycles of the following formula.



10

B can be phenylene; W can be substituted phenylalkylene; c, d, e, f, g, and h can all be 0; and, E can be tetrazole. These compounds are inhibitors of leucocyte adhesion and/or antagonists of VLA-4. Tetrazole  
 15 substituted compounds of this sort are not considered to be part of the present invention.

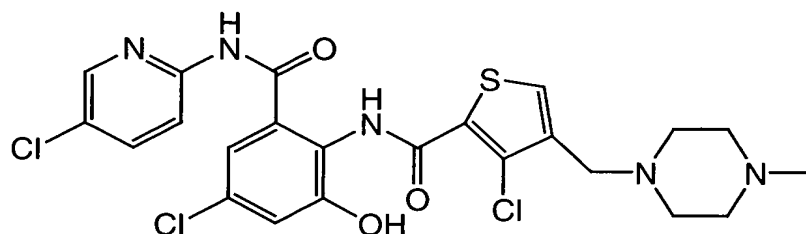
EP 0,522,606 depicts pyridine derivatives of the following formula.



20 R can be substituted pyridine, X can be O, A is a carbon atom that can be part of a ring (i.e., a 1,1-substituted ring), Y can be O, and R<sub>3</sub> and R<sub>4</sub> can combine for form a

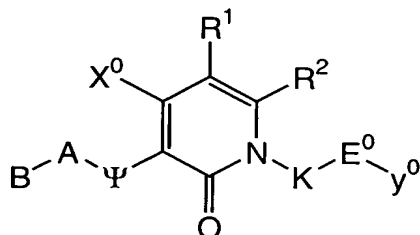
cyclic lactam containing an optionally substituted aralkyl. Compounds of this sort are not considered to be part of the present invention.

- 5 WO99/32477 illustrates Factor Xa inhibitors containing at least three aryl or heterocyclic groups separated by two linking groups, an example of which is shown below.



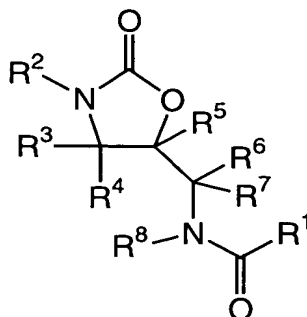
- 10 Dual linker compounds of this sort are not considered to be part of the present invention.

WO00/69826, WO00/69832, WO00/69833, and WO00/69834 relate to coagulation cascade inhibitors that are 1,3-disubstituted pyridones of the formula shown below, or aza-substituted derivatives.



- 15 B and Y<sup>0</sup> are preferably cyclic moieties. A, Ψ, K, and E<sup>0</sup> are preferably linkers. Pyridones and aza-pyridones of this sort are not considered to be part of the present invention.

- 20 WO01/47919 discloses factor Xa inhibitors that are substituted oxazolidinones of the formula shown below:



R<sup>1</sup> is thienyl or benzothienyl. Oxazolidinones of this sort are not considered to be part of the present invention.

5        Activated factor Xa, whose major practical role is the generation of thrombin by the limited proteolysis of prothrombin, holds a central position that links the intrinsic and extrinsic activation mechanisms in the final common pathway of blood coagulation. The generation  
10 of thrombin, the final serine protease in the pathway to generate a fibrin clot, from its precursor is amplified by formation of prothrombinase complex (factor Xa, factor V, Ca<sup>2+</sup> and phospholipid). Since it is calculated that one molecule of factor Xa can generate 138 molecules of  
15 thrombin (Elodi, S., Varadi, K.: Optimization of conditions for the catalytic effect of the factor IXa-factor VIII Complex: Probable role of the complex in the amplification of blood coagulation. *Thromb. Res.* **1979**, 15, 617-629), inhibition of factor Xa may be more  
20 efficient than inactivation of thrombin in interrupting the blood coagulation system.

Therefore, efficacious and specific inhibitors of factor Xa are needed as potentially valuable therapeutic agents for the treatment of thromboembolic disorders. It  
25 is thus desirable to discover new factor Xa inhibitors.

#### SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

Accordingly, one object of the present invention is to provide novel monocyclic or bicyclic carbocycles and

heterocycles which are useful as factor Xa inhibitors or pharmaceutically acceptable salts or prodrugs thereof.

It is another object of the present invention to provide pharmaceutical compositions comprising a  
5 pharmaceutically acceptable carrier and a therapeutically effective amount of at least one of the compounds of the present invention or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug form thereof.

It is another object of the present invention to  
10 provide a method for treating thromboembolic disorders comprising administering to a host in need of such treatment a therapeutically effective amount of at least one of the compounds of the present invention or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug form thereof.

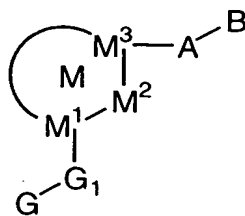
15 It is another object of the present invention to provide novel compounds for use in therapy.

It is another object of the present invention to provide the use of novel compounds for the manufacture of a medicament for the treatment of a thromboembolic  
20 disorder.

These and other objects, which will become apparent during the following detailed description, have been achieved by the inventors' discovery that the presently claimed monocyclic or bicyclic carbocycles and  
25 heterocycles, or pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug forms thereof, are effective factor Xa inhibitors.

#### DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF PREFERRED EMBODIMENTS

30 [1] Thus, in an embodiment, the present invention provides a novel compound of Formula I:



I

or a stereoisomer or pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, wherein;

5

ring M, including M<sup>1</sup>, M<sup>2</sup>, and M<sup>3</sup>, is a 5, 6, or 7 membered non-aromatic carbocycle or 5, 6, or 7 membered non-aromatic heterocycle, consisting of: carbon atoms, 0-3 N, and 0-1 heteroatoms selected from O and S(O)<sub>p</sub>, provided that ring M consists of a total of 0-3 O, S(O)<sub>p</sub> and N;

10

alternatively, ring M is an aromatic heterocycle selected from 2-pyridinone, 3-pyridazinone, 4-pyrimidinone, 2-pyrazinone, pyrimidine-2,4-dione, pyridazine-3,6-dione, 1H-quinolin-2-one, 1,4-dihydro-pyrrolo[3,2-b]pyridin-5-one and 1,4-dihydro-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridin-5-one;

15

ring M is substituted with 0-2 R<sup>1a</sup>, 0-1 Z, and 0-2 carbonyl groups, and, comprises: 0-2 double bonds;

20

provided that ring M is other than an isoxazoline, isothiazoline, pyrazoline, triazoline, tetrazoline, 3-phenyl-substituted pyrrolidine, 3-phenyl-substituted pyrroline, 3-phenyl-substituted isoxazolidine, or 4-phenyl-substituted isoxazolidine;

25

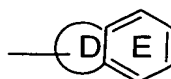
G is a group of formula IIa or IIb:

30





IIa



IIb

$G_1$  is selected from  $(CR^3aR^3b)_{1-5}$ ,

- 5  $(CR^3aR^3b)_{0-2}CR^3a=CR^3a(CR^3aR^3b)_{0-2}$ ,  
 $(CR^3aR^3b)_{0-2}C\equiv C(CR^3aR^3b)_{0-2}$ ,  $(CR^3aR^3b)_uC(O)(CR^3aR^3b)_w$ ,  
 $(CR^3aR^3b)_uC(O)O(CR^3aR^3b)_w$ ,  $(CR^3aR^3b)_uOC(O)(CR^3aR^3b)_w$ ,  
 $(CR^3aR^3b)_uO(CR^3aR^3b)_w$ ,  $(CR^3aR^3b)_uNR^3e(CR^3aR^3b)_w$ ,  
 $(CR^3aR^3b)_uC(O)NR^3(CR^3aR^3b)_w$ ,  
10  $(CR^3aR^3b)_uNR^3C(O)(CR^3aR^3b)_w$ ,  
 $(CR^3aR^3b)_uOC(O)NR^3(CR^3aR^3b)_w$ ,  
 $(CR^3aR^3b)_uNR^3C(O)O(CR^3aR^3b)_w$ ,  
 $(CR^3aR^3b)_uNR^3C(O)NR^3(CR^3aR^3b)_w$ ,  
 $(CR^3aR^3b)_uNR^3C(S)NR^3(CR^3aR^3b)_w$ ,  $(CR^3aR^3b)_uS(CR^3aR^3b)_w$ ,  
15  $(CR^3aR^3b)_uS(O)(CR^3aR^3b)_w$ ,  $(CR^3aR^3b)_uS(O)_2(CR^3aR^3b)_w$ ,  
 $(CR^3aR^3b)_uS(O)NR^3(CR^3aR^3b)_w$ ,  
 $(CR^3aR^3b)_uNR^3S(O)_2(CR^3aR^3b)_w$ ,  
 $(CR^3aR^3b)_uS(O)_2NR^3(CR^3aR^3b)_w$ ,  
 $(CR^3aR^3b)_uNR^3S(O)_2NR^3(CR^3aR^3b)_w$ , and  
20  $(CR^3aR^3b)_uS(O)_2NR^3C(O)NR^3(CR^3aR^3b)_w$ , wherein  $u + w$   
total 0, 1, 2, 3, or 4, provided that  $G_1$  does not  
form a N-N or N-O bond with either group to which it  
is attached;

25 ring D, including the two atoms of Ring E to which it is  
attached, is a 5-6 membered non-aromatic ring  
consisting of carbon atoms, 0-1 double bonds, and 0-  
2 N, and D is substituted with 0-2 R;

30 alternatively, ring D, including the two atoms of Ring E  
to which it is attached, is a 5-6 membered aromatic

system consisting of carbon atoms and 0-2 heteroatoms selected from the group consisting of N, O, and S(O)<sub>p</sub>, and D is substituted with 0-2 R;

- 5 E is selected from phenyl, pyridyl, pyrimidyl, pyrazinyl, and pyridazinyl, and is substituted with 0-2 R;

R is selected from C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl, F, Cl, Br, I, OH, OCH<sub>3</sub>, OCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>, OCH(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>, OCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>, CN, C(=NR<sup>8</sup>)NR<sup>7</sup>R<sup>9</sup>,  
 10 NHC(=NR<sup>8</sup>)NR<sup>7</sup>R<sup>9</sup>, NR<sup>8</sup>CH(=NR<sup>7</sup>), NH<sub>2</sub>, NH(C<sub>1-3</sub> alkyl), N(C<sub>1-3</sub> alkyl)<sub>2</sub>, C(=NH)NH<sub>2</sub>, CH<sub>2</sub>NH<sub>2</sub>, CH<sub>2</sub>NH(C<sub>1-3</sub> alkyl), CH<sub>2</sub>N(C<sub>1-3</sub> alkyl)<sub>2</sub>, CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>NH<sub>2</sub>, CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>NH(C<sub>1-3</sub> alkyl), CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>N(C<sub>1-3</sub> alkyl)<sub>2</sub>, (CR<sup>8</sup>R<sup>9</sup>)<sub>t</sub>C(O)H, (CR<sup>8</sup>R<sup>9</sup>)<sub>t</sub>C(O)R<sup>2c</sup>, (CR<sup>8</sup>R<sup>9</sup>)<sub>t</sub>NR<sup>7</sup>R<sup>8</sup>, (CR<sup>8</sup>R<sup>9</sup>)<sub>t</sub>C(O)NR<sup>7</sup>R<sup>8</sup>, (CR<sup>8</sup>R<sup>9</sup>)<sub>t</sub>OR<sup>3a</sup>,  
 15 (CR<sup>8</sup>R<sup>9</sup>)<sub>t</sub>NR<sup>7</sup>C(O)R<sup>7</sup>, (CR<sup>8</sup>R<sup>9</sup>)<sub>t</sub>S(O)<sub>p</sub>NR<sup>7</sup>R<sup>8</sup>, (CR<sup>8</sup>R<sup>9</sup>)<sub>t</sub>NR<sup>7</sup>S(O)<sub>p</sub>R<sup>3f</sup>, (CR<sup>8</sup>R<sup>9</sup>)<sub>t</sub>S(O)R<sup>3c</sup>, (CR<sup>8</sup>R<sup>9</sup>)<sub>t</sub>S(O)<sub>2</sub>R<sup>3c</sup>, and OCF<sub>3</sub>;

alternatively, the bridging portion of ring D is absent,  
 20 and ring E is selected from phenyl, thienyl, pyridyl, pyrimidyl, pyrazinyl, and pyridazinyl, and ring E is substituted with R<sup>a</sup> and R<sup>b</sup>;

alternatively, ring E is substituted with a 5-6 membered  
 25 aromatic heterocycle consisting of: carbon atoms and 1-4 heteroatoms selected from the group consisting of N, O, and S(O)<sub>p</sub>, and said aromatic heterocycle is substituted with R<sup>a</sup> and R<sup>b</sup>;

30 alternatively, ring E is substituted with a 5-6 membered non-aromatic heterocycle consisting of: carbon atoms and 1-4 heteroatoms selected from the group consisting of N, O, and S(O)<sub>p</sub>, and said non-aromatic

heterocycle is substituted with  $R^a$  and  $R^b$ , 0-2 carbonyl groups and containing 0-2 double bonds;

$R^a$  and  $R^b$ , at each occurrence, are independently selected  
 5 from H,  $C_{1-4}$  alkyl, F, Cl, Br, I, OH,  $OCH_3$ ,  $OCH_2CH_3$ ,  
 $OCH(CH_3)_2$ ,  $OCH_2CH_2CH_3$ , CN,  $C(=NR^8)NR^7R^9$ ,  
 $NHC(=NR^8)NR^7R^9$ ,  $NR^8CH(=NR^7)$ ,  $NH_2$ ,  $NH(C_{1-3} \text{ alkyl})$ ,  
 $N(C_{1-3} \text{ alkyl})_2$ ,  $C(=NH)NH_2$ ,  $CH_2NH_2$ ,  $CH_2NH(C_{1-3} \text{ alkyl})$ ,  
 $CH_2N(C_{1-3} \text{ alkyl})_2$ ,  $CH_2CH_2NH_2$ ,  $CH_2CH_2NH(C_{1-3} \text{ alkyl})$ ,  
 10  $CH_2CH_2N(C_{1-3} \text{ alkyl})_2$ ,  $(CR^8R^9)_tC(O)H$ ,  $(CR^8R^9)_tC(O)R^{2c}$ ,  
 $(CR^8R^9)_tNR^7R^8$ ,  $(CR^8R^9)_tC(O)NR^7R^8$ ,  $(CR^8R^9)_tOR^{3a}$ ,  
 $(CR^8R^9)_tNR^7C(O)R^{3f}$ ,  $(CR^8R^9)_tS(O)_pNR^7R^8$ ,  
 $(CR^8R^9)_tNR^7S(O)_pR^{3f}$ ,  $(CR^8R^9)_tS(O)R^{3c}$ ,  $(CR^8R^9)_tS(O)_2R^{3c}$ ,  
 and  $OCF_3$ ;

15 alternatively,  $R^a$  and  $R^b$  combine to form methylenedioxy or ethylenedioxy;

alternatively, the bridging portion of ring D is absent,  
 20 and ring E is selected from pyrrolyl, pyrazolyl, imidazolyl, isoxazolyl, oxazolyl, triazolyl, thienyl, and thiazolyl, and ring E is substituted with 0-2  $R^c$ ;

25  $R^c$  is selected from  $C_{1-4}$  alkyl, F, Cl, Br, I, OH,  $OCH_3$ ,  
 $OCH_2CH_3$ ,  $OCH(CH_3)_2$ ,  $OCH_2CH_2CH_3$ , CN,  $C(=NR^8)NR^7R^9$ ,  
 $NHC(=NR^8)NR^7R^9$ ,  $NR^8CH(=NR^7)$ ,  $NH_2$ ,  $NH(C_{1-3} \text{ alkyl})$ ,  
 $N(C_{1-3} \text{ alkyl})_2$ ,  $C(=NH)NH_2$ ,  $CH_2NH_2$ ,  $CH_2NH(C_{1-3} \text{ alkyl})$ ,  
 $CH_2N(C_{1-3} \text{ alkyl})_2$ ,  $CH_2CH_2NH_2$ ,  $CH_2CH_2NH(C_{1-3} \text{ alkyl})$ ,  
 30  $CH_2CH_2N(C_{1-3} \text{ alkyl})_2$ ,  $(CR^8R^9)_tNR^7R^8$ ,  $(CR^8R^9)_tC(O)NR^7R^8$ ,  
 $(CR^8R^9)_tC(O)H$ ,  $(CR^8R^9)_tC(O)R^{2c}$ ,  $(CR^8R^9)_tNR^7C(O)R^7$ ,

$(\text{CR}^8\text{R}^9)_t\text{S}(\text{O})_p\text{NR}^7\text{R}^8$ ,  $(\text{CR}^8\text{R}^9)_t\text{NR}^7\text{S}(\text{O})_p\text{R}^{3f}$ ,  
 $(\text{CR}^8\text{R}^9)_t\text{S}(\text{O})\text{R}^{3f}$ ,  $(\text{CR}^8\text{R}^9)_t\text{S}(\text{O})_2\text{R}^{3f}$ , and  $\text{OCF}_3$ ;

A is selected from:

- 5  $\text{C}_{3-10}$  carbocyclic residue substituted with 0-2  $\text{R}^4$ ,  
 and  
 5-12 membered heterocyclic system containing from  
 1-4 heteroatoms selected from the group consisting  
 of N, O, and S substituted with 0-2  $\text{R}^4$ ;

10

provided that B and ring M are attached to different  
 atoms on A;

B is selected from: Y and X-Y;

15

X is selected from  $-(\text{CR}^2\text{R}^{2a})_{1-4}-$ ,  $-\text{CR}^2(\text{CR}^2\text{R}^{2b})(\text{CH}_2)_t-$ ,  
 $-\text{C}(\text{O})-$ ,  $-\text{C}(=\text{NR}^{1c})-$ ,  $-\text{CR}^2(\text{NR}^{1c}\text{R}^2)-$ ,  $-\text{CR}^2(\text{OR}^2)-$ ,  
 $-\text{CR}^2(\text{SR}^2)-$ ,  $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{CR}^2\text{R}^{2a}-$ ,  $-\text{CR}^2\text{R}^{2a}\text{C}(\text{O})-$ ,  $-\text{S}-$ ,  $-\text{S}(\text{O})-$ ,  
 $-\text{S}(\text{O})_2-$ ,  $-\text{SCR}^2\text{R}^{2a}-$ ,  $-\text{S}(\text{O})\text{CR}^2\text{R}^{2a}-$ ,  $-\text{S}(\text{O})_2\text{CR}^2\text{R}^{2a}-$ ,  
 20  $-\text{CR}^2\text{R}^{2a}\text{S}-$ ,  $-\text{CR}^2\text{R}^{2a}\text{S}(\text{O})-$ ,  $-\text{CR}^2\text{R}^{2a}\text{S}(\text{O})_2-$ ,  $-\text{S}(\text{O})_2\text{NR}^2-$ ,  
 $-\text{NR}^2\text{S}(\text{O})_2-$ ,  $-\text{NR}^2\text{S}(\text{O})_2\text{CR}^2\text{R}^{2a}-$ ,  $-\text{CR}^2\text{R}^{2a}\text{S}(\text{O})_2\text{NR}^2-$ ,  
 $-\text{NR}^2\text{S}(\text{O})_2\text{NR}^2-$ ,  $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NR}^2-$ ,  $-\text{NR}^2\text{C}(\text{O})-$ ,  $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NR}^2\text{CR}^2\text{R}^{2a}-$ ,  
 $-\text{NR}^2\text{C}(\text{O})\text{CR}^2\text{R}^{2a}-$ ,  $-\text{CR}^2\text{R}^{2a}\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NR}^2-$ ,  $-\text{CR}^2\text{R}^{2a}\text{NR}^2\text{C}(\text{O})-$ ,  
 $-\text{NR}^2\text{C}(\text{O})\text{O}-$ ,  $-\text{OC}(\text{O})\text{NR}^2-$ ,  $-\text{NR}^2\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NR}^2-$ ,  $-\text{NR}^2-$ ,  
 25  $-\text{NR}^2\text{CR}^2\text{R}^{2a}-$ ,  $-\text{CR}^2\text{R}^{2a}\text{NR}^2-$ , O,  $-\text{CR}^2\text{R}^{2a}\text{O}-$ , and  $-\text{OCR}^2\text{R}^{2a}-$ ;

Y is selected from:

- $-(\text{CH}_2)_r\text{NR}^2\text{R}^{2a}$ , provided that X-Y do not form a N-N,  
 O-N, or S-N bond,  
 30  $\text{C}_{3-10}$  carbocyclic residue substituted with 0-2  $\text{R}^{4a}$ ,  
 and

5-10 membered heterocyclic system containing from 1-4 heteroatoms selected from the group consisting of N, O, and S substituted with 0-2  $R^{4a}$ ;

5 provided that B and Y are other than tetrazolyl;

Z is selected from H,  $S(O)_2NHR^3$ ,  $C(O)R^3$ ,  $C(O)NHR^3$ ,  
 $C(O)OR^{3f}$ ,  $S(O)R^{3f}$ ,  $S(O)_2R^{3f}$ ,  
 $C_{1-6}$  alkyl substituted with 0-2  $R^{1a}$ ;  
10  $C_{2-6}$  alkenyl substituted with 0-2  $R^{1a}$ ;  
 $C_{2-6}$  alkynyl substituted with 0-2  $R^{1a}$ ;  
cycloalkyl( $C_{0-4}$  alkyl)- substituted with 0-3  $R^{1a}$ ;  
heterocyclyl( $C_{0-4}$  alkyl)- substituted with 0-3  $R^{1a}$ ;  
aryl( $C_{0-4}$  alkyl)- substituted with 0-3  $R^{1a}$ ;  
15 heteroaryl( $C_{0-4}$  alkyl)- substituted with 0-3  $R^{1a}$ ;

$R^{1a}$ , is selected from H,  $-(CH_2)_r-R^{1b}$ ,  $-CH=CH-R^{1b}$ ,  $NCH_2R^{1c}$ ,  
 $OCH_2R^{1c}$ ,  $S(O)_pCH_2R^{1c}$ ,  $NH(CH_2)_2(CH_2)_tR^{1b}$ ,  
 $O(CH_2)_2(CH_2)_tR^{1b}$ , and  $S(CH_2)_2(CH_2)_tR^{1b}$ , provided that  
20  $R^{1a}$  forms other than an N-halo, N-N, N-S, N-O, or N-CN bond with the group to which it is attached;

alternatively, when two  $R^{1a}$ s are attached to adjacent atoms, together with the atoms to which they are  
25 attached they form a 5-7 membered ring consisting of: carbon atoms and 0-2 heteroatoms selected from the group consisting of N, O, and  $S(O)_p$ , this ring being substituted with 0-2  $R^{4b}$  and 0-1 Z, comprising: 0-3 double bonds;

30  $R^{1b}$  is selected from H,  $C_{1-3}$  alkyl, F, Cl, Br, I, CN, CHO,  $(CF_2)_rCF_3$ ,  $(CH_2)_rOR^2$ ,  $NR^2R^{2a}$ ,  $C(O)R^{2c}$ ,  $C(O)OR^2$ ,

$OC(O)R^2$ ,  $(CF_2)_rCO_2R^{2a}$ ,  $S(O)_pR^{2b}$ ,  $NR^2(CH_2)_rOR^2$ ,  
 $C(=NR^{2c})NR^2R^{2a}$ ,  $NR^2C(O)R^{2b}$ ,  $NR^2C(O)NHR^{2b}$ ,  $NR^2C(O)_2R^{2a}$ ,  
 $OC(O)NR^{2a}R^{2b}$ ,  $C(O)NR^2R^{2a}$ ,  $C(O)NR^2(CH_2)_rOR^2$ ,  $SO_2NR^2R^{2a}$ ,  
 $NR^2SO_2R^{2b}$ ,  $C_{3-10}$  carbocycle substituted with 0-2  $R^{4a}$ ,  
 5 and 5-10 membered heterocycle consisting of carbon  
 atoms and from 1-4 heteroatoms selected from the  
 group consisting of N, O, and  $S(O)_p$  substituted with  
 0-2  $R^{4a}$ , provided that  $R^{1b}$  forms other than an N-  
 halo, N-N, N-S, N-O, or N-CN bond with the group to  
 10 which it is attached;

$R^{1c}$  is selected from H,  $CH(CH_2OR^2)_2$ ,  $C(O)R^{2c}$ ,  $C(O)NR^2R^{2a}$ ,  
 $S(O)R^{2b}$ ,  $S(O)_2R^{2b}$ , and  $SO_2NR^2R^{2a}$ ;

15  $R^2$ , at each occurrence, is selected from H,  $CF_3$ ,  $C_{1-6}$   
 alkyl optionally substituted with 0-2  $R^{4b}$ , benzyl, a  
 $C_{3-10}$  carbocyclic- $(CH_2)_r$ - residue substituted with  
 0-2  $R^{4b}$ , and (5-6 membered heterocyclic system)-  
 $(CH_2)_r$ - containing from 1-4 heteroatoms selected from  
 20 the group consisting of N, O, and S substituted with  
 0-2  $R^{4b}$ ;

$R^{2a}$ , at each occurrence, is selected from H,  $CF_3$ ,  $C_{1-6}$   
 alkyl optionally substituted with 0-2  $R^{4b}$ , benzyl, a  
 25  $C_{3-10}$  carbocyclic- $(CH_2)_r$ - residue substituted with  
 0-2  $R^{4b}$ , and (5-6 membered heterocyclic system)-  
 $(CH_2)_r$ - containing from 1-4 heteroatoms selected from  
 the group consisting of N, O, and S substituted with  
 0-2  $R^{4b}$ ;

30 alternatively,  $R^2$  and  $R^{2a}$ , together with the atom to which  
 they are attached, combine to form a 5 or 6 membered  
 saturated, partially saturated or unsaturated ring

substituted with 0-2  $R^{4b}$  and containing from 0-1 additional heteroatoms selected from the group consisting of N, O, and S;

5  $R^{2b}$ , at each occurrence, is selected from  $CF_3$ ,  $C_{1-4}$  alkoxy,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl, benzyl,  $C_{3-10}$  carbocyclic- $(CH_2)_r$ - residue substituted with 0-2  $R^{4b}$ , and (5-6 membered heterocyclic system)- $(CH_2)_r$ - containing from 1-4 heteroatoms selected from the group consisting of N,  
10 O, and S substituted with 0-2  $R^{4b}$ ;

$R^{2c}$ , at each occurrence, is selected from  $CF_3$ , OH,  $C_{1-4}$  alkoxy,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl, benzyl,  $C_{3-10}$  carbocyclic- $(CH_2)_r$ - residue substituted with 0-2  $R^{4b}$ , and (5-6 membered heterocyclic system)- $(CH_2)_r$ - containing from 1-4  
15 heteroatoms selected from the group consisting of N, O, and S substituted with 0-2  $R^{4b}$ ;

$R^3$ , at each occurrence, is selected from H,  
20  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl substituted with 0-2  $R^{1a}$ ;  
 $C_{2-6}$  alkenyl substituted with 0-2  $R^{1a}$ ;  
 $C_{2-6}$  alkynyl substituted with 0-2  $R^{1a}$ ;  
cycloalkyl( $C_{0-4}$  alkyl)- substituted with 0-3  $R^{1a}$ ;  
heterocyclyl( $C_{0-4}$  alkyl)- substituted with 0-3  $R^{1a}$ ;  
25 aryl( $C_{0-4}$  alkyl)- substituted with 0-3  $R^{1a}$ ;  
heteroaryl( $C_{0-4}$  alkyl)- substituted with 0-3  $R^{1a}$ ;

$R^{3a}$  and  $R^{3b}$ , at each occurrence, are independently selected from H,  $C_{1-4}$  alkyl, phenyl, and benzyl;  
30

$R^{3c}$ , at each occurrence, is selected from  $C_{1-4}$  alkyl, phenyl, and benzyl;

R<sup>3d</sup>, at each occurrence, is selected from H and C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl;

R<sup>3e</sup>, is selected from H, S(O)<sub>2</sub>NHR<sup>3</sup>, C(O)R<sup>3</sup>, C(O)NHR<sup>3</sup>,  
 5 C(O)OR<sup>3f</sup>, S(O)R<sup>3f</sup>, S(O)<sub>2</sub>R<sup>3f</sup>,  
 C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl substituted with 0-2 R<sup>1a</sup>;  
 C<sub>2-6</sub> alkenyl substituted with 0-2 R<sup>1a</sup>;  
 C<sub>2-6</sub> alkynyl substituted with 0-2 R<sup>1a</sup>;  
 cycloalkyl(C<sub>0-4</sub> alkyl)- substituted with 0-3 R<sup>1a</sup>;  
 10 heterocyclyl(C<sub>0-4</sub> alkyl)- substituted with 0-3 R<sup>1a</sup>;  
 aryl(C<sub>0-4</sub> alkyl)- substituted with 0-3 R<sup>1a</sup>;  
 heteroaryl(C<sub>0-4</sub> alkyl)- substituted with 0-3 R<sup>1a</sup>;

R<sup>3f</sup>, at each occurrence, is selected from:  
 15 C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl substituted with 0-2 R<sup>1a</sup>;  
 C<sub>2-6</sub> alkenyl substituted with 0-2 R<sup>1a</sup>;  
 C<sub>2-6</sub> alkynyl substituted with 0-2 R<sup>1a</sup>;  
 cycloalkyl(C<sub>0-4</sub> alkyl)- substituted with 0-3 R<sup>1a</sup>;  
 heterocyclyl(C<sub>0-4</sub> alkyl)- substituted with 0-3 R<sup>1a</sup>;  
 20 aryl(C<sub>0-4</sub> alkyl)- substituted with 0-3 R<sup>1a</sup>;  
 heteroaryl(C<sub>0-4</sub> alkyl)- substituted with 0-3 R<sup>1a</sup>;

R<sup>4</sup>, at each occurrence, is selected from H, =O, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>r</sub>OR<sup>2</sup>,  
 F, Cl, Br, I, C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl, -CN, NO<sub>2</sub>, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>r</sub>NR<sup>2</sup>R<sup>2a</sup>,  
 25 (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>r</sub>C(O)R<sup>2c</sup>, NR<sup>2</sup>C(O)R<sup>2b</sup>, C(O)NR<sup>2</sup>R<sup>2a</sup>, NR<sup>2</sup>C(O)NR<sup>2</sup>R<sup>2a</sup>,  
 C(=NR<sup>2</sup>)NR<sup>2</sup>R<sup>2a</sup>, C(=NS(O)<sub>2</sub>R<sup>3f</sup>)NR<sup>2</sup>R<sup>2a</sup>, NHC(=NR<sup>2</sup>)NR<sup>2</sup>R<sup>2a</sup>,  
 C(O)NHC(=NR<sup>2</sup>)NR<sup>2</sup>R<sup>2a</sup>, SO<sub>2</sub>NR<sup>2</sup>R<sup>2a</sup>, NR<sup>2</sup>SO<sub>2</sub>NR<sup>2</sup>R<sup>2a</sup>,  
 NR<sup>2</sup>SO<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl, NR<sup>2</sup>SO<sub>2</sub>R<sup>3f</sup>, S(O)<sub>p</sub>R<sup>3f</sup>, (CF<sub>2</sub>)<sub>r</sub>CF<sub>3</sub>,  
 NCH<sub>2</sub>R<sup>1c</sup>, OCH<sub>2</sub>R<sup>1c</sup>, SCH<sub>2</sub>R<sup>1c</sup>, N(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2</sub>(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>t</sub>R<sup>1b</sup>,  
 30 O(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2</sub>(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>t</sub>R<sup>1b</sup>, S(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2</sub>(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>t</sub>R<sup>1b</sup>, and 5-6 membered  
 carbocycle substituted with 0-1 R<sup>5</sup>, and a 5-6



membered heterocycle consisting of: carbon atoms and 1-4 heteroatoms selected from the group consisting of N, O, and S(O)<sub>p</sub> substituted with 0-1 R<sup>5</sup>;

5

R<sup>4a</sup>, at each occurrence, is selected from H, =O, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>r</sub>OR<sup>2</sup>, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>r</sub>-F, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>r</sub>-Br, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>r</sub>-Cl, C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl, -CN, NO<sub>2</sub>, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>r</sub>NR<sup>2</sup>R<sup>2a</sup>, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>r</sub>C(O)R<sup>2c</sup>, NR<sup>2</sup>C(O)R<sup>2b</sup>, C(O)NR<sup>2</sup>R<sup>2a</sup>, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>r</sub>N=CHOR<sup>3</sup>, C(O)NH(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2</sub>NR<sup>2</sup>R<sup>2a</sup>,  
 10 NR<sup>2</sup>C(O)NR<sup>2</sup>R<sup>2a</sup>, C(=NR<sup>2</sup>)NR<sup>2</sup>R<sup>2a</sup>, NHC(=NR<sup>2</sup>)NR<sup>2</sup>R<sup>2a</sup>, SO<sub>2</sub>NR<sup>2</sup>R<sup>2a</sup>, NR<sup>2</sup>SO<sub>2</sub>NR<sup>2</sup>R<sup>2a</sup>, NR<sup>2</sup>SO<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl, C(O)NHSO<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl, NR<sup>2</sup>SO<sub>2</sub>R<sup>3f</sup>, S(O)<sub>p</sub>R<sup>3f</sup>, (CF<sub>2</sub>)<sub>r</sub>CF<sub>3</sub>, and 5-6 membered carbocycle substituted with 0-1 R<sup>5</sup>, and a 5-6 membered heterocycle consisting of:  
 15 carbon atoms and 1-4 heteroatoms selected from the group consisting of N, O, and S(O)<sub>p</sub> substituted with 0-1 R<sup>5</sup>;

R<sup>4b</sup>, at each occurrence, is selected from H, =O,  
 20 (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>r</sub>OR<sup>3</sup>, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>r</sub>-F, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>r</sub>-Cl, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>r</sub>-Br, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>r</sub>-I, C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>r</sub>-CN, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>r</sub>-NO<sub>2</sub>, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>r</sub>NR<sup>3</sup>R<sup>3a</sup>, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>r</sub>C(O)R<sup>3</sup>, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>r</sub>C(O)OR<sup>3c</sup>, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>r</sub>-NR<sup>3</sup>C(O)R<sup>3a</sup>, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>r</sub>-C(O)NR<sup>3</sup>R<sup>3a</sup>, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>r</sub>-NR<sup>3</sup>C(O)NR<sup>3</sup>R<sup>3a</sup>, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>r</sub>-C(=NR<sup>3</sup>)NR<sup>3</sup>R<sup>3a</sup>,  
 25 (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>r</sub>-NR<sup>3</sup>C(=NR<sup>3</sup>)NR<sup>3</sup>R<sup>3a</sup>, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>r</sub>-SO<sub>2</sub>NR<sup>3</sup>R<sup>3a</sup>, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>r</sub>-NR<sup>3</sup>SO<sub>2</sub>NR<sup>3</sup>R<sup>3a</sup>, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>r</sub>-NR<sup>3</sup>SO<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>r</sub>-NR<sup>3</sup>SO<sub>2</sub>CF<sub>3</sub>, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>r</sub>-NR<sup>3</sup>SO<sub>2</sub>-phenyl, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>r</sub>-S(O)<sub>p</sub>CF<sub>3</sub>, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>r</sub>-S(O)<sub>p</sub>-C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>r</sub>-S(O)<sub>p</sub>-phenyl, and (CF<sub>2</sub>)<sub>r</sub>CF<sub>3</sub>;

30

R<sup>5</sup>, at each occurrence, is selected from H, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, =O, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>r</sub>OR<sup>3</sup>, F, Cl, Br, I, CN, NO<sub>2</sub>, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>r</sub>NR<sup>3</sup>R<sup>3a</sup>,

$(\text{CH}_2)_r\text{C}(\text{O})\text{R}^3$ ,  $(\text{CH}_2)_r\text{C}(\text{O})\text{OR}^{3c}$ ,  $\text{NR}^3\text{C}(\text{O})\text{R}^{3a}$ ,  $\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NR}^3\text{R}^{3a}$ ,  
 $\text{NR}^3\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NR}^3\text{R}^{3a}$ ,  $\text{CH}(=\text{NOR}^{3d})$ ,  $\text{C}(=\text{NR}^3)\text{NR}^3\text{R}^{3a}$ ,  
 $\text{NR}^3\text{C}(=\text{NR}^3)\text{NR}^3\text{R}^{3a}$ ,  $\text{SO}_2\text{NR}^3\text{R}^{3a}$ ,  $\text{NR}^3\text{SO}_2\text{NR}^3\text{R}^{3a}$ ,  $\text{NR}^3\text{SO}_2\text{-C}_{1-4}$   
 5 alkyl,  $\text{NR}^3\text{SO}_2\text{CF}_3$ ,  $\text{NR}^3\text{SO}_2\text{-phenyl}$ ,  $\text{S}(\text{O})_p\text{CF}_3$ ,  $\text{S}(\text{O})_p\text{-C}_{1-4}$   
 alkyl,  $\text{S}(\text{O})_p\text{-phenyl}$ ,  $(\text{CF}_2)_r\text{CF}_3$ , phenyl substituted  
 with 0-2  $\text{R}^6$ , naphthyl substituted with 0-2  $\text{R}^6$ , and  
 benzyl substituted with 0-2  $\text{R}^6$ ;

$\text{R}^6$ , at each occurrence, is selected from H, OH,  $(\text{CH}_2)_r\text{OR}^2$ ,  
 10 halo,  $\text{C}_{1-4}$  alkyl, CN,  $\text{NO}_2$ ,  $(\text{CH}_2)_r\text{NR}^2\text{R}^{2a}$ ,  
 $(\text{CH}_2)_r\text{C}(\text{O})\text{R}^{2b}$ ,  $\text{NR}^2\text{C}(\text{O})\text{R}^{2b}$ ,  $\text{NR}^2\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NR}^2\text{R}^{2a}$ ,  $\text{C}(=\text{NH})\text{NH}_2$ ,  
 $\text{NHC}(=\text{NH})\text{NH}_2$ ,  $\text{SO}_2\text{NR}^2\text{R}^{2a}$ ,  $\text{NR}^2\text{SO}_2\text{NR}^2\text{R}^{2a}$ , and  $\text{NR}^2\text{SO}_2\text{C}_{1-4}$   
 alkyl;

15  $\text{R}^7$ , at each occurrence, is selected from H, OH,  $\text{C}_{1-6}$   
 alkyl,  $\text{C}_{1-6}$  alkylcarbonyl,  $\text{C}_{1-6}$  alkoxy,  $\text{C}_{1-4}$   
 alkoxycarbonyl,  $(\text{CH}_2)_n\text{-phenyl}$ ,  $\text{C}_{6-10}$  aryloxy,  $\text{C}_{6-10}$   
 aryloxy carbonyl,  $\text{C}_{6-10}$  arylmethylcarbonyl,  $\text{C}_{1-4}$   
 alkylcarbonyloxy  $\text{C}_{1-4}$  alkoxycarbonyl,  $\text{C}_{6-10}$   
 20 arylcarbonyloxy  $\text{C}_{1-4}$  alkoxycarbonyl,  $\text{C}_{1-6}$   
 alkylaminocarbonyl, phenylaminocarbonyl, and phenyl  
 $\text{C}_{1-4}$  alkoxycarbonyl;

$\text{R}^8$ , at each occurrence, is selected from H,  $\text{C}_{1-6}$  alkyl and  
 25  $(\text{CH}_2)_n\text{-phenyl}$ ;

alternatively,  $\text{R}^7$  and  $\text{R}^8$  combine to form a 5-10 membered  
 saturated, partially saturated or unsaturated ring  
 which contains 0-2 additional heteroatoms selected  
 30 from the group consisting of N, O, and S;

R<sup>9</sup>, at each occurrence, is selected from H, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl and (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>-phenyl;

n, at each occurrence, is selected from 0, 1, 2, and 3;

5

p, at each occurrence, is selected from 0, 1, and 2;

r, at each occurrence, is selected from 0, 1, 2, and 3;  
and

10

t, at each occurrence, is selected from 0, 1, 2, and 3;

provided that when ring M is piperidin-2,6-dione and A is phenyl, then:

15

(i) one of R<sup>a</sup> and R<sup>b</sup> is other than halo, alkyl, alkoxy, and CF<sub>3</sub>;

(ii) B is phenyl and R<sup>4a</sup> is other than alkyl;

(iii) B is pyridyl or imidazolyl; or

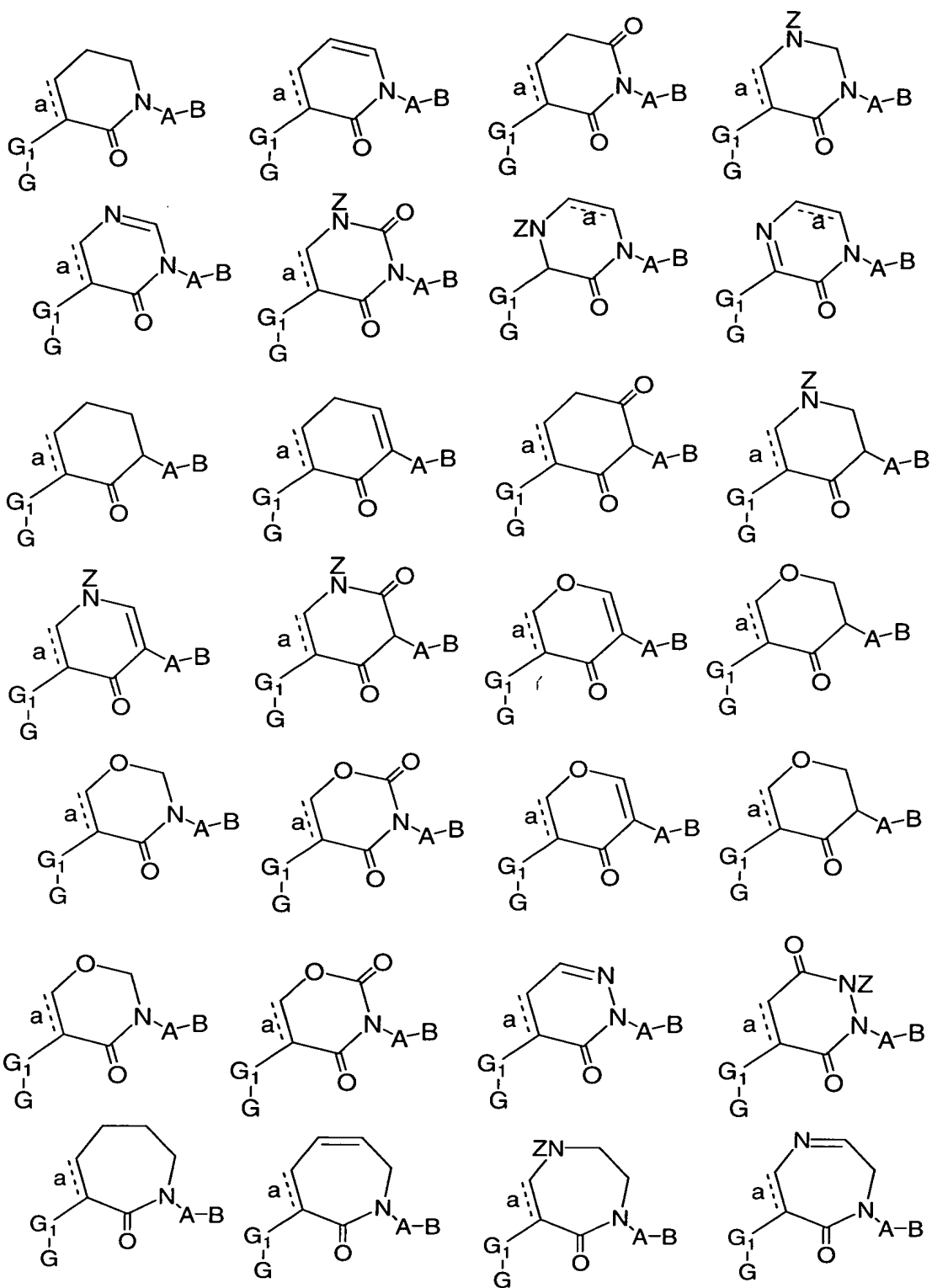
(iv) X is present and is C(O);

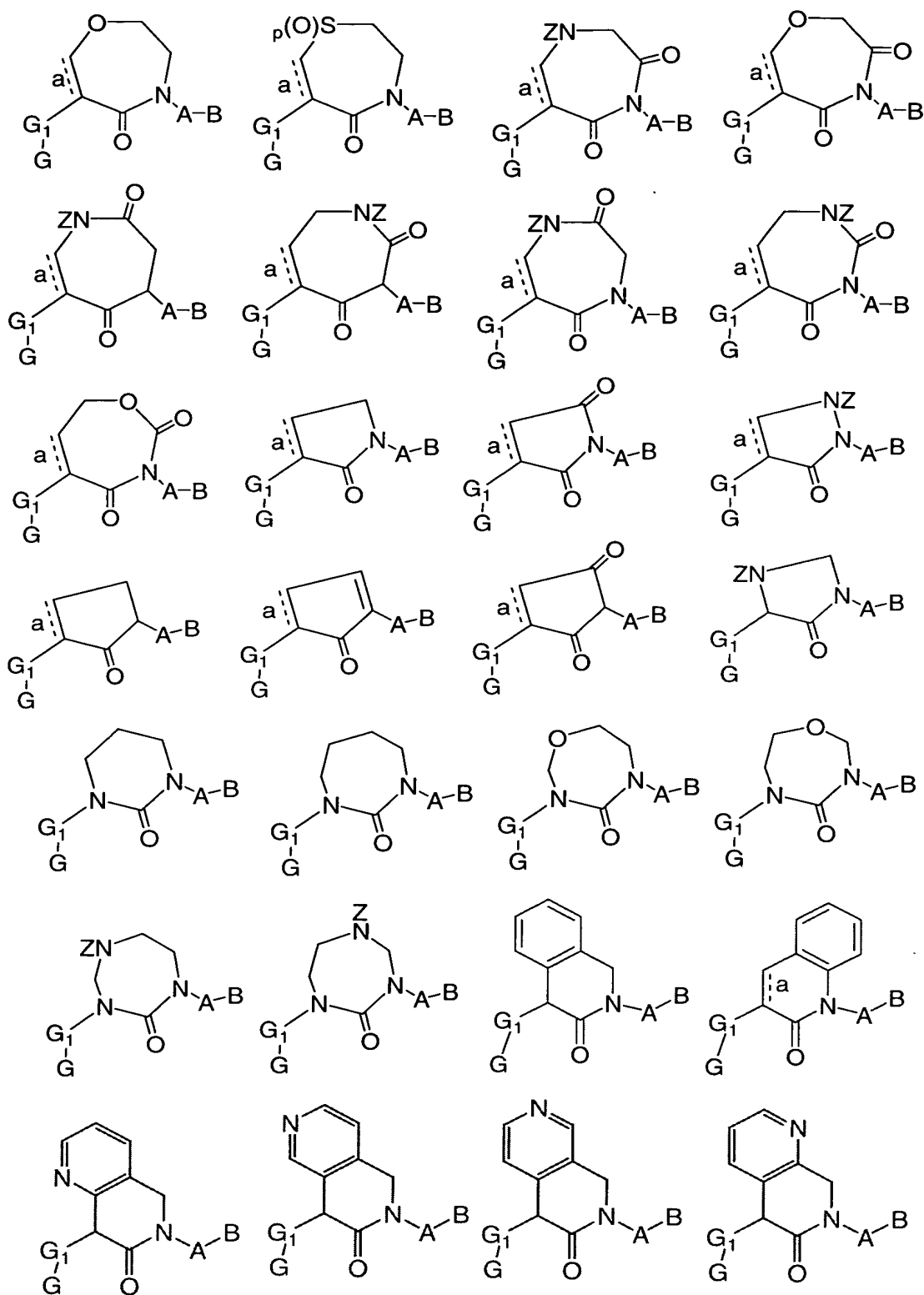
20

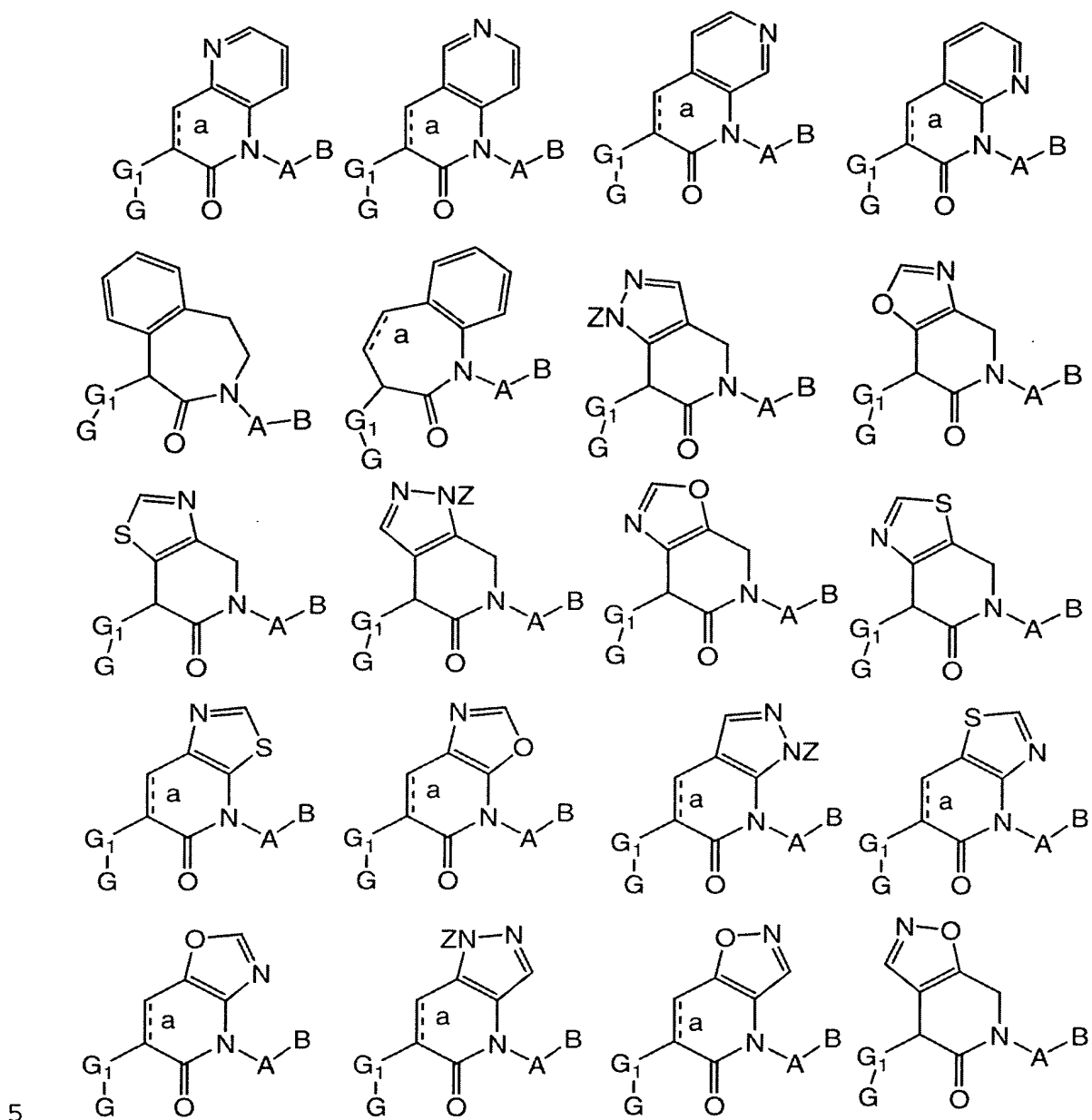
provided that when ring M is oxazolidinone and G<sub>1</sub> is CONHCH<sub>2</sub>, then G is other than thienyl or benzothienyl.

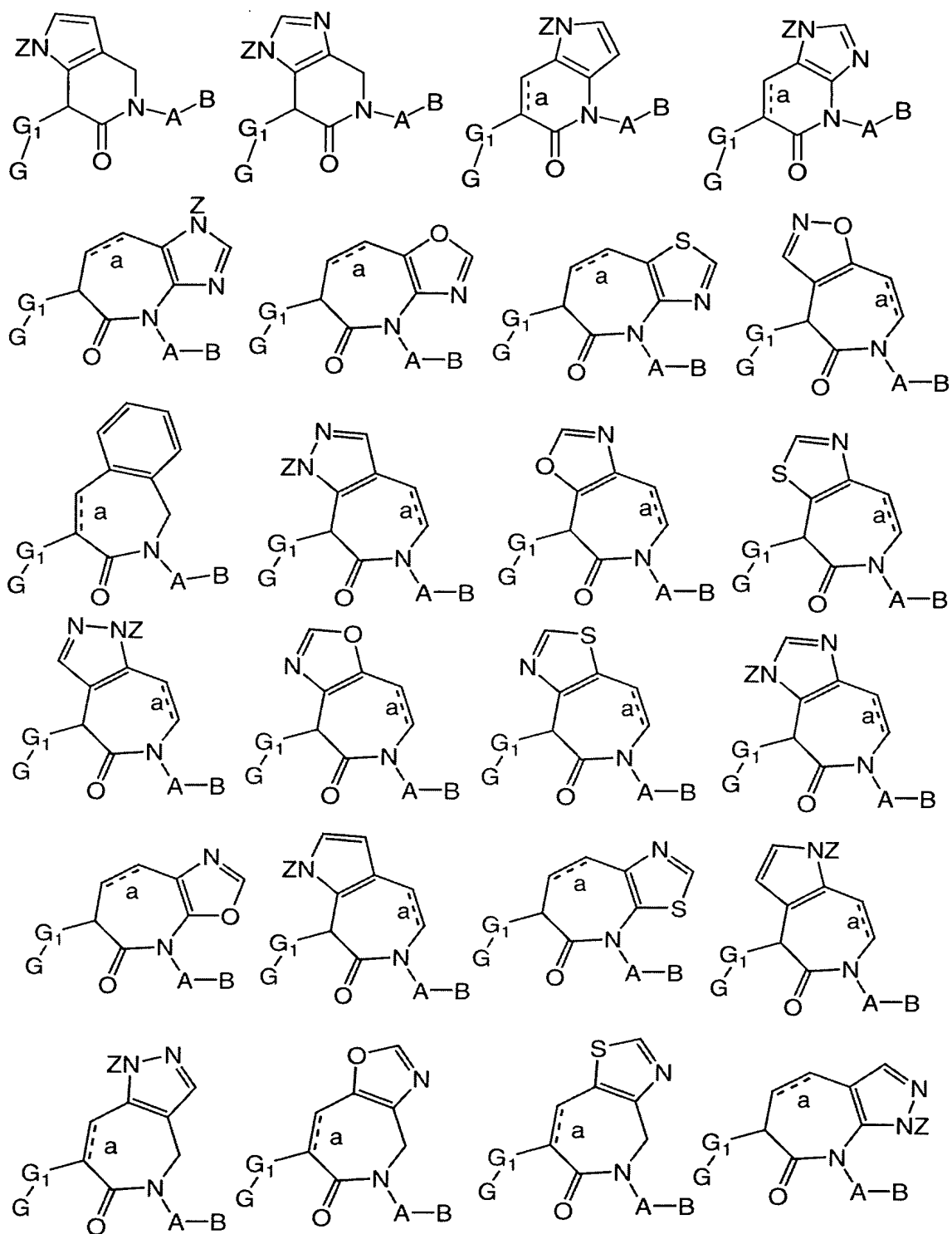
25

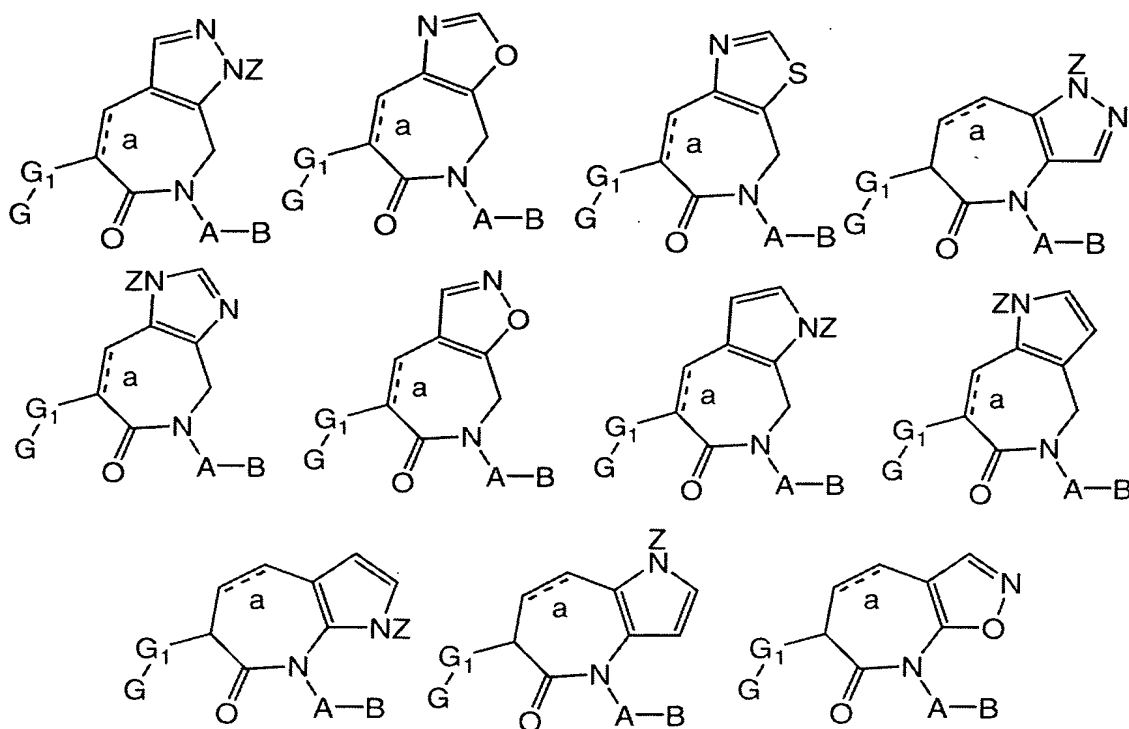
[2] In a preferred embodiment, the present invention provides a novel compound, wherein the compound is selected from the group:











5 wherein the above formulas are substituted with 0-2  $R^{1a}$   
and "a" is a single or double bond;

A is selected from one of the following carbocyclic and  
heterocyclic systems which are substituted with 0-2  
10  $R^4$ ;

phenyl, piperidinyl, piperazinyl, pyridyl,  
pyrimidyl, furanyl, morpholinyl, thienyl, pyrrolyl,  
pyrrolidinyl, oxazolyl, isoxazolyl, thiazolyl,  
isothiazolyl, pyrazolyl, imidazolyl, oxadiazolyl,  
15 thiadiazolyl, triazolyl, 1,2,3-oxadiazolyl,  
1,2,4-oxadiazolyl, 1,2,5-oxadiazolyl,  
1,3,4-oxadiazolyl, 1,2,3-thiadiazolyl,  
1,2,4-thiadiazolyl, 1,2,5-thiadiazolyl,  
1,3,4-thiadiazolyl, 1,2,3-triazolyl,  
20 1,2,4-triazolyl, 1,2,5-triazolyl, 1,3,4-triazolyl,  
benzofuranyl, benzothiofuranyl, indolyl,  
benzimidazolyl, benzoxazolyl, benzthiazolyl,



indazolyl, benzisoxazolyl, benzisothiazolyl, and  
isoindazolyl;

B is selected from: Y and X-Y;

5

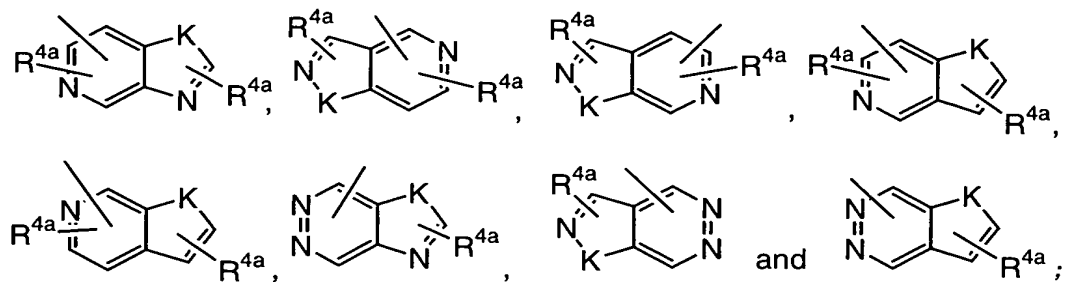
X is selected from  $-(CR^2R^{2a})_{1-4}-$ ,  $-C(O)-$ ,  $-C(=NR^{1c})-$ ,  
 $-CR^2(NR^{1c}R^2)-$ ,  $-C(O)CR^2R^{2a}-$ ,  $-CR^2R^{2a}C(O)-$ ,  $-C(O)NR^2-$ ,  
 $-NR^2C(O)-$ ,  $-C(O)NR^2CR^2R^{2a}-$ ,  $-NR^2C(O)CR^2R^{2a}-$ ,  
 $-CR^2R^{2a}C(O)NR^2-$ ,  $-CR^2R^{2a}NR^2C(O)-$ ,  $-NR^2C(O)NR^2-$ ,  $-NR^2-$ ,  
 10  $-NR^2CR^2R^{2a}-$ ,  $-CR^2R^{2a}NR^2-$ , O,  $-CR^2R^{2a}O-$ , and  $-OCR^2R^{2a}-$ ;

Y is  $-(CH_2)_rNR^2R^{2a}$ , provided that X-Y do not form a N-N or  
O-N bond;

15 alternatively, Y is selected from one of the following  
carbocyclic and heterocyclic systems which are  
substituted with 0-2  $R^{4a}$ ;

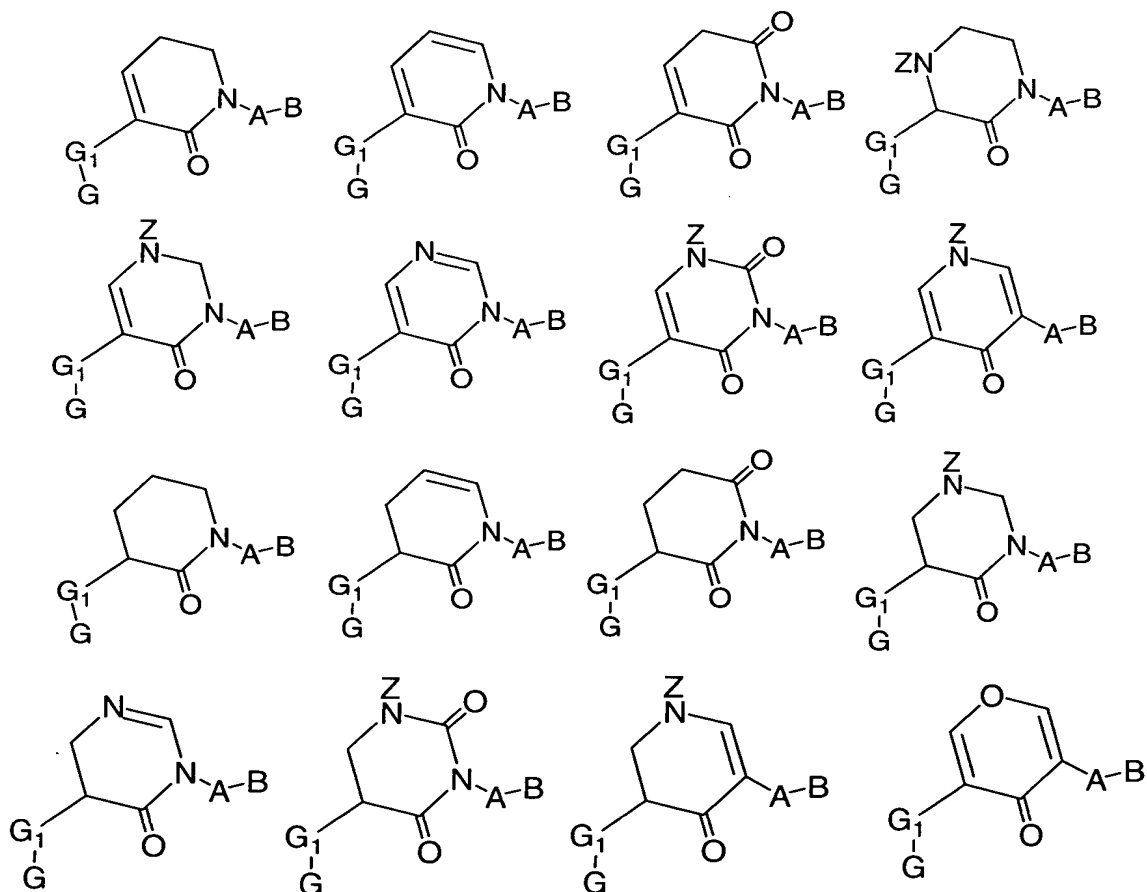
cyclopropyl, cyclopentyl, cyclohexyl, phenyl,  
 piperidinyl, piperazinyl, pyridyl, pyrimidyl,  
 20 furanyl, morpholinyl, thienyl, pyrrolyl,  
 pyrrolidinyl, oxazolyl, isoxazolyl, isoxazolinyl,  
 thiazolyl, isothiazolyl, pyrazolyl, imidazolyl,  
 oxadiazolyl, thiadiazolyl, triazolyl,  
 1,2,3-oxadiazolyl, 1,2,4-oxadiazolyl,  
 25 1,2,5-oxadiazolyl, 1,3,4-oxadiazolyl,  
 1,2,3-thiadiazolyl, 1,2,4-thiadiazolyl,  
 1,2,5-thiadiazolyl, 1,3,4-thiadiazolyl,  
 1,2,3-triazolyl, 1,2,4-triazolyl, 1,2,5-triazolyl,  
 1,3,4-triazolyl, benzofuranyl, benzothiofuranyl,  
 30 indolyl, benzimidazolyl, benzoxazolyl,  
 benzthiazolyl, indazolyl, benzisoxazolyl,  
 benzisothiazolyl, and isoindazolyl; and

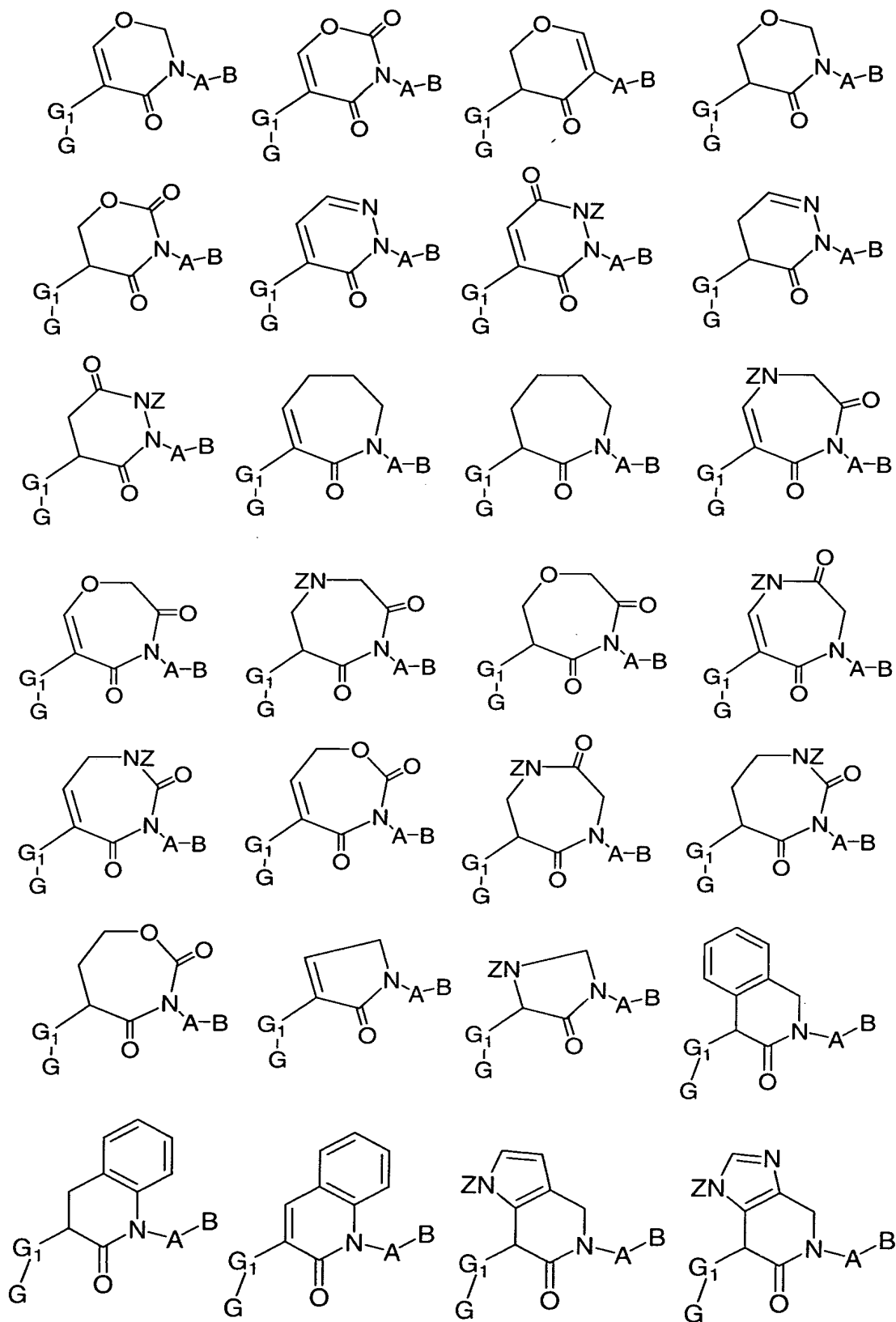
alternatively, Y is selected from the following bicyclic heteroaryl ring systems:

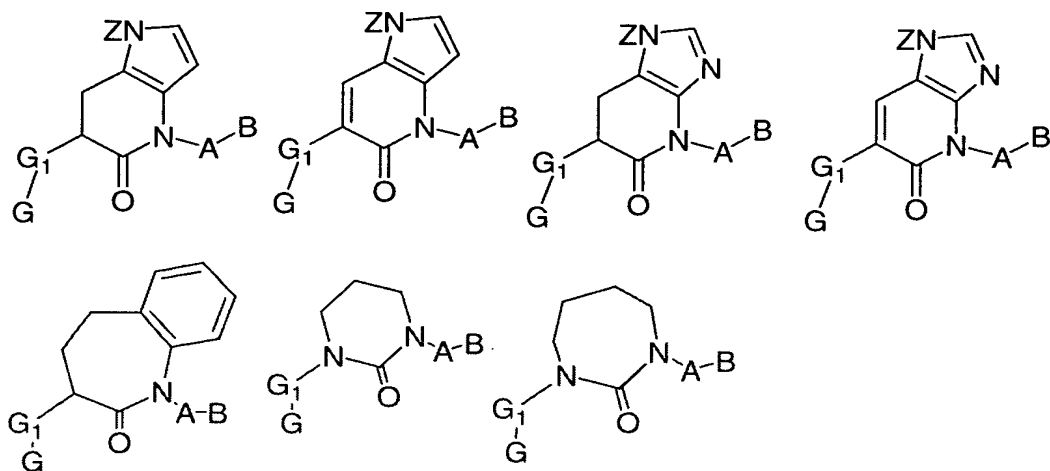


5 K is selected from O, S, NH, and N.

[3] In another preferred embodiment, the present invention provides a novel compound, wherein the compound  
10 is selected from the group:



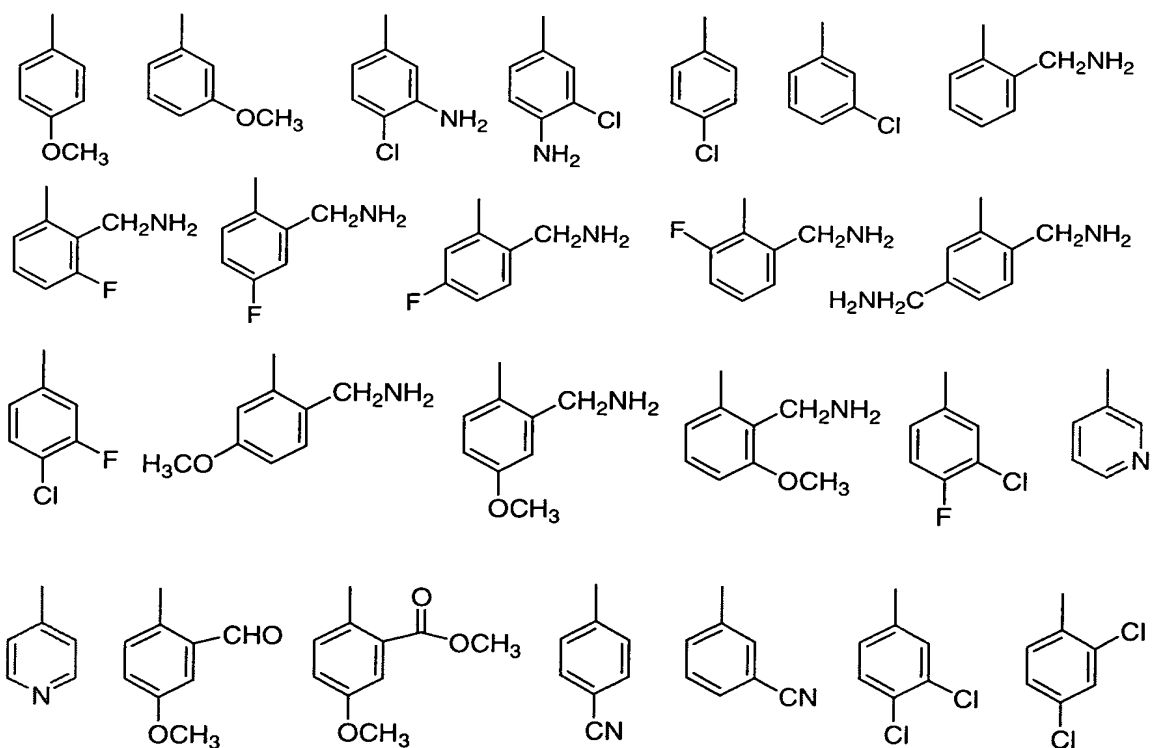




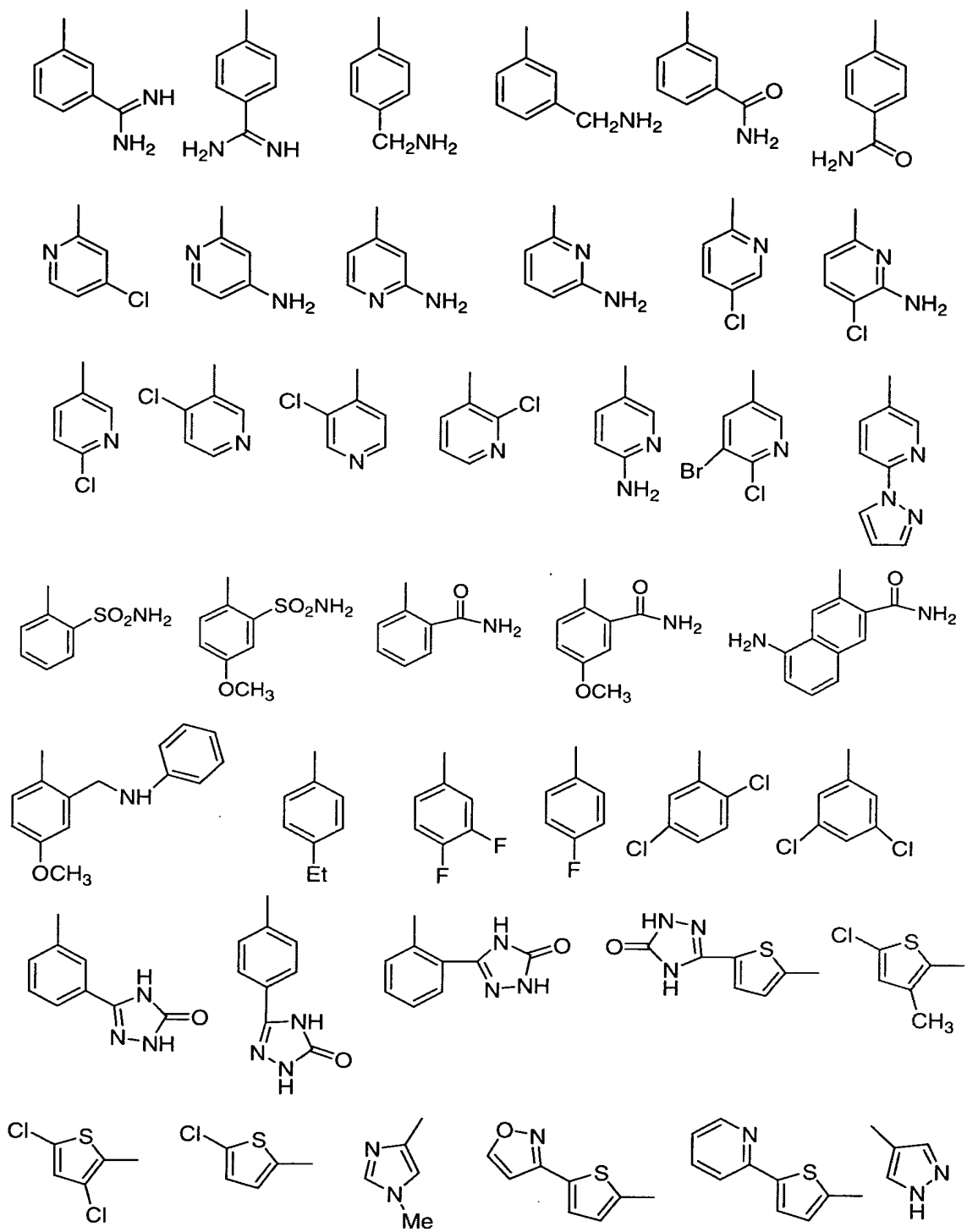
wherein compounds of the above formulas are substituted  
with 0-2 R<sup>1a</sup>; and

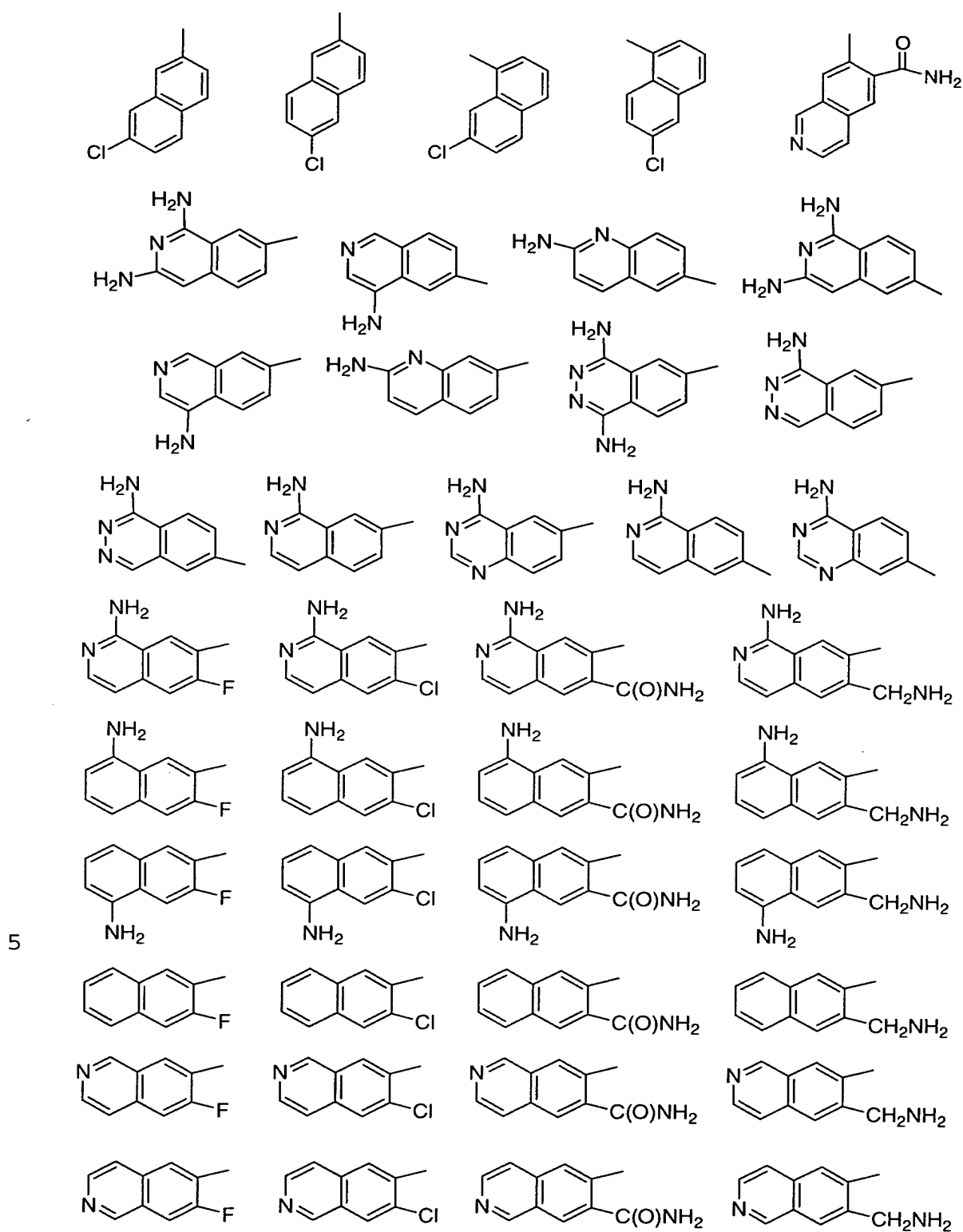
5

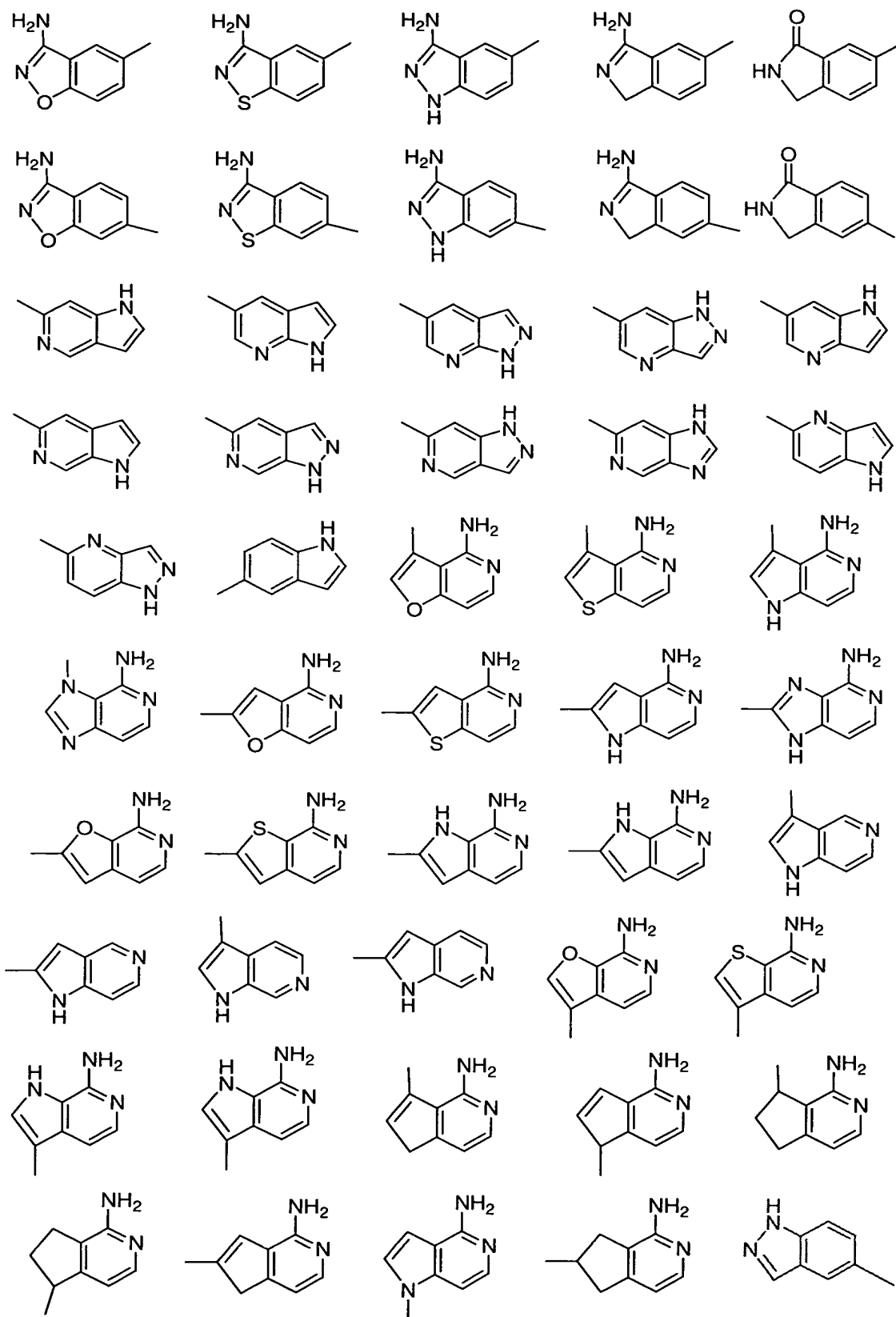
G is selected from the group:

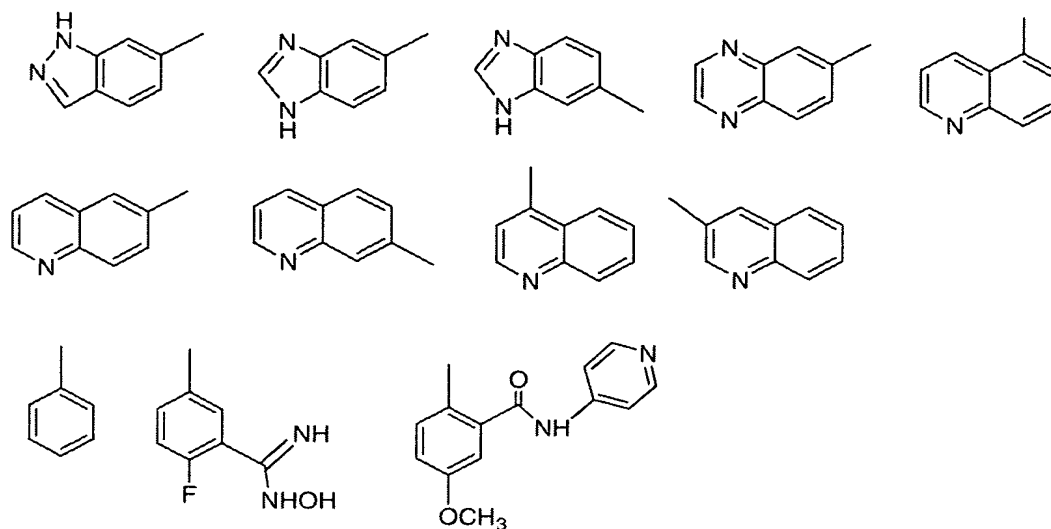


10

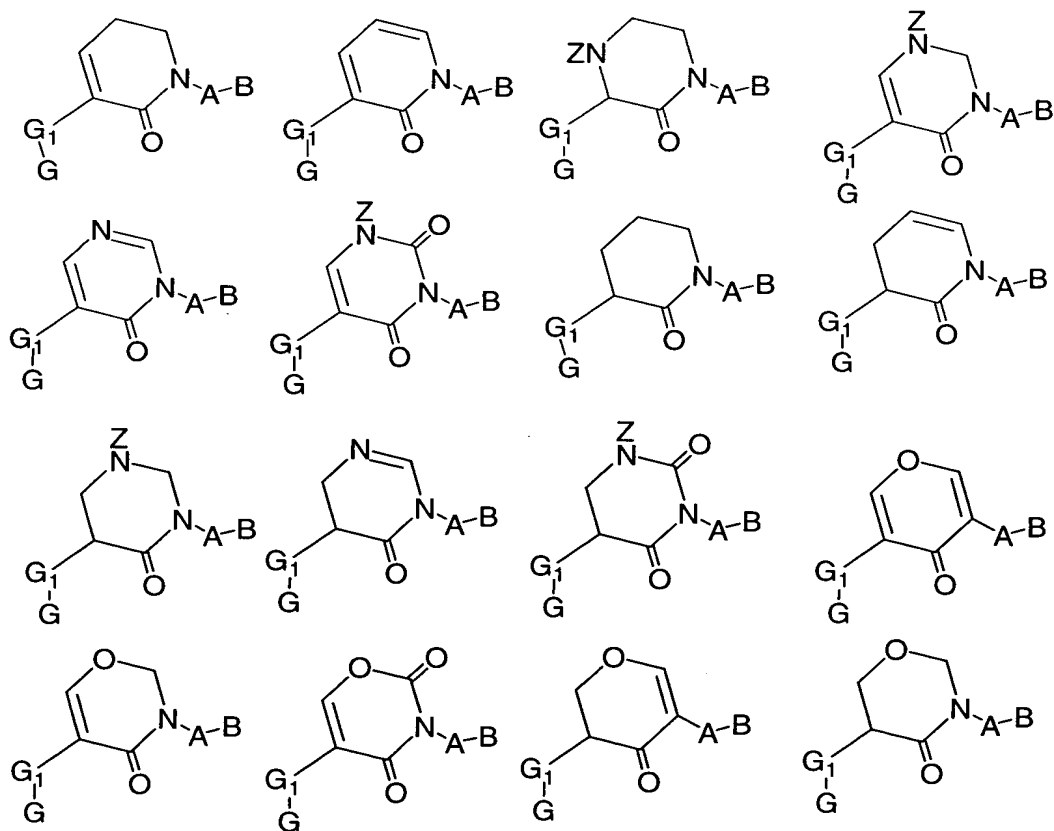




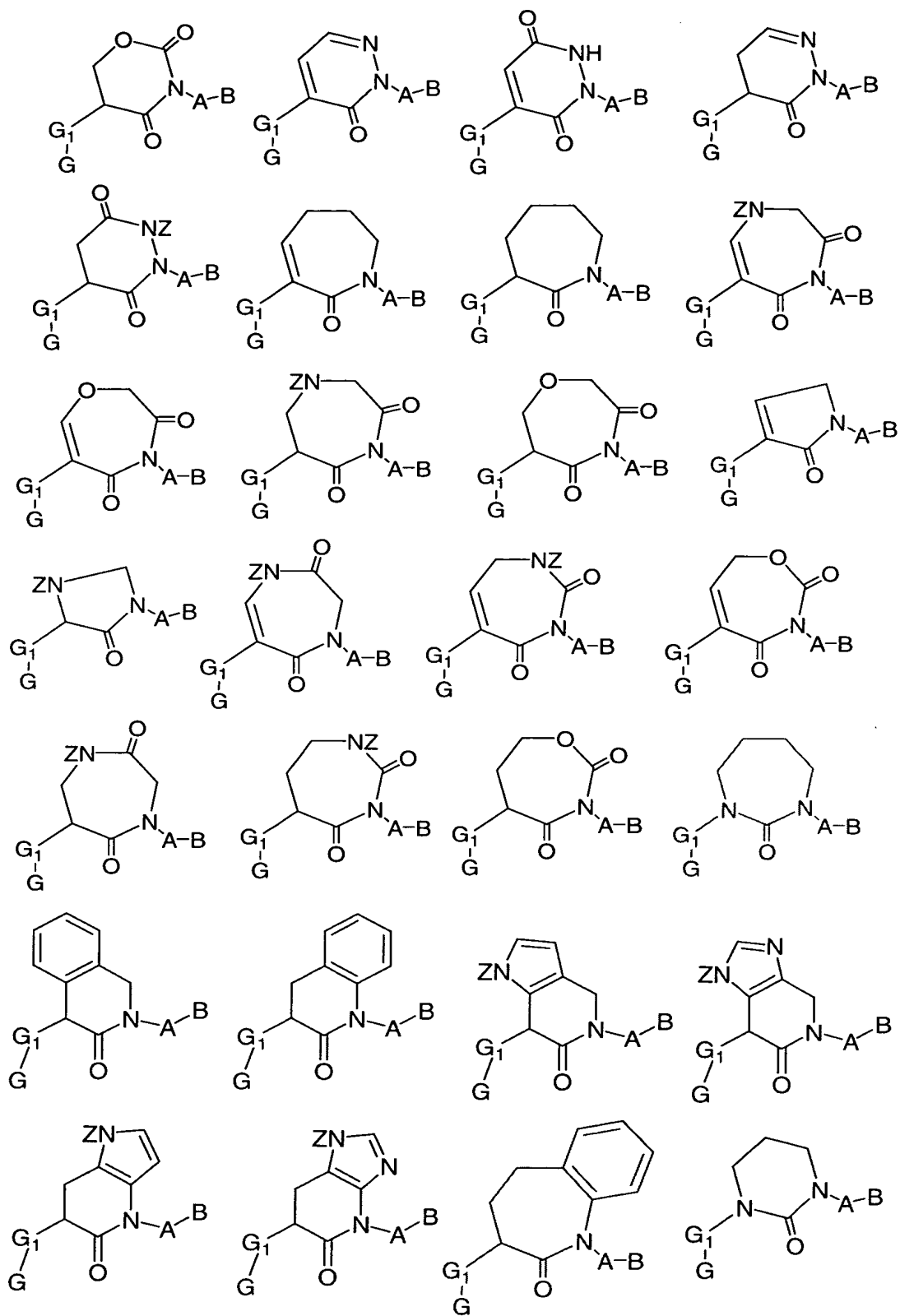




[4] In another preferred embodiment, the present invention provides a novel compound, wherein the compound  
5 is selected from the group:

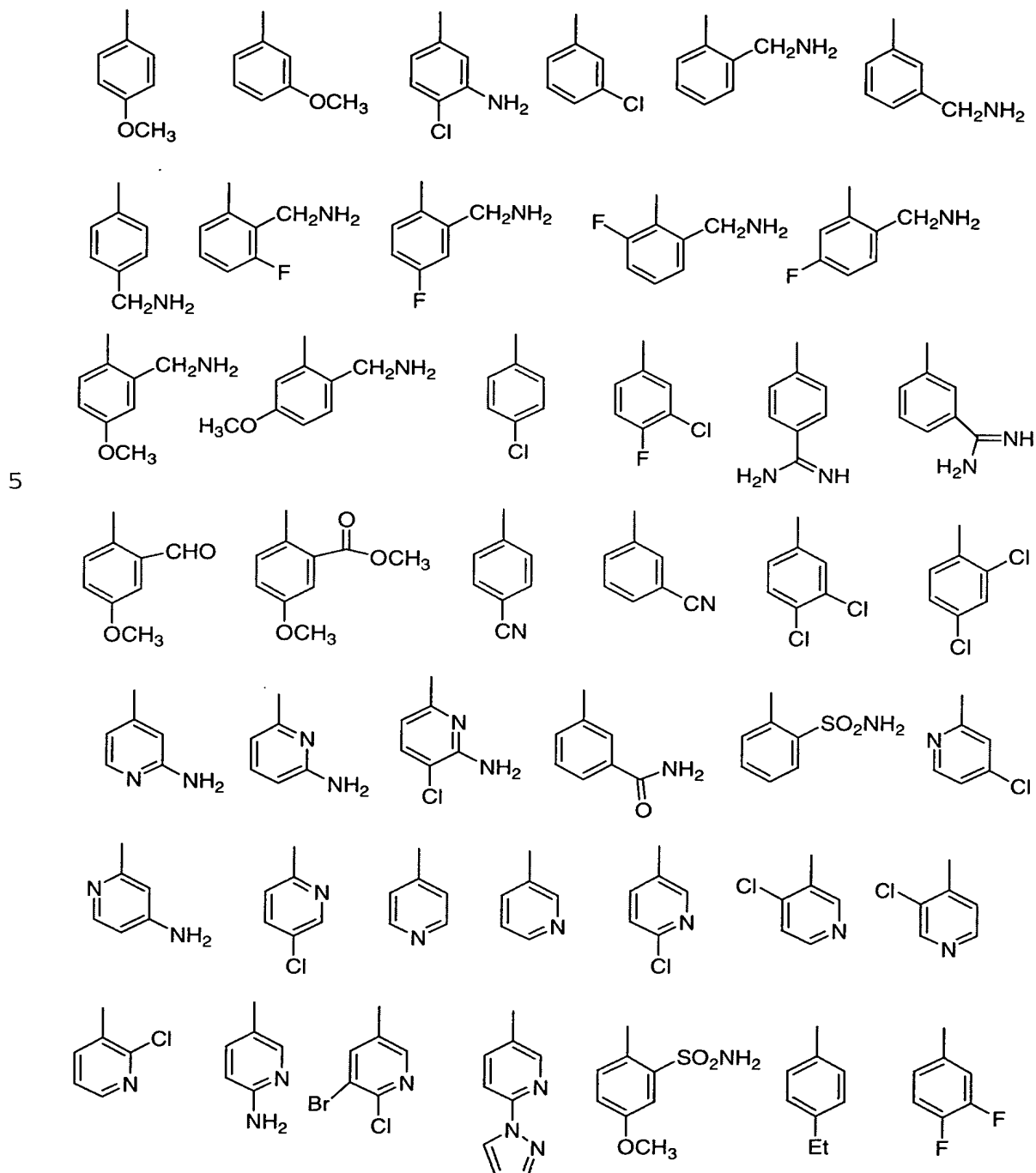


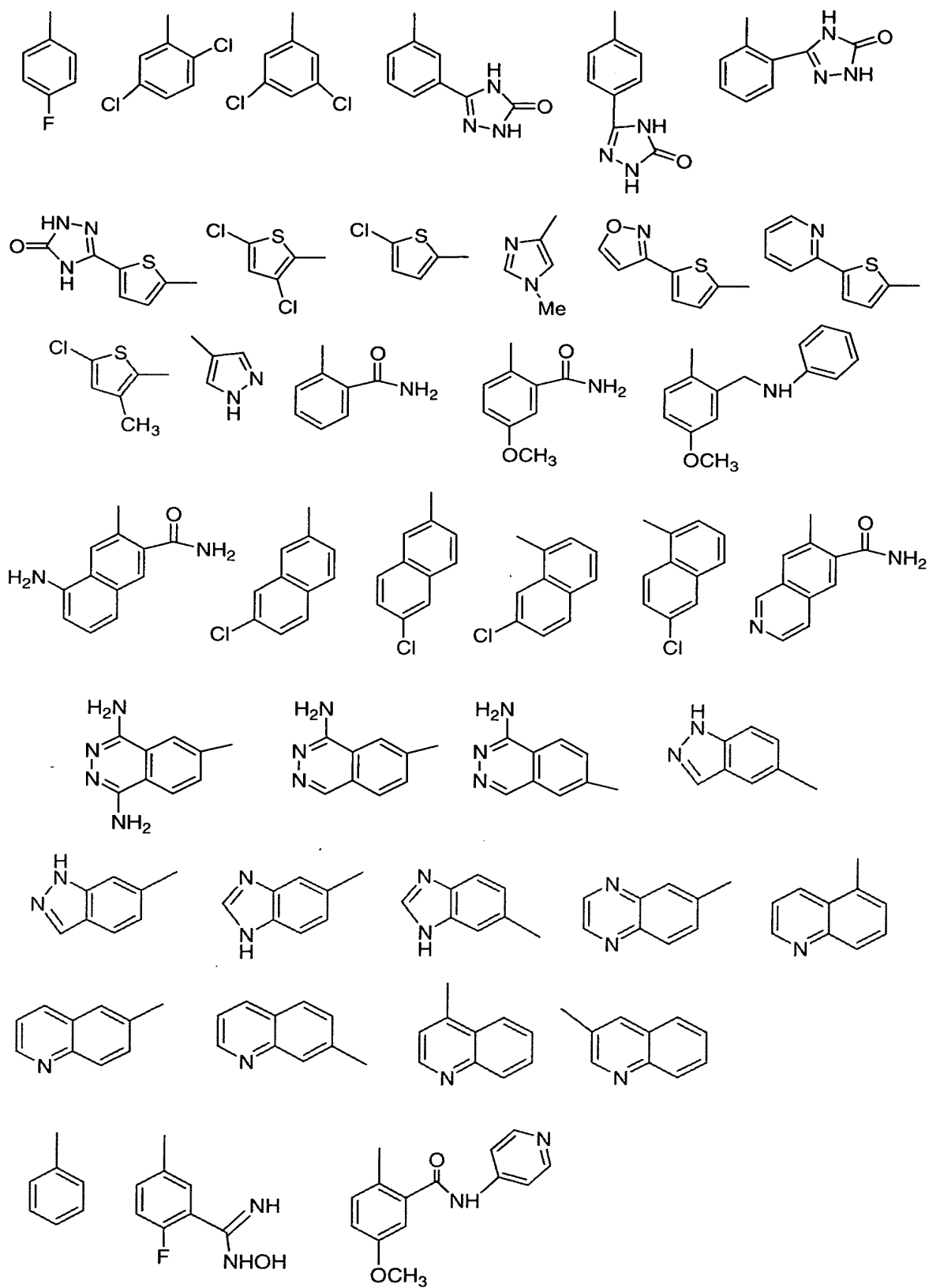


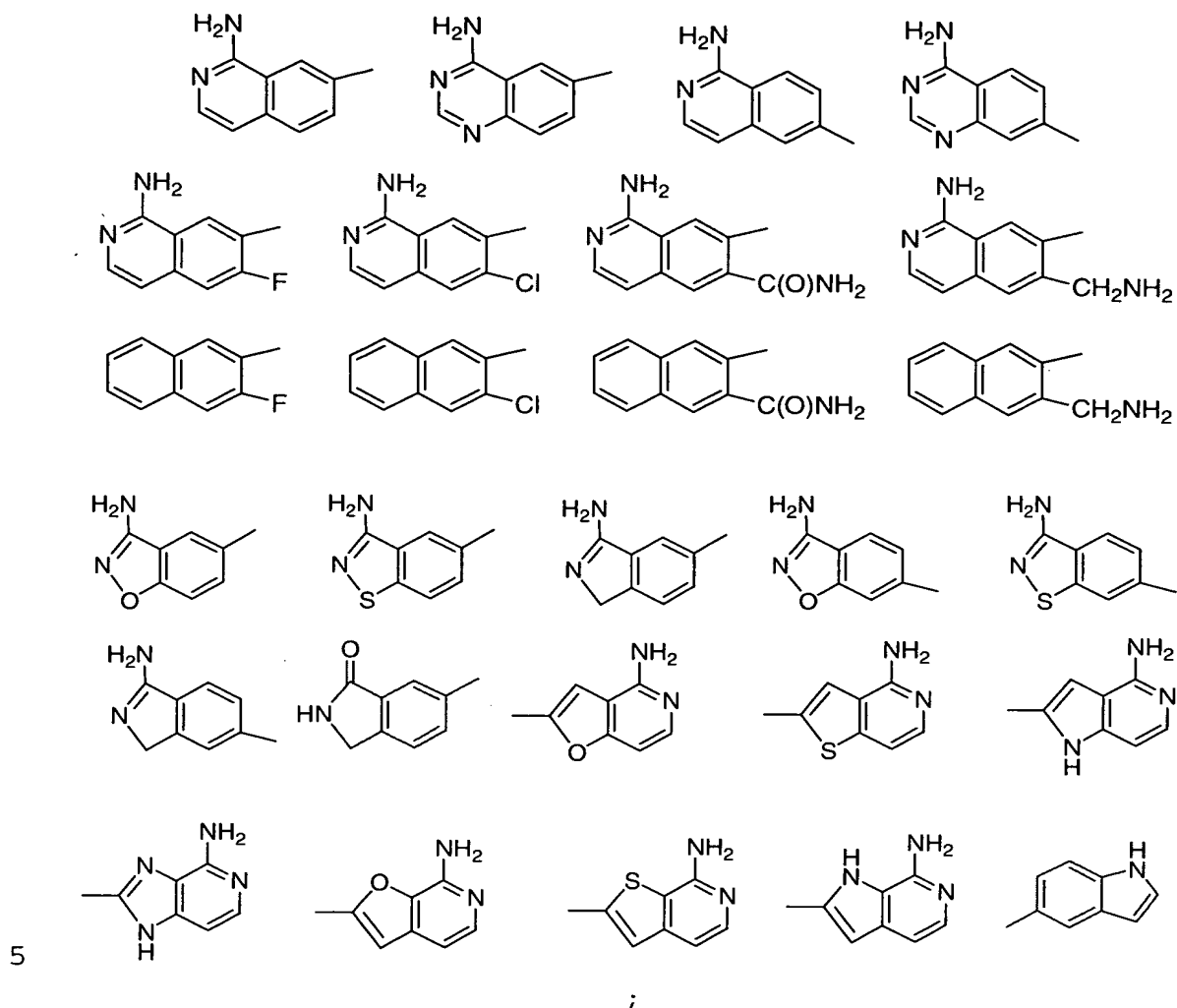


wherein compounds of the above formulas are substituted  
with 0-2 R<sup>1a</sup>;

G is selected from:







$G_1$  is selected from  $(CR^3aR^3b)_{1-2}$ ,  $CR^3=CR^3$ ,  $C\equiv C$ ,  
 $(CHR^3a)_u C(O)(CHR^3a)_w$ ,  $(CHR^3a)_u C(O)O(CHR^3a)_w$ ,  
 $(CHR^3a)_u O(CHR^3a)_w$ ,  $(CHR^3a)_u NR^3e(CHR^3a)_w$ ,  
 $(CHR^3a)_u C(O)NR^3(CHR^3a)_w$ ,  $(CHR^3a)_u NR^3C(O)(CHR^3a)_w$ ,  
 $(CHR^3a)_u S(O)_2(CHR^3a)_w$ ,  $(CHR^3a)_u NR^3S(O)_2(CHR^3a)_w$ , and  
 $(CHR^3a)_u S(O)_2NR^3(CHR^3a)_w$ , wherein  $u + w$  total 0, 1, or  
 2, provided that  $G_1$  does not form a N-N or N-O bond  
 with either group to which it is attached;

10

15

$R^3$ , at each occurrence, is selected from H,  
 $C_{1-4}$  alkyl substituted with 0-2  $R^{1a}$ ;

- $C_{2-4}$  alkenyl substituted with 0-2  $R^{1a}$ ;  
 $C_{2-4}$  alkynyl substituted with 0-2  $R^{1a}$ ;  
 $C_{3-7}$  cycloalkyl( $C_{0-2}$  alkyl)- substituted with 0-3  $R^{1a}$ ;  
heterocyclyl( $C_{0-2}$  alkyl)- substituted with 0-3  $R^{1a}$ ;  
5 aryl( $C_{0-2}$  alkyl)- substituted with 0-3  $R^{1a}$ ;  
heteroaryl( $C_{0-2}$  alkyl)- substituted with 0-3  $R^{1a}$ ;

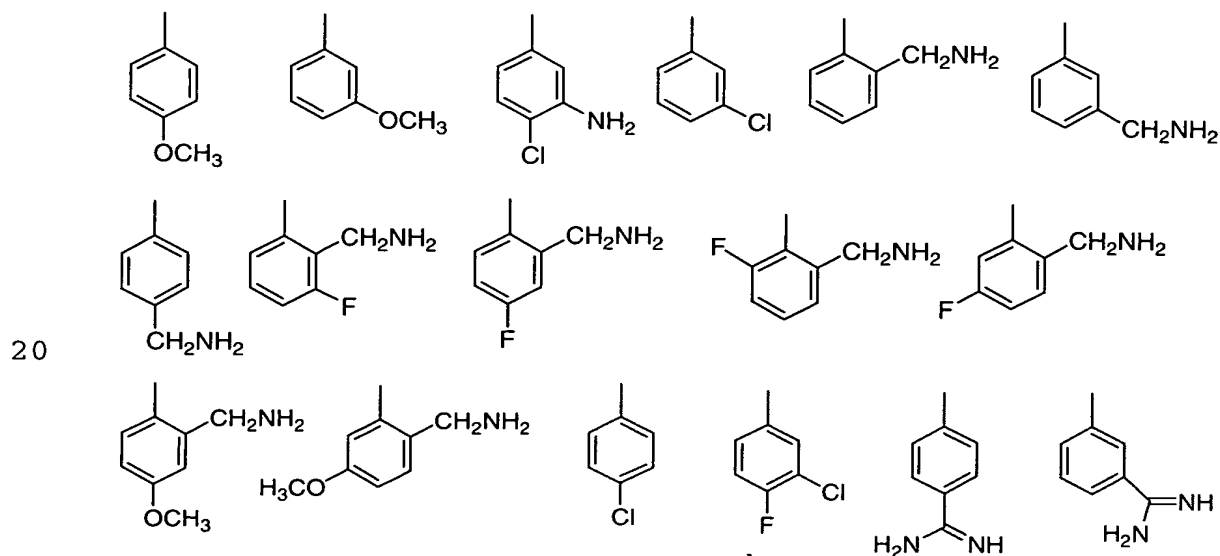
$R^{3a}$ , at each occurrence, is selected from H,  $C_{1-4}$  alkyl, and benzyl; and

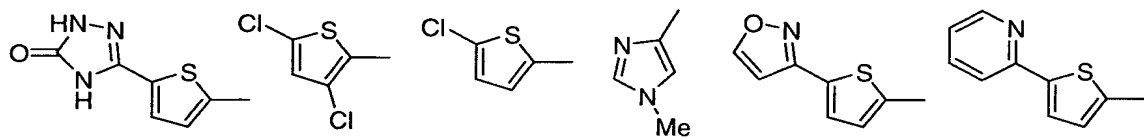
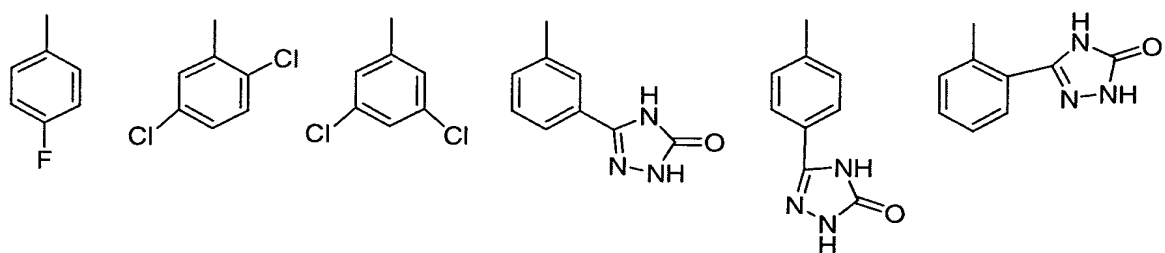
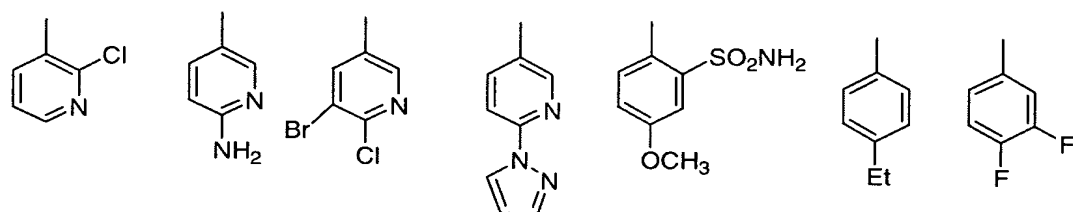
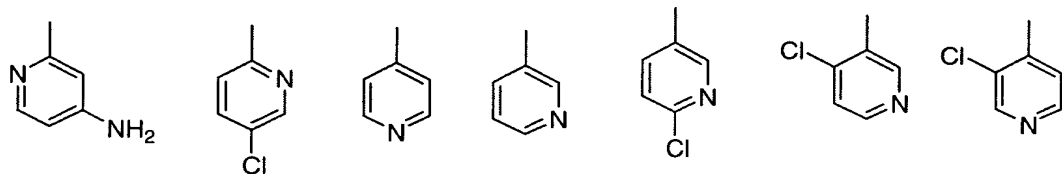
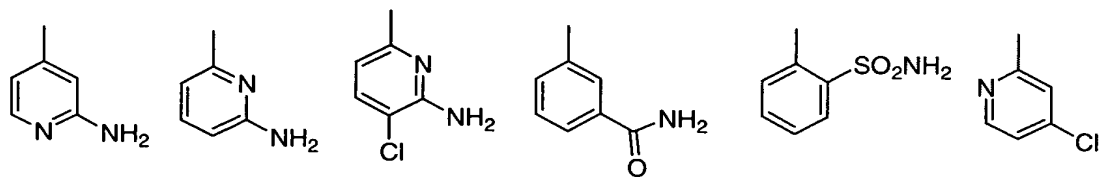
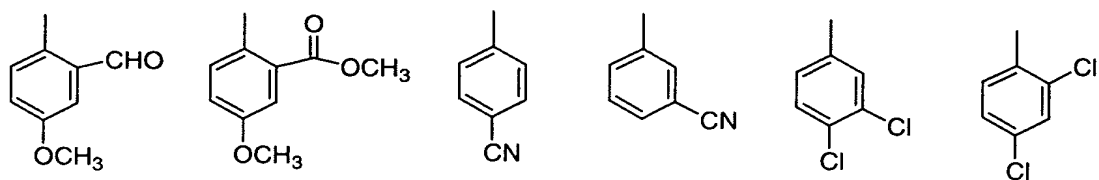
10

$R^{3b}$ , at each occurrence, is selected from H,  $C_{1-4}$  alkyl, and benzyl.

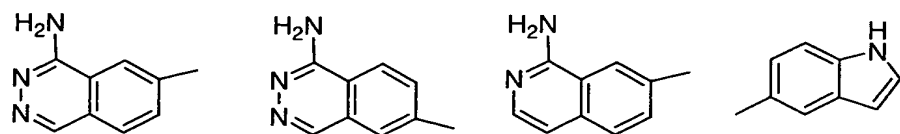
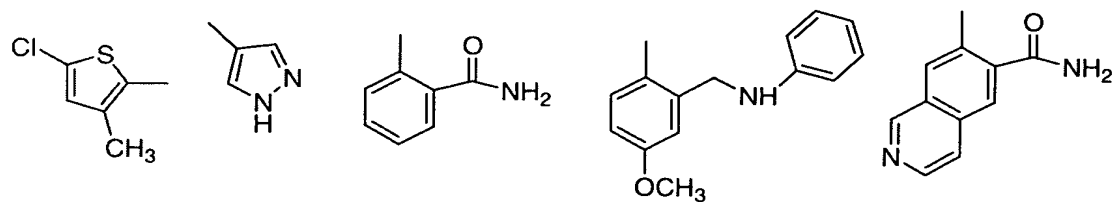
- 15 [5] In another preferred embodiment, the present invention provides a novel compound, wherein;

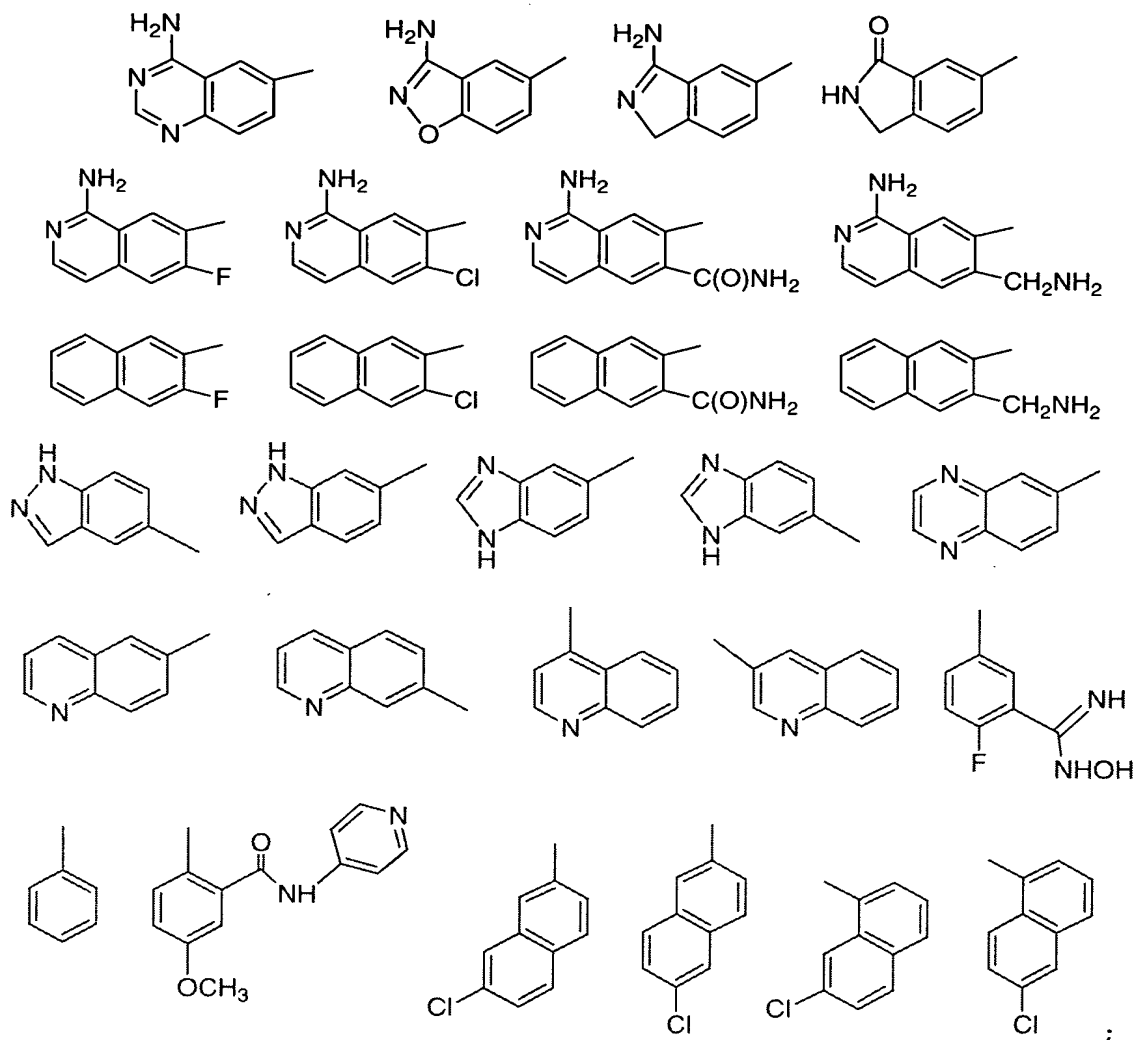
G is selected from:





5





5

A is selected from phenyl, piperidinyl, pyridyl, and pyrimidyl, and is substituted with 0-2 R<sup>4</sup>; and,

B is selected from phenyl, pyrrolidino, N-pyrrolidino-carbonyl, morpholino, N-morpholino-carbonyl, 1,2,3-triazolyl, imidazolyl, and benzimidazolyl, and is substituted with 0-1 R<sup>4a</sup>;

15 R<sup>2</sup>, at each occurrence, is selected from H, CH<sub>3</sub>, CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>,  
cyclopropylmethyl, cyclobutyl, and cyclopentyl;

R<sup>2a</sup>, at each occurrence, is H or CH<sub>3</sub>, and CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>;

alternatively,  $R^2$  and  $R^{2a}$ , together with the atom to which they are attached, combine to form pyrrolidine substituted with 0-2  $R^{4b}$  or piperidine substituted with 0-2  $R^{4b}$ ;

$R^4$ , at each occurrence, is selected from H, OH,  $OR^2$ ,  $(CH_2)OR^2$ ,  $(CH_2)_2OR^2$ , F, Br, Cl, I,  $C_{1-4}$  alkyl,  $NR^2R^{2a}$ ,  $(CH_2)NR^2R^{2a}$ ,  $(CH_2)_2NR^2R^{2a}$ ,  $CF_3$ , and  $(CF_2)CF_3$ ;

$R^{4a}$  is selected from H,  $C_{1-4}$  alkyl,  $CF_3$ ,  $OR^2$ ,  $(CH_2)OR^2$ ,  $(CH_2)_2OR^2$ ,  $NR^2R^{2a}$ ,  $(CH_2)NR^2R^{2a}$ ,  $(CH_2)_2NR^2R^{2a}$ ,  $SR^5$ ,  $S(O)R^5$ ,  $S(O)_2R^5$ ,  $SO_2NR^2R^{2a}$ , and 1- $CF_3$ -tetrazol-2-yl;

$R^{4b}$ , at each occurrence, is selected from H,  $CH_3$ , and OH;

$R^5$ , at each occurrence, is selected from  $CF_3$ ,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl, phenyl, and benzyl; and,

$r$ , at each occurrence, is selected from 0, 1, and 2.

[6] In a further preferred embodiment, the present invention provides a novel compound, wherein;

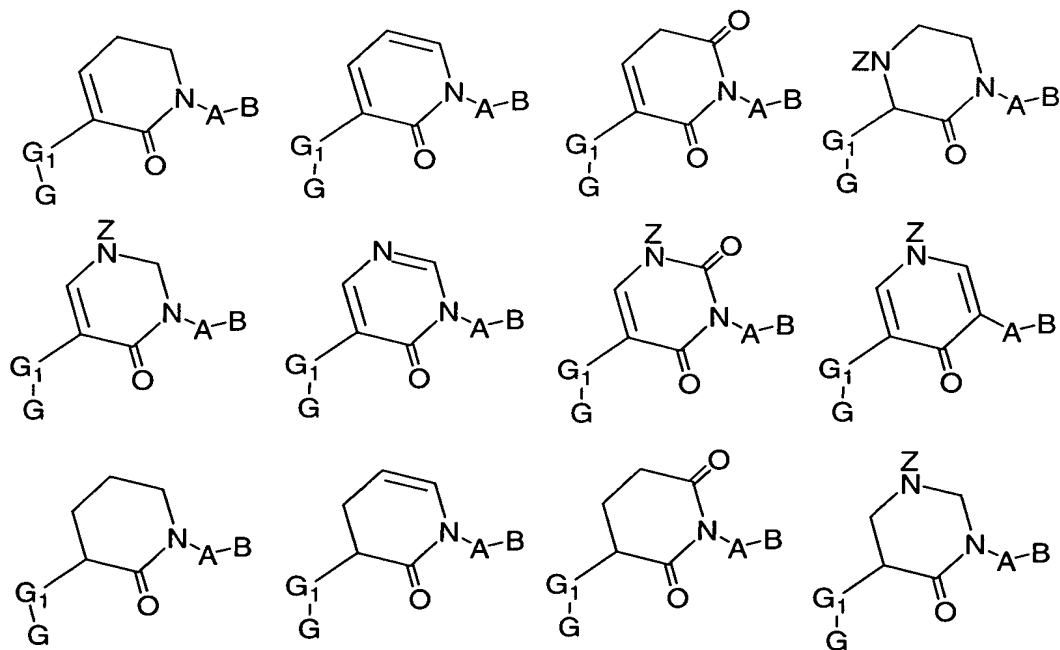
A is selected from the group: phenyl, piperidinyl, 2-pyridyl, 3-pyridyl, 2-pyrimidyl, 2-Cl-phenyl, 3-Cl-phenyl, 2-F-phenyl, 3-F-phenyl, 2-methylphenyl, 2-aminophenyl, and 2-methoxyphenyl; and,

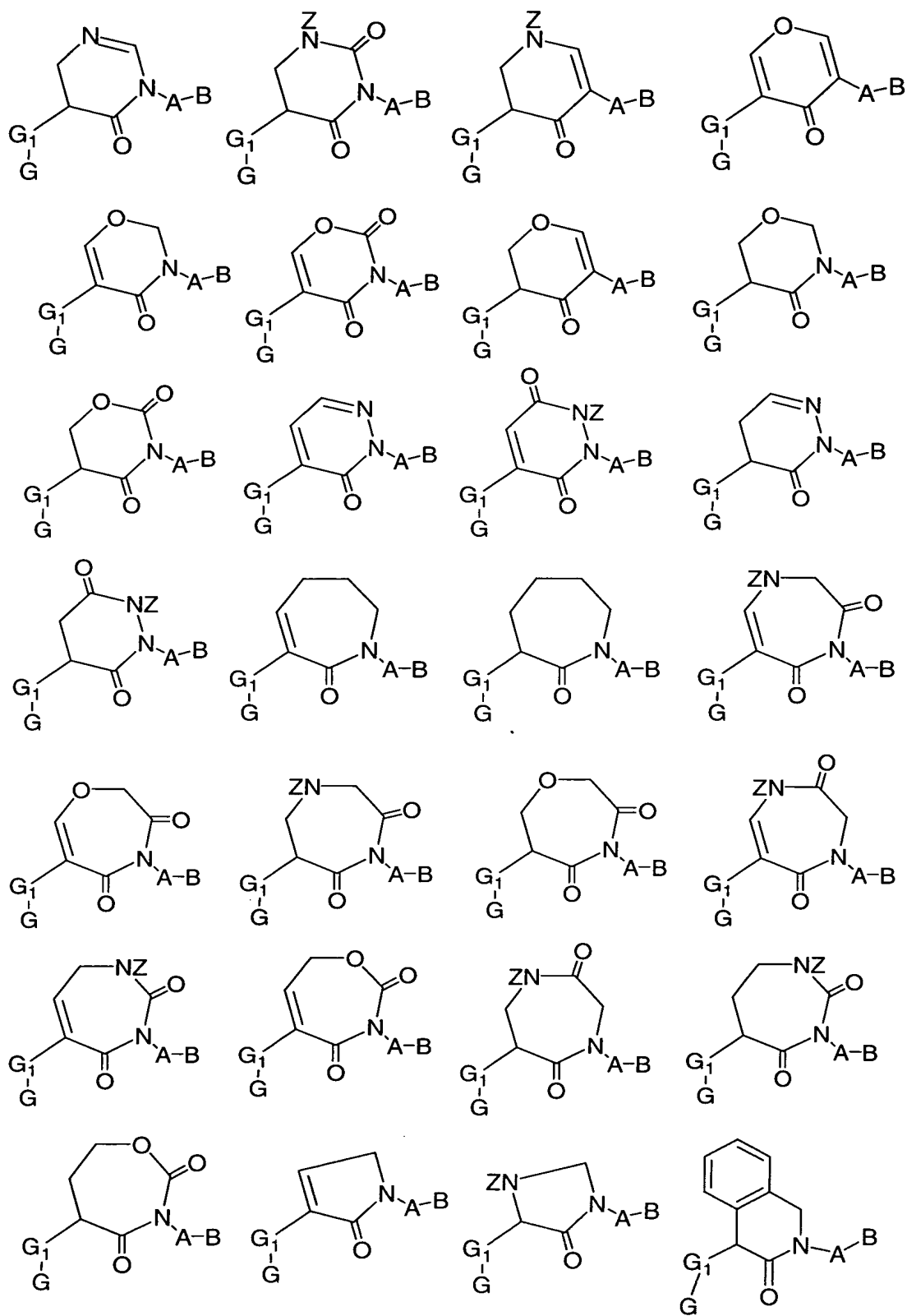
B is selected from the group: 2-(aminosulfonyl)phenyl, 2-(methylaminosulfonyl)phenyl, 1-pyrrolidinocarbonyl, 2-(methylsulfonyl)phenyl, 2-(N,N-dimethylaminomethyl)phenyl, 2-(N,N-

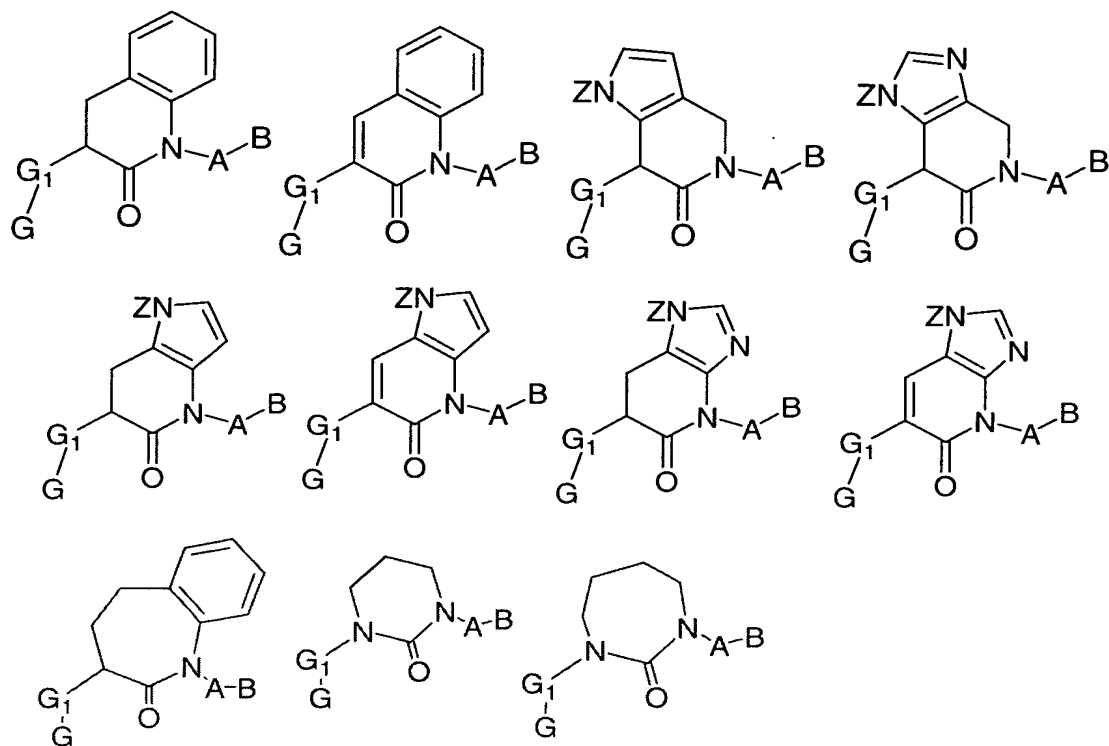


diethylaminomethyl)phenyl, 2-(N-methylaminomethyl)phenyl, 2-(N-ethyl-N-methylaminomethyl)phenyl, 2-(N-pyrrolidinylmethyl)phenyl, 1-methyl-2-imidazolyl, 2-methyl-1-imidazolyl, 2-(dimethylaminomethyl)-1-imidazolyl, 2-(methylaminomethyl)-1-imidazolyl, 2-(N-(cyclopropylmethyl)aminomethyl)phenyl, 2-(N-(cyclobutyl)aminomethyl)phenyl, 2-(N-(cyclopentyl)aminomethyl)phenyl, 2-(N-(4-hydroxypiperidinyl)methyl)phenyl, 2-(N-(3-hydroxypyrrolidinyl)methyl)phenyl, and 2-(N-(2-hydroxyethyl)methylamino)-methyl)phenyl.

In another preferred embodiment, the present invention provides a novel compound, wherein the compound is selected from the group:

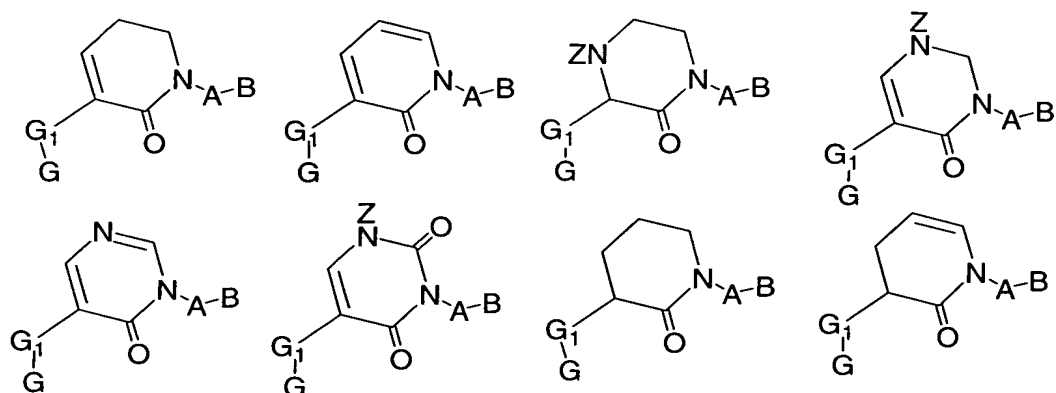


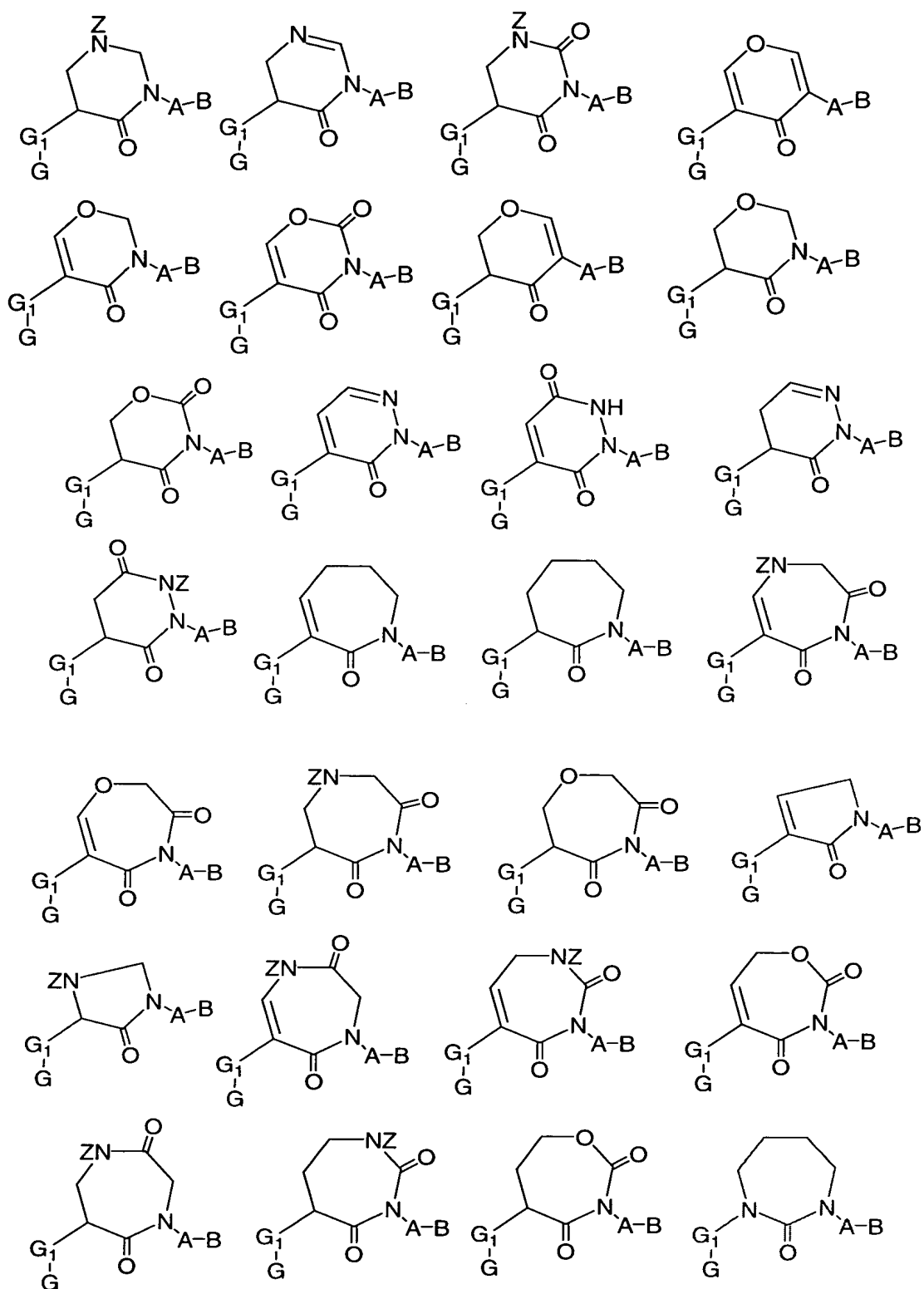


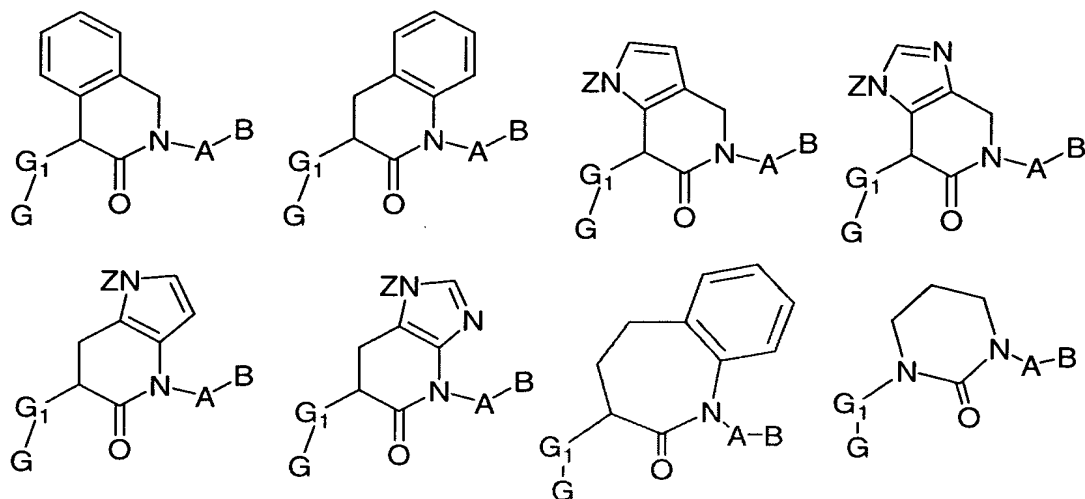


wherein compounds of the above formulas are substituted  
 5 with 0-2 R<sup>1a</sup>.

In another preferred embodiment, the present  
 invention provides a novel compound, wherein the compound  
 10 is selected from:



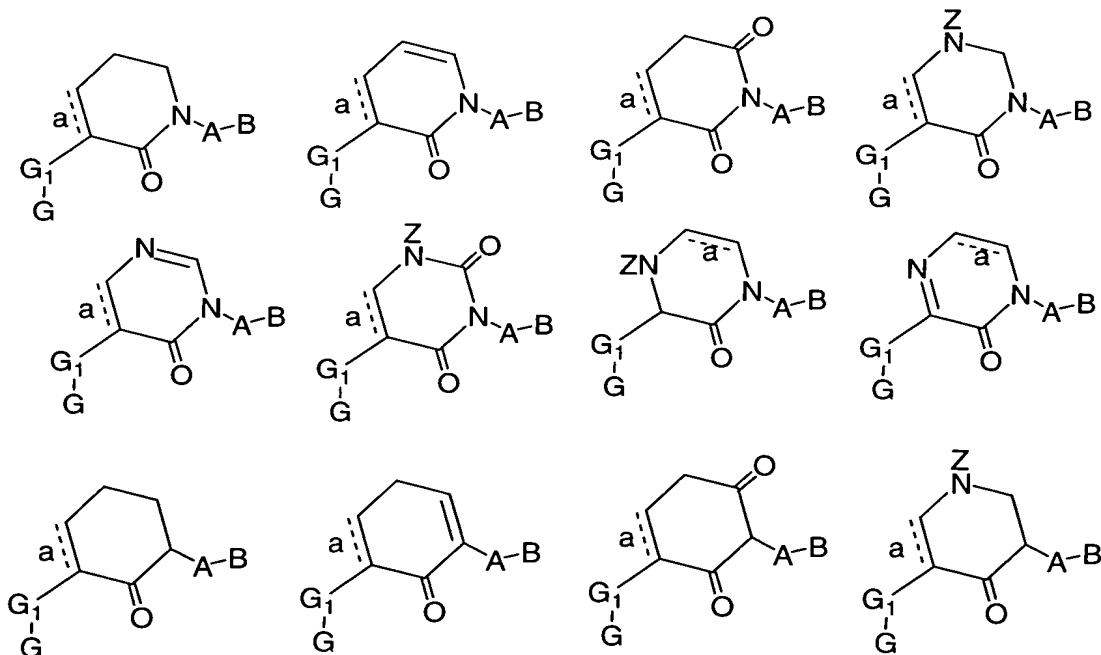




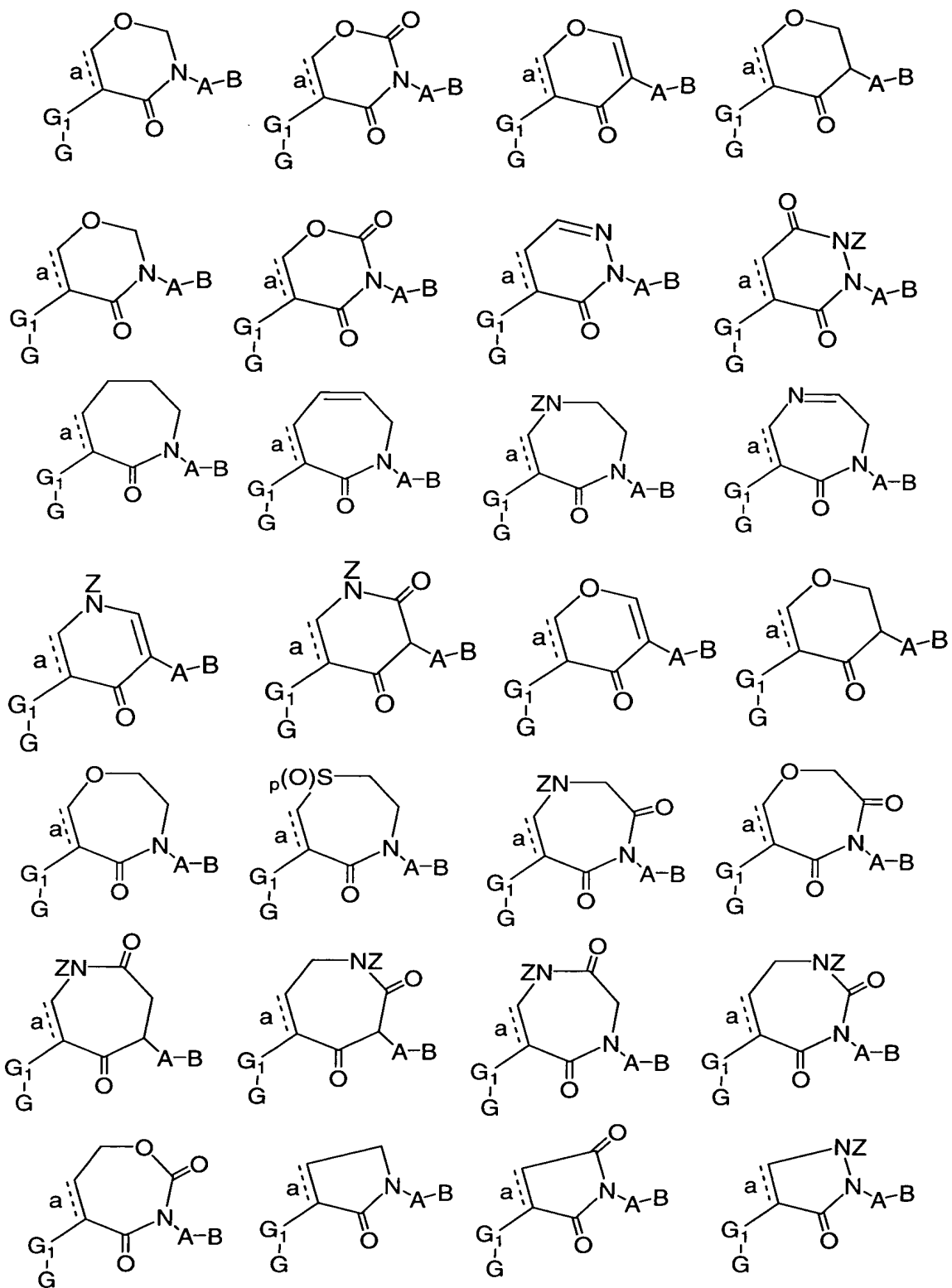
wherein compounds of the above formulas are substituted with 0-2 R<sup>1a</sup>.

5

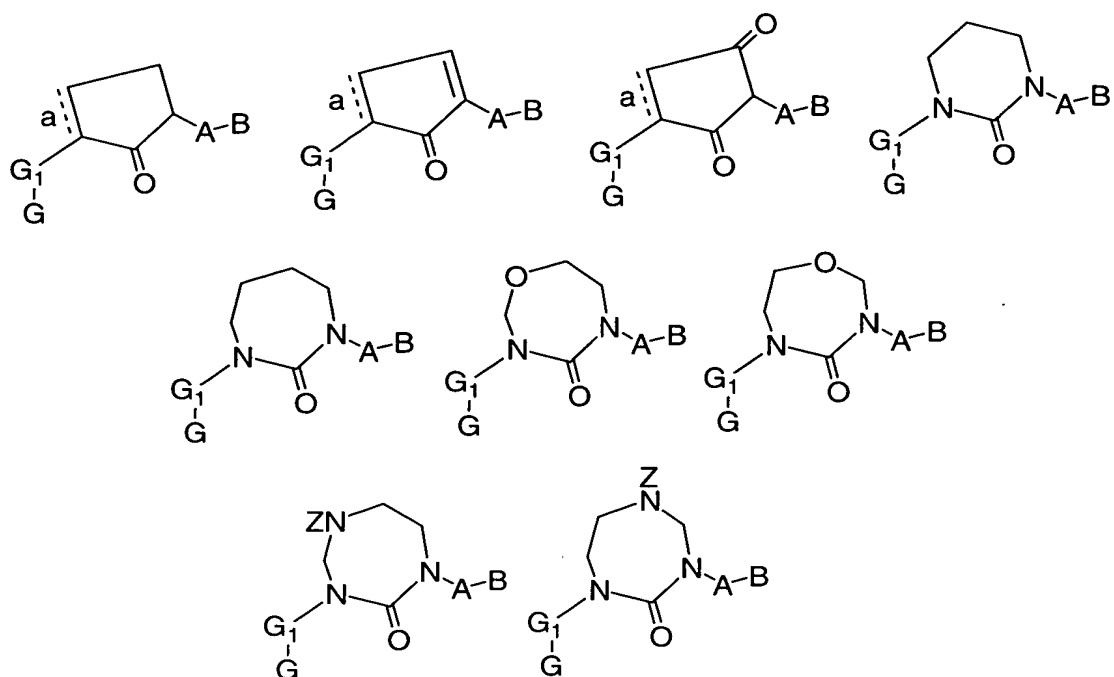
In another preferred embodiment, the present invention provides a novel compound, wherein the compound is selected from:



10



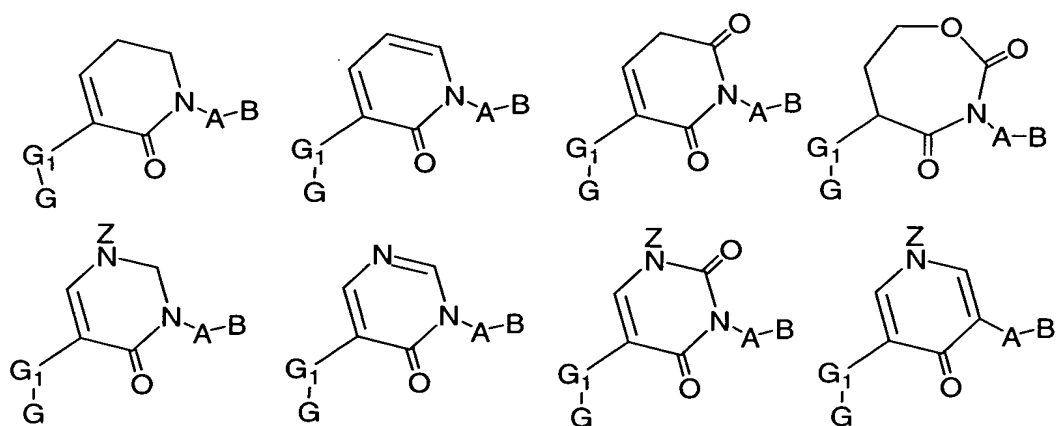
5



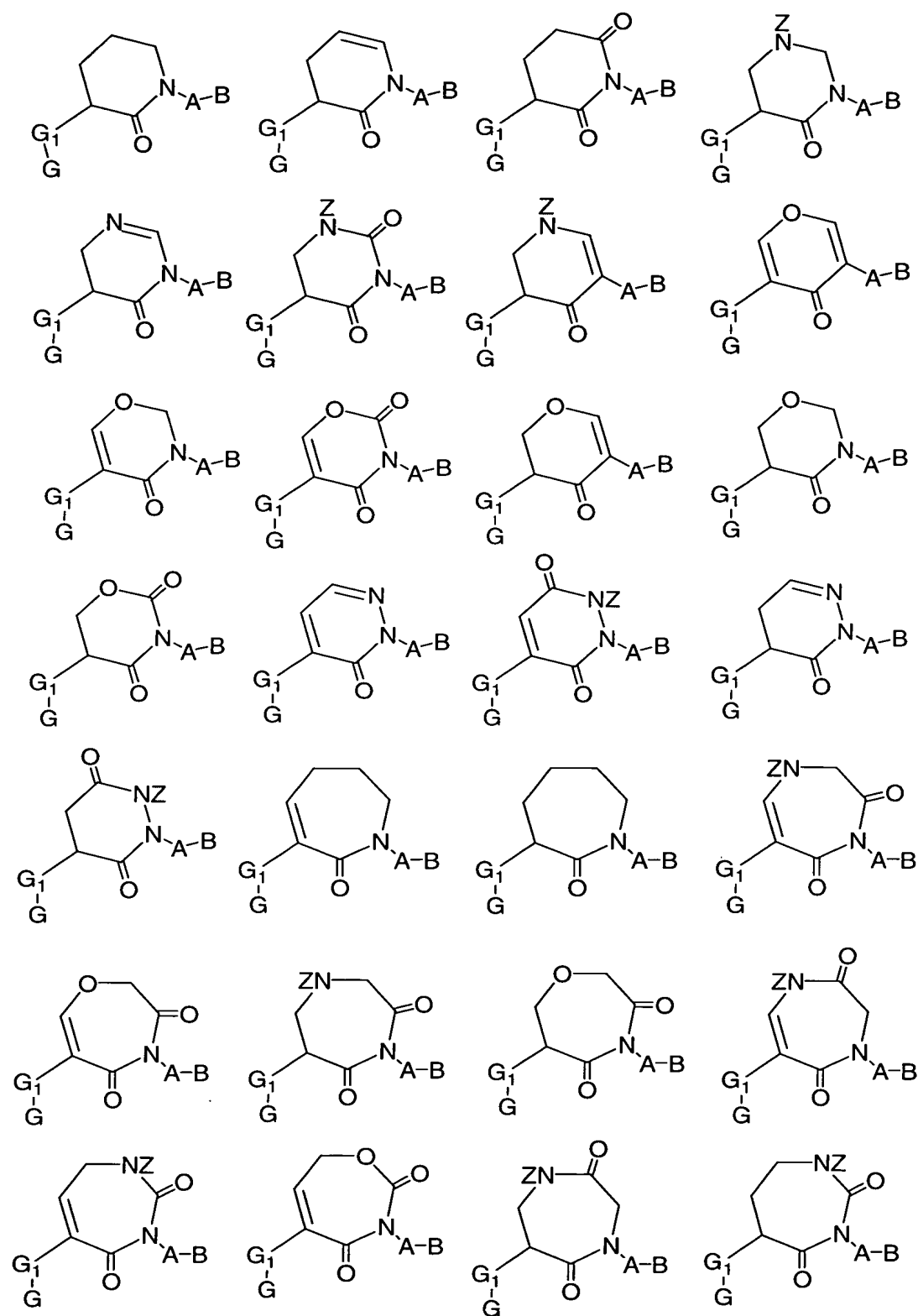
wherein the above formulas are substituted with 0-2 R<sup>1a</sup>  
and "a" is a single or double bond.

5

In another preferred embodiment, the present  
invention provides a novel compound, wherein the compound  
is selected from the group:



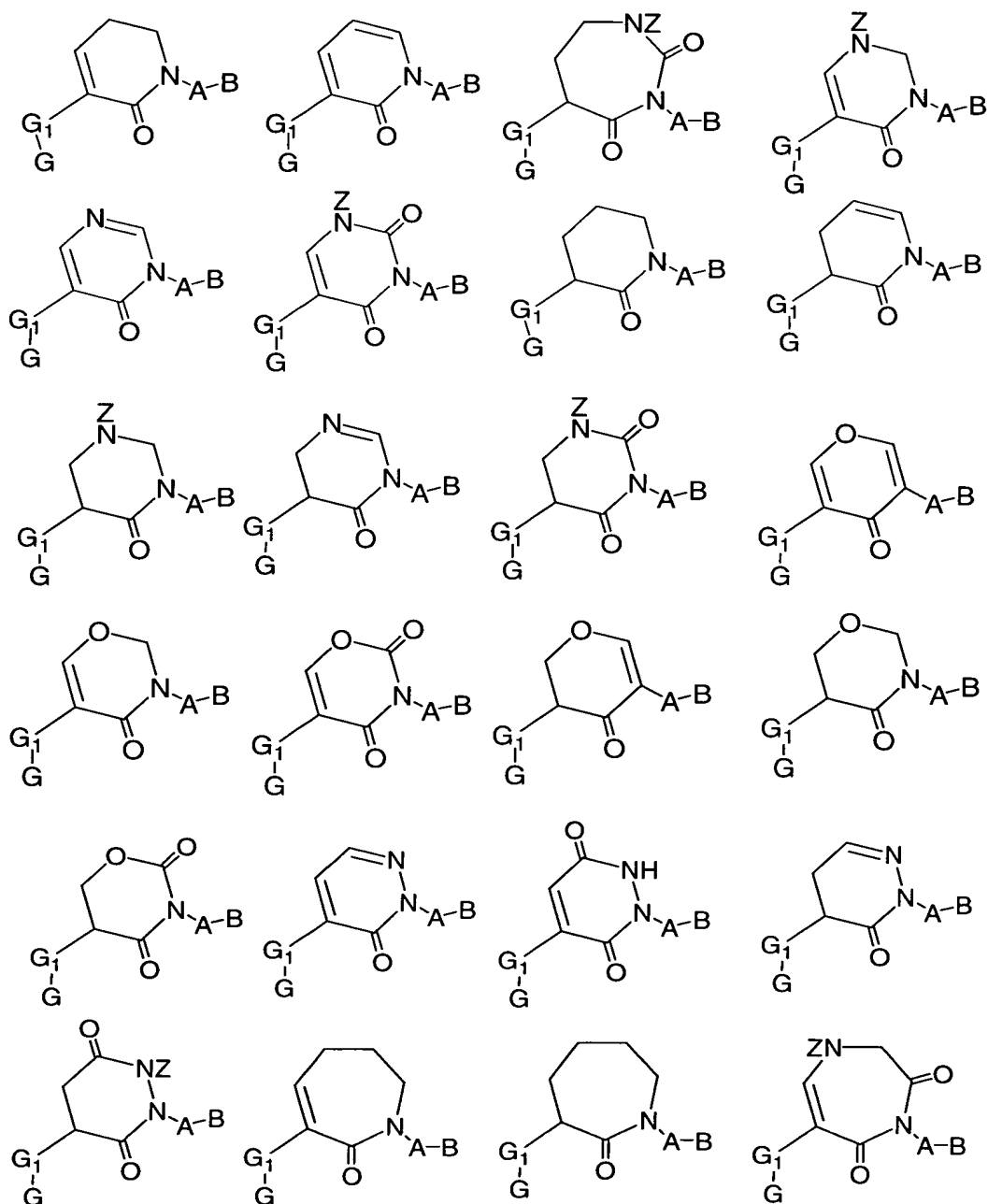
10

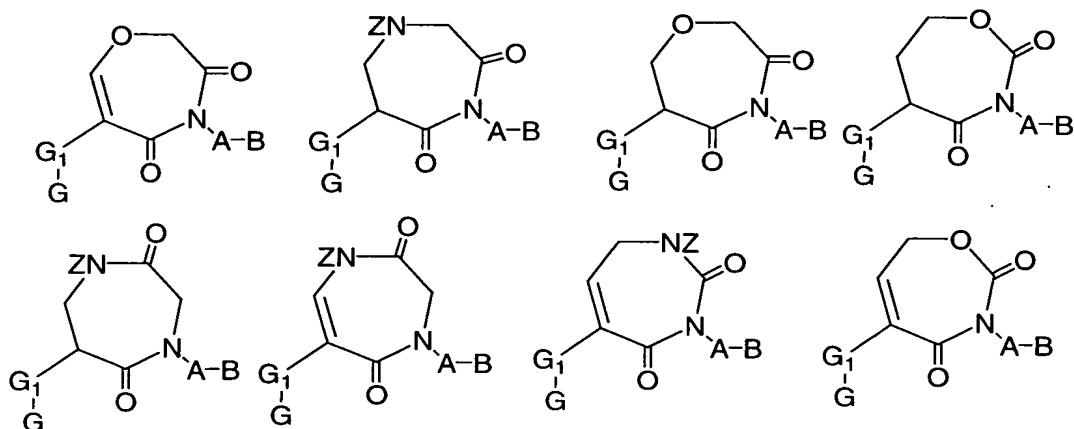




wherein compounds of the above formulas are substituted  
with 0-2 R<sup>1a</sup>.

5 In another preferred embodiment, the present  
invention provides a novel compound, wherein the compound  
is selected from:

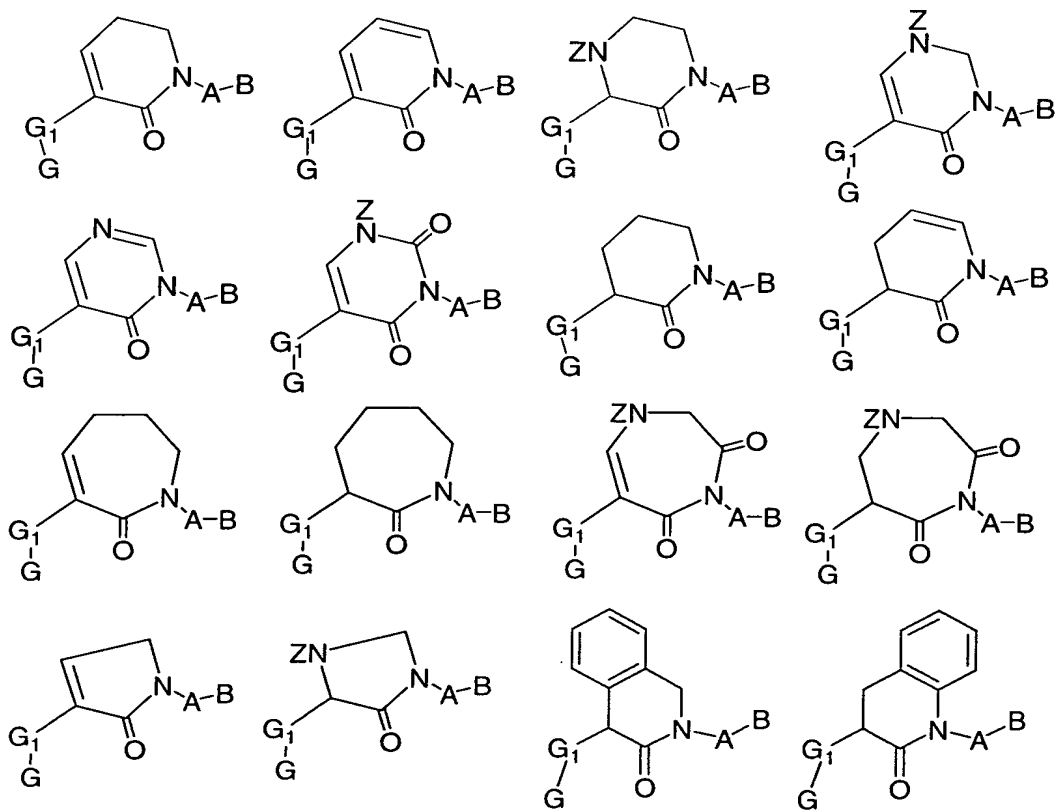




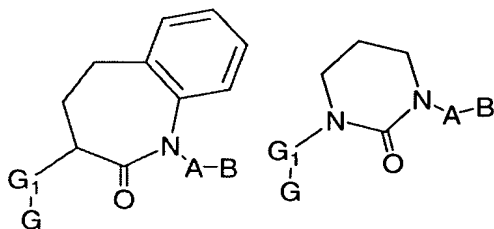
wherein compounds of the above formulas are substituted with 0-2 R<sup>1a</sup>.

5

In another preferred embodiment, the present invention provides a novel compound, wherein the compound is selected from:



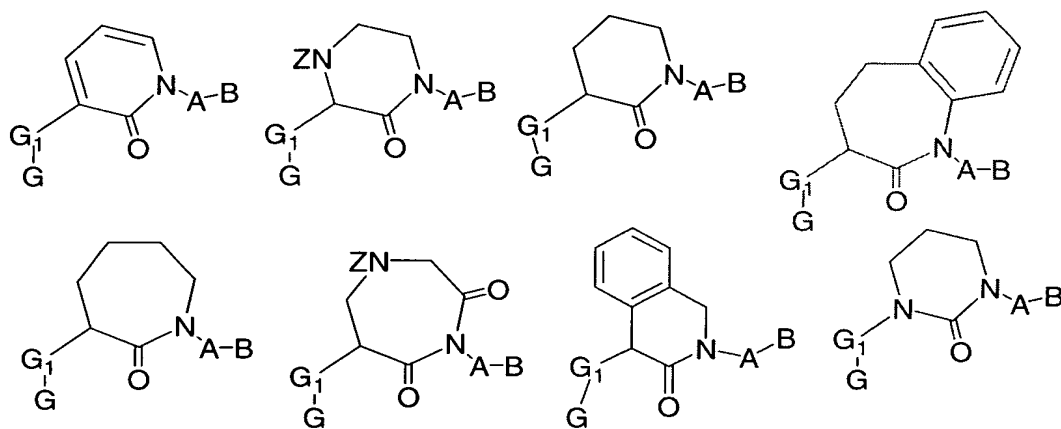
10



wherein compounds of the above formulas are substituted  
with 0-2 R<sup>1a</sup>.

5

In another preferred embodiment, the present  
invention provides a novel compound, wherein the compound  
is selected from:



10

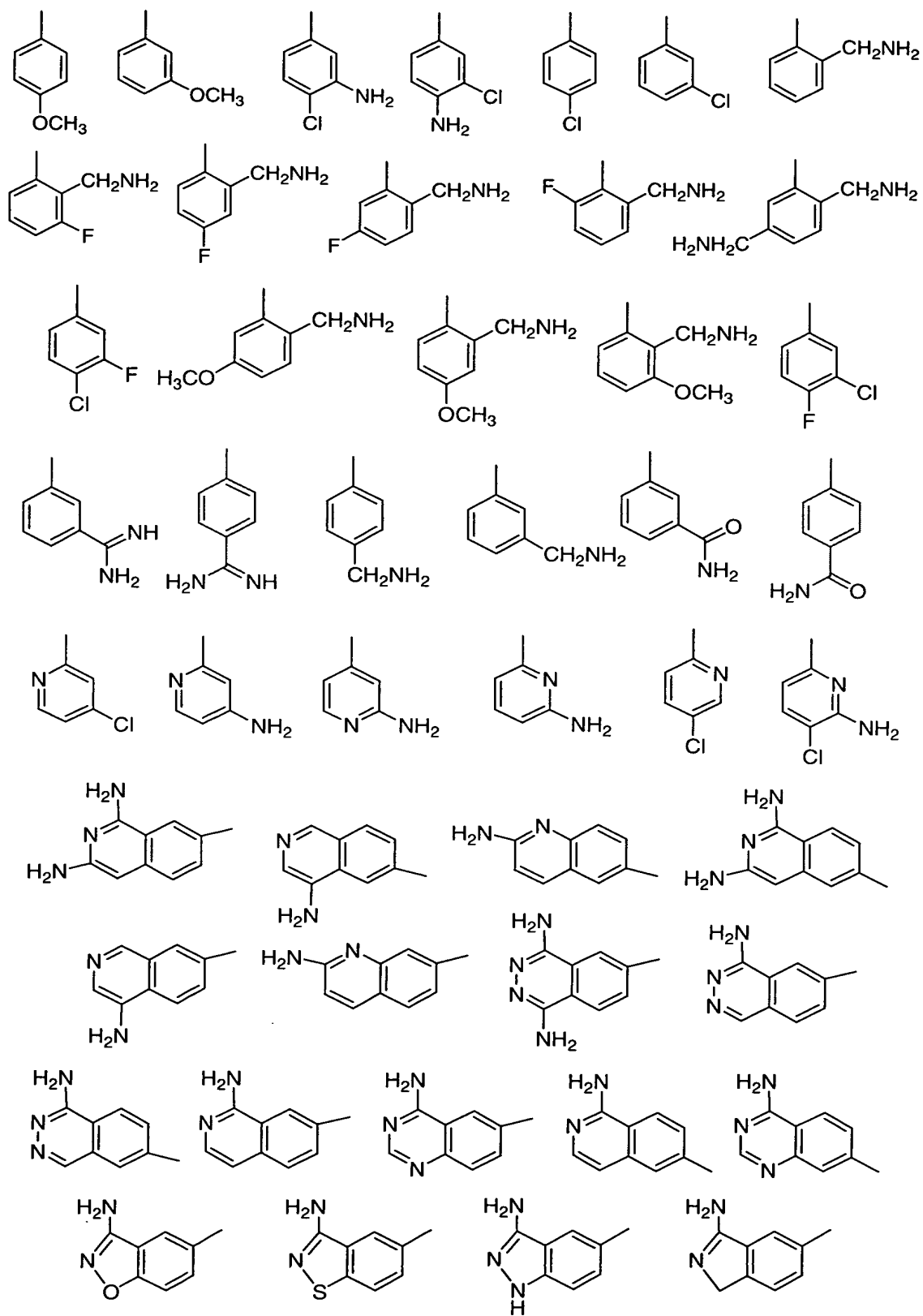
wherein compounds of the above formulas are substituted  
with 0-2 R<sup>1a</sup>.

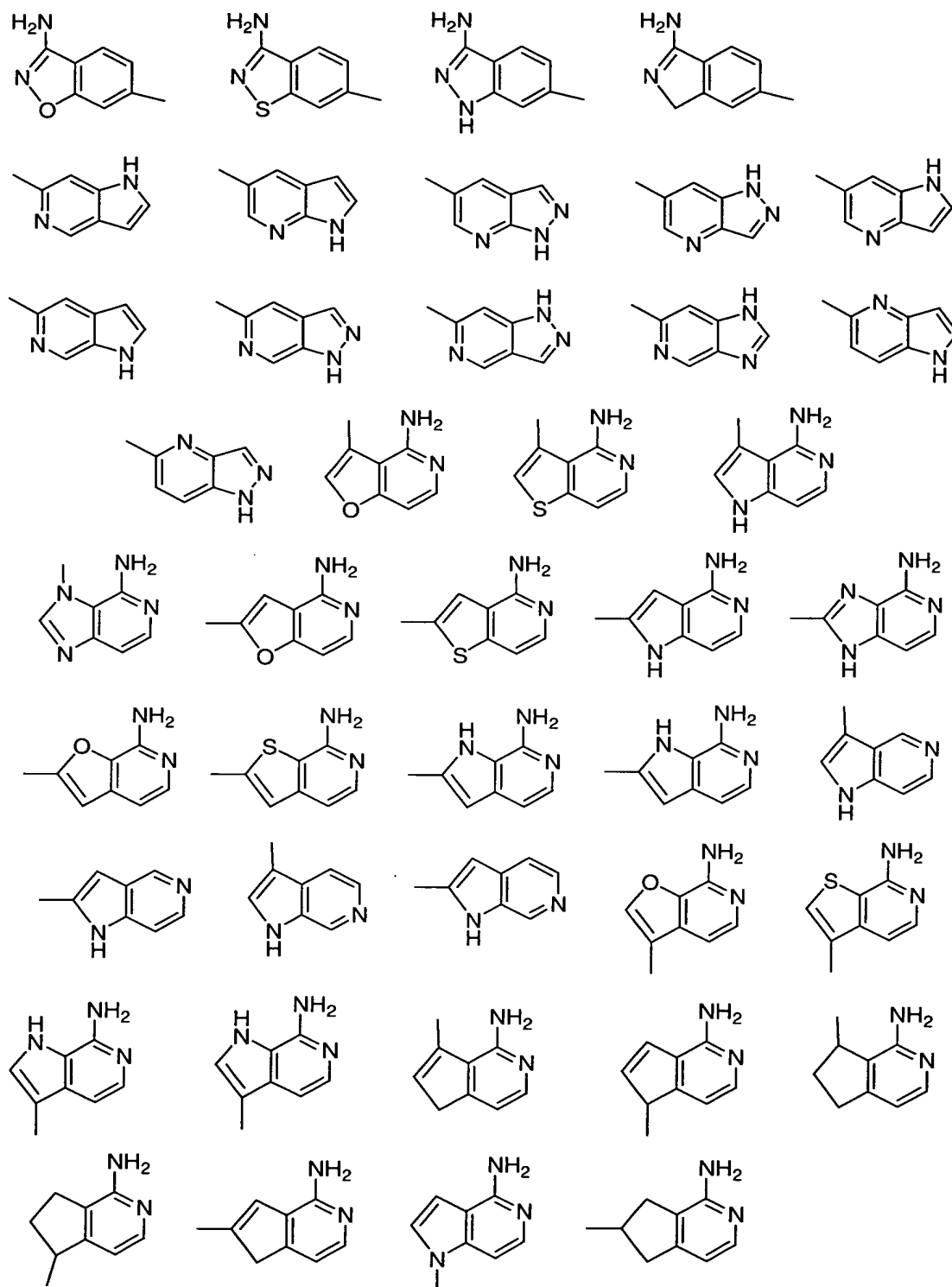
15

In another preferred embodiment, the present  
invention provides a novel compound, wherein;

G is selected from the group:

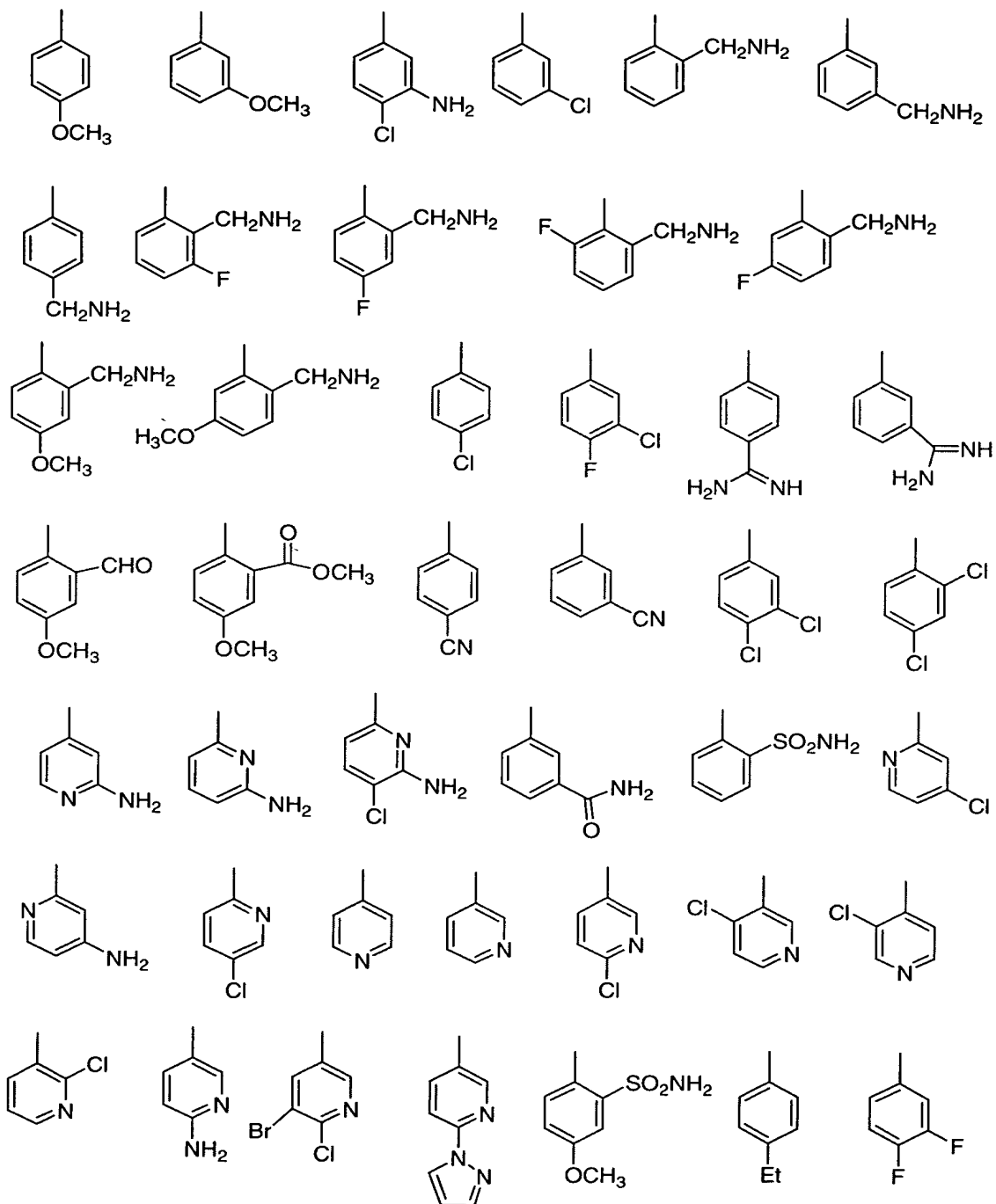
20

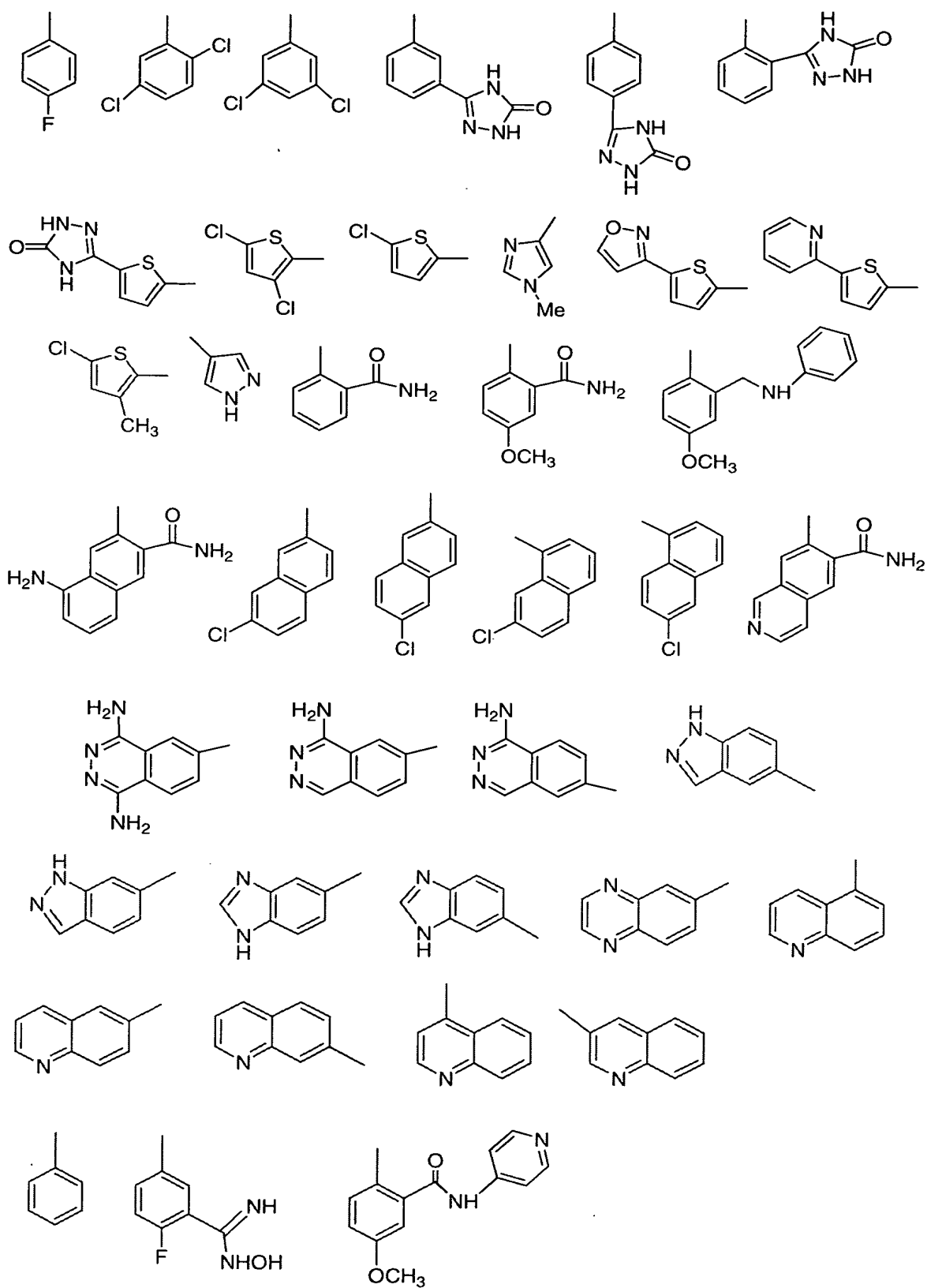




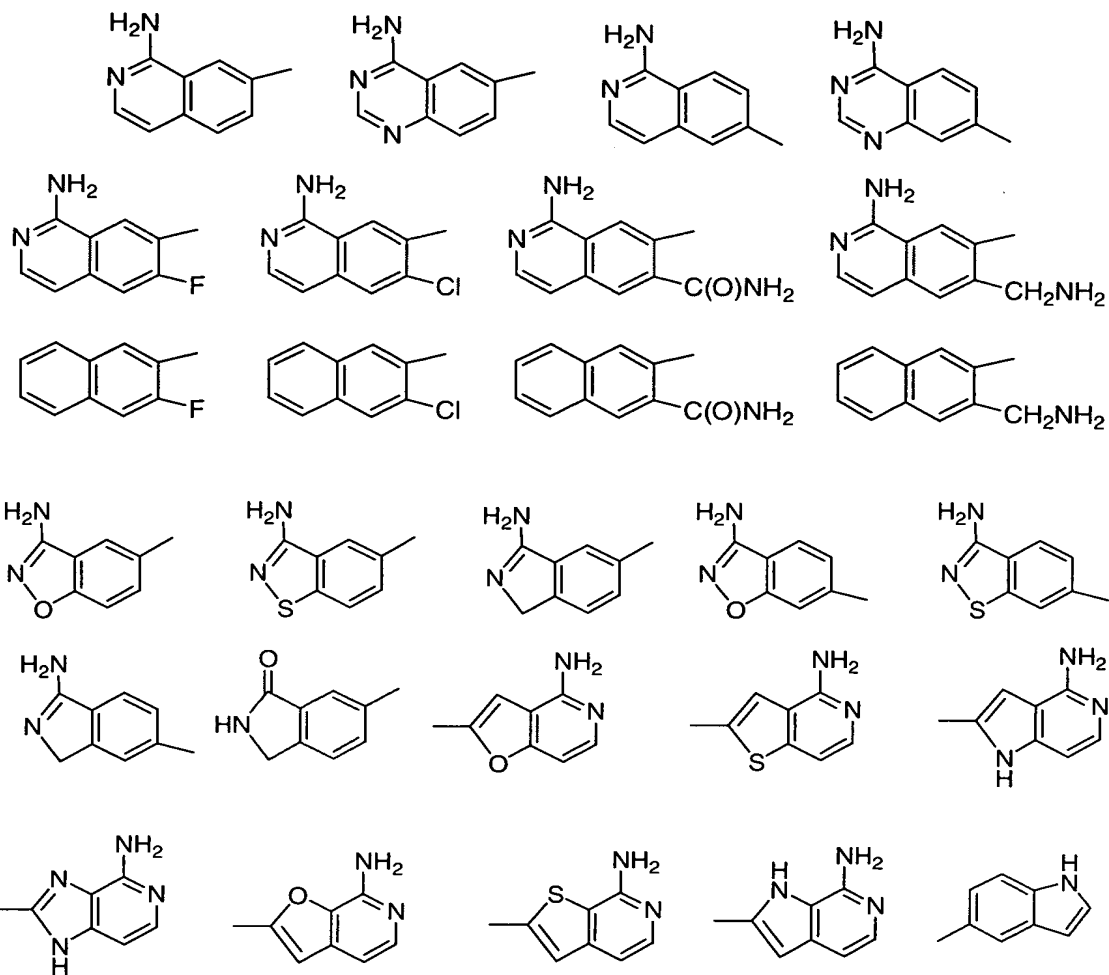
In another preferred embodiment, the present invention provides a novel compound, wherein;

G is selected from the group:



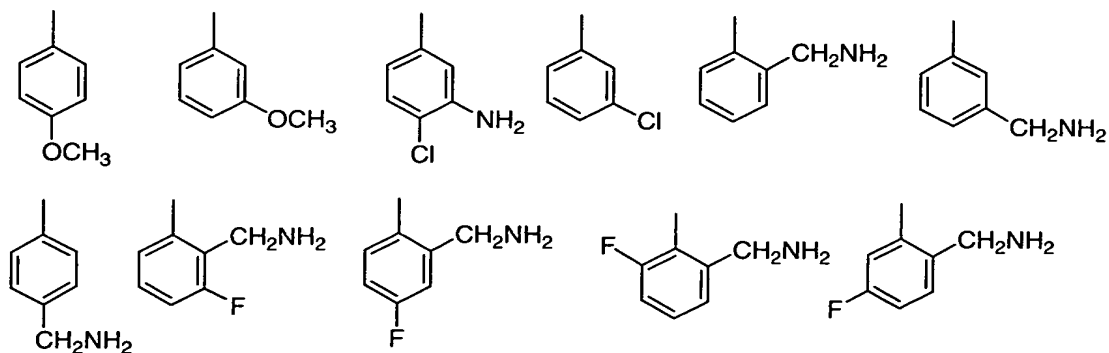


5

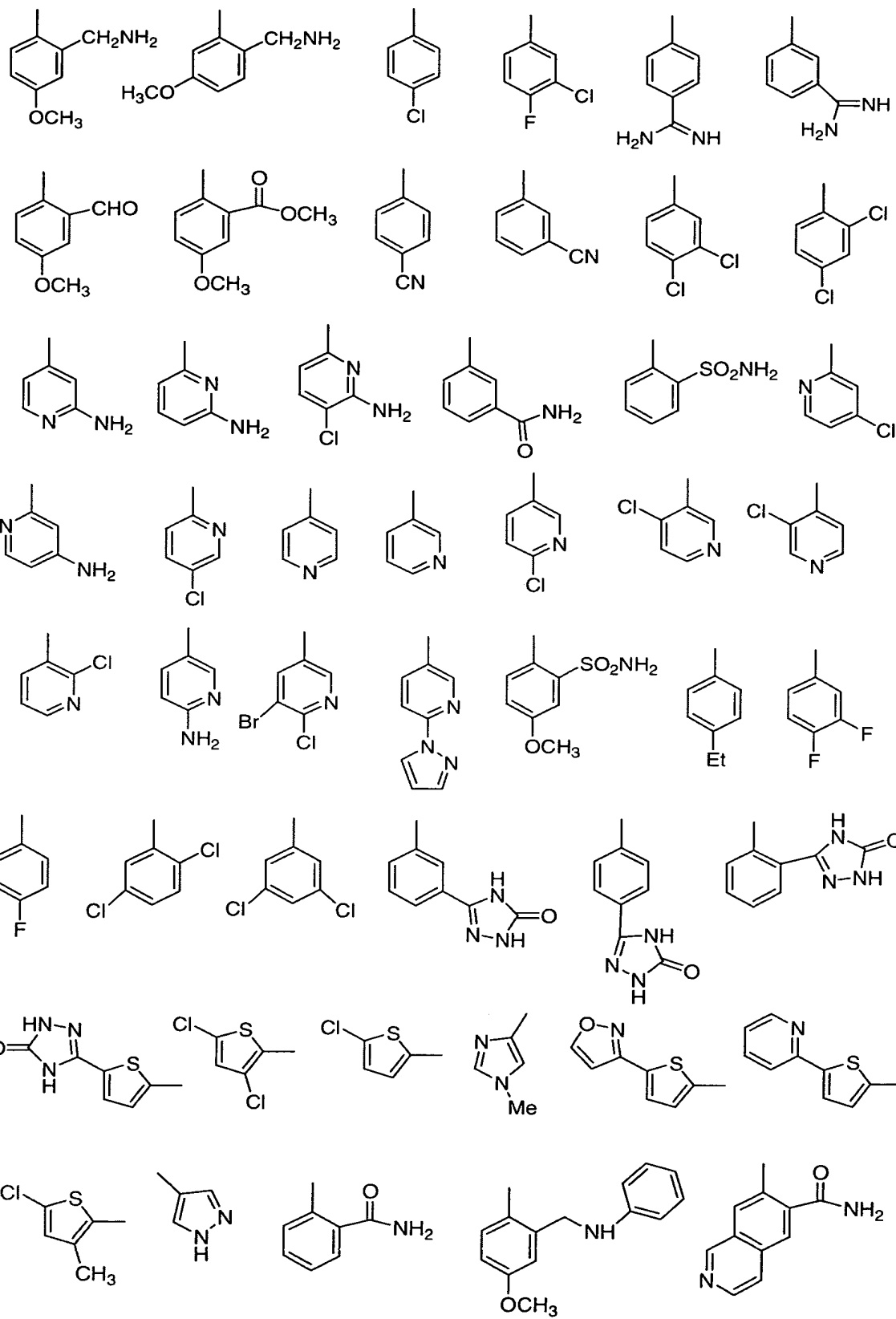


In another preferred embodiment, the present  
 10 invention provides a novel compound, wherein;

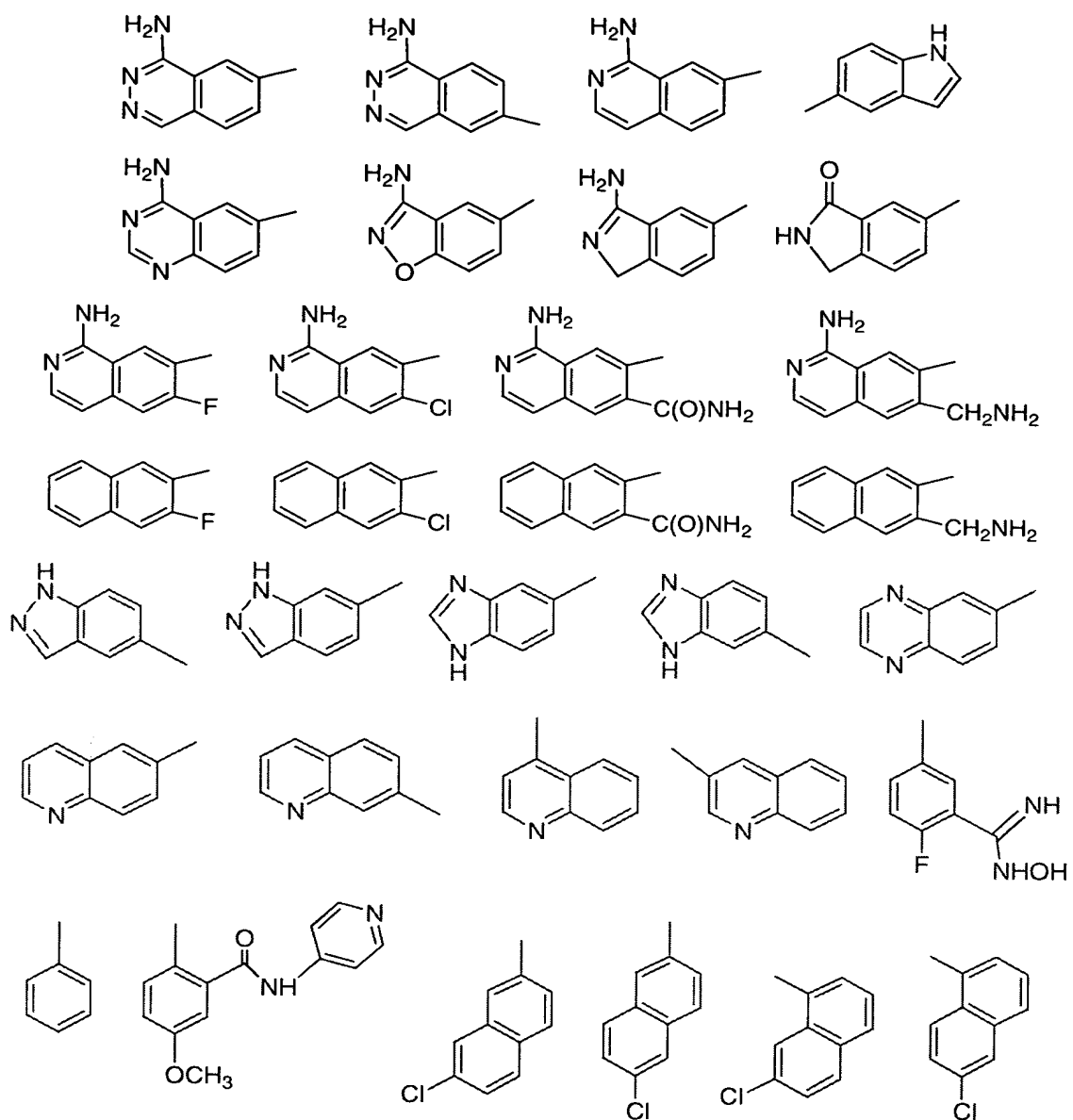
G is selected from the group:





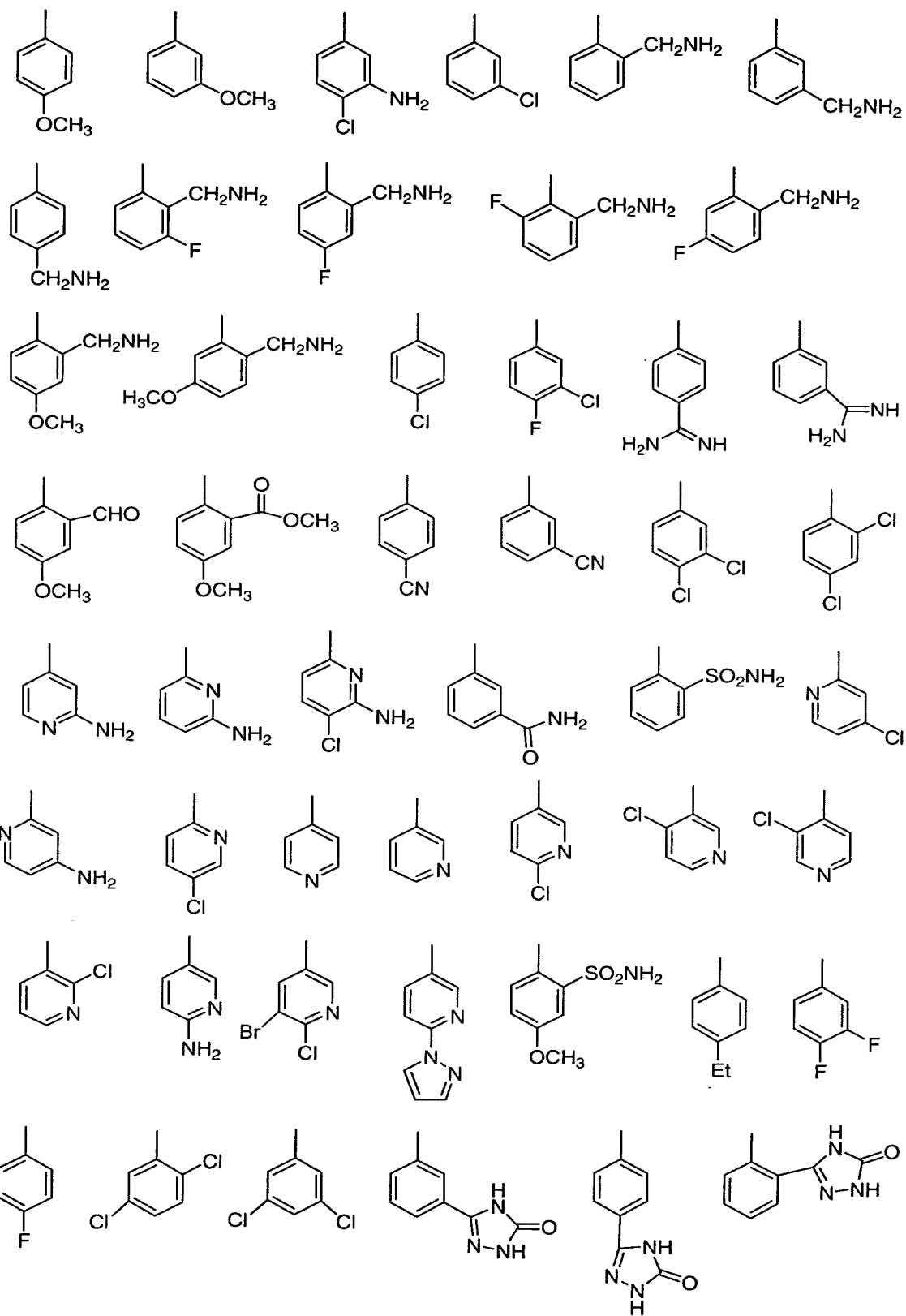


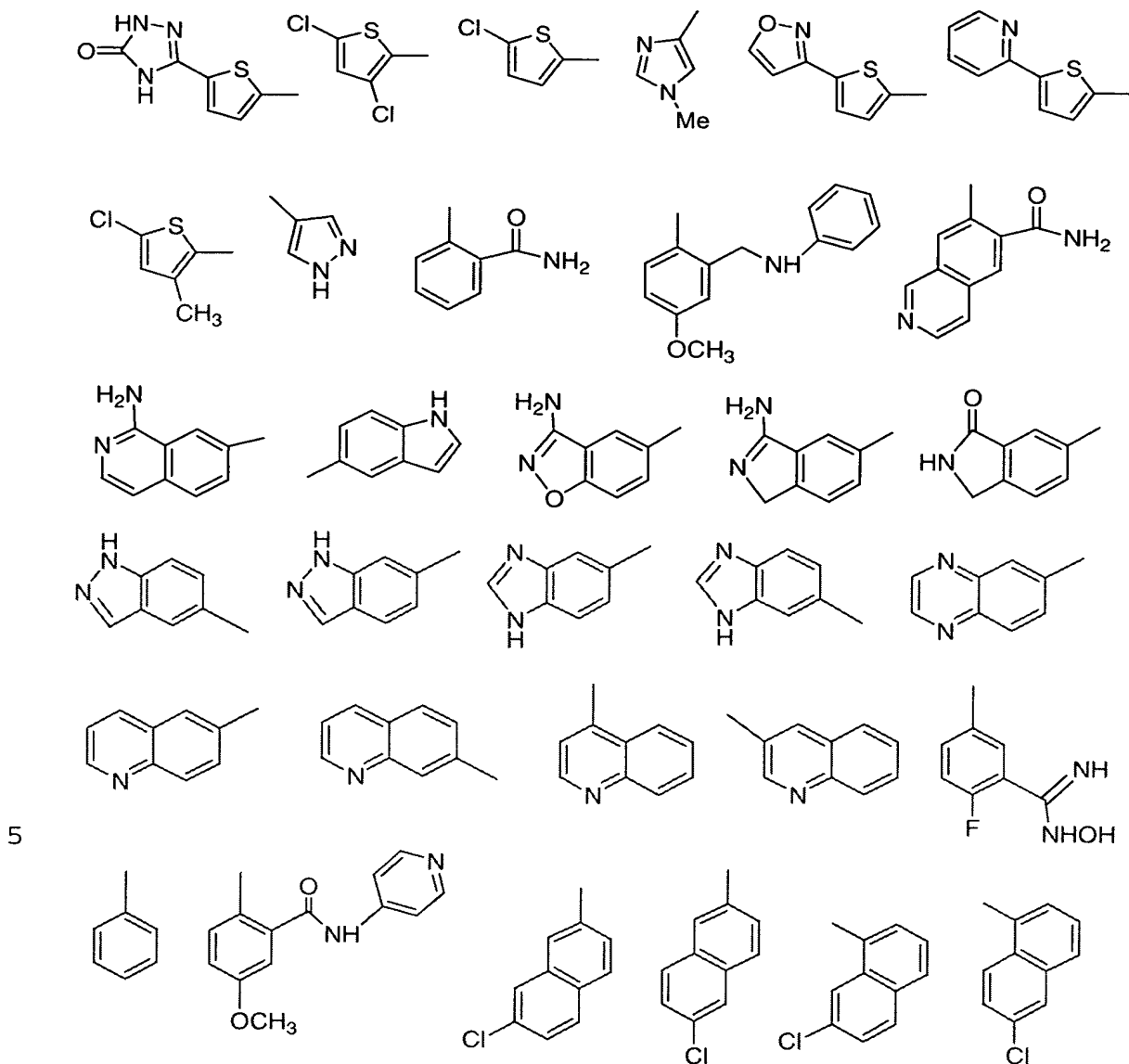
5



In another preferred embodiment, the present invention provides a novel compound, wherein;

G is selected from the group:





10 In another preferred embodiment, the present invention provides a novel compound, wherein;

15  $G_1$  is selected from  $(CR^3aR^3b)_{1-2}$ ,  $CR^3=CR^3$ ,  $C\equiv C$ ,  
 $(CHR^3a)_u C(O)(CHR^3a)_w$ ,  $(CHR^3a)_u C(O)O(CHR^3a)_w$ ,  
 $(CHR^3a)_u O(CHR^3a)_w$ ,  $(CHR^3a)_u NR^3e(CHR^3a)_w$ ,  
 $(CHR^3a)_u C(O)NR^3(CHR^3a)_w$ ,  $(CHR^3a)_u NR^3C(O)(CHR^3a)_w$ ,  
 $(CHR^3a)_u S(O)_2(CHR^3a)_w$ ,  $(CHR^3a)_u NR^3S(O)_2(CHR^3a)_w$ , and

$(\text{CHR}^{3a})_u\text{S}(\text{O})_2\text{NR}^3(\text{CHR}^{3a})_w$ , wherein  $u + w$  total 0, 1, or 2, provided that  $G_1$  does not form a N-N or N-O bond with either group to which it is attached.

5

In another preferred embodiment, the present invention provides a novel compound, wherein;

A is selected from one of the following carbocyclic and  
10 heterocyclic systems which are substituted with 0-2  $R^4$ ;

phenyl, piperidinyl, piperazinyl, pyridyl,  
pyrimidyl, furanyl, morpholinyl, thienyl, pyrrolyl,  
pyrrolidinyl, oxazolyl, isoxazolyl, thiazolyl,  
15 isothiazolyl, pyrazolyl, imidazolyl, oxadiazolyl,  
thiadiazolyl, triazolyl, 1,2,3-oxadiazolyl,  
1,2,4-oxadiazolyl, 1,2,5-oxadiazolyl,  
1,3,4-oxadiazolyl, 1,2,3-thiadiazolyl,  
1,2,4-thiadiazolyl, 1,2,5-thiadiazolyl,  
20 1,3,4-thiadiazolyl, 1,2,3-triazolyl,  
1,2,4-triazolyl, 1,2,5-triazolyl, 1,3,4-triazolyl,  
benzofuranyl, benzothiofuranyl, indolyl,  
benzimidazolyl, benzoxazolyl, benzthiazolyl,  
indazolyl, benzisoxazolyl, benzisothiazolyl, and  
25 isoindazolyl.

In another preferred embodiment, the present invention provides a novel compound, wherein;

30

A is selected from phenyl, piperidinyl, pyridyl, and pyrimidyl, and is substituted with 0-2  $R^4$ .

In another preferred embodiment, the present invention provides a novel compound, wherein;

5 A is selected from the group: phenyl, piperidinyl, 2-pyridyl, 3-pyridyl, 2-pyrimidyl, 2-Cl-phenyl, 3-Cl-phenyl, 2-F-phenyl, 3-F-phenyl, 2-methylphenyl, 2-aminophenyl, and 2-methoxyphenyl.

10 In another preferred embodiment, the present invention provides a novel compound, wherein;

B is selected from: Y and X-Y;

15 X is selected from  $-(CR^2R^{2a})_{1-4}-$ ,  $-C(O)-$ ,  $-C(=NR^{1c})-$ ,  $-CR^2(NR^{1c}R^2)-$ ,  $-C(O)CR^2R^{2a}-$ ,  $-CR^2R^{2a}C(O)-$ ,  $-C(O)NR^2-$ ,  $-NR^2C(O)-$ ,  $-C(O)NR^2CR^2R^{2a}-$ ,  $-NR^2C(O)CR^2R^{2a}-$ ,  $-CR^2R^{2a}C(O)NR^2-$ ,  $-CR^2R^{2a}NR^2C(O)-$ ,  $-NR^2C(O)NR^2-$ ,  $-NR^2-$ ,  $-NR^2CR^2R^{2a}-$ ,  $-CR^2R^{2a}NR^2-$ , O,  $-CR^2R^{2a}O-$ , and  $-OCR^2R^{2a}-$ ;

20

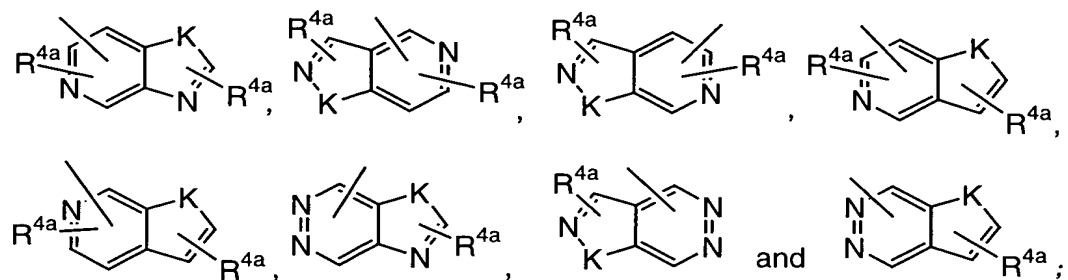
Y is  $-(CH_2)_rNR^2R^{2a}$ , provided that X-Y do not form a N-N or O-N bond;

alternatively, Y is selected from one of the following  
25 carbocyclic and heterocyclic systems which are substituted with 0-2  $R^{4a}$ ;

cyclopropyl, cyclopentyl, cyclohexyl, phenyl,  
piperidinyl, piperazinyl, pyridyl, pyrimidyl,  
furanyl, morpholinyl, thienyl, pyrrolyl,  
30 pyrrolidinyl, oxazolyl, isoxazolyl, isoxazolinyl,  
thiazolyl, isothiazolyl, pyrazolyl, imidazolyl,  
oxadiazolyl, thiadiazolyl, triazolyl,  
1,2,3-oxadiazolyl, 1,2,4-oxadiazolyl,  
1,2,5-oxadiazolyl, 1,3,4-oxadiazolyl,

1,2,3-thiadiazolyl, 1,2,4-thiadiazolyl,  
 1,2,5-thiadiazolyl, 1,3,4-thiadiazolyl,  
 1,2,3-triazolyl, 1,2,4-triazolyl, 1,2,5-triazolyl,  
 1,3,4-triazolyl, benzofuranyl, benzothiofuranyl,  
 5 indolyl, benzimidazolyl, benzoxazolyl,  
 benzthiazolyl, indazolyl, benzisoxazolyl,  
 benzisothiazolyl, and isoindazolyl; and

alternatively, Y is selected from the following bicyclic  
 10 heteroaryl ring systems:



K is selected from O, S, NH, and N.

15

In another preferred embodiment, the present  
 invention provides a novel compound, wherein;

20 B is selected from phenyl, pyrrolidino, N-pyrrolidino-  
 carbonyl, morpholino, N-morpholino-carbonyl, 1,2,3-  
 triazolyl, imidazolyl, and benzimidazolyl, and is  
 substituted with 0-1 R<sup>4a</sup>.

25

In another preferred embodiment, the present  
 invention provides a novel compound, wherein;

B is selected from the group: 2-(aminosulfonyl)phenyl, 2-  
 30 (methylaminosulfonyl)phenyl, 1-pyrrolidinocarbonyl,

2-(methylsulfonyl)phenyl, 2-(N,N-dimethylaminomethyl)phenyl, 2-(N,N-diethylaminomethyl)phenyl, 2-(N-methylaminomethyl)phenyl, 2-(N-ethyl-N-methylaminomethyl)phenyl, 2-(N-pyrrolidinylmethyl)phenyl, 1-methyl-2-imidazolyl, 2-methyl-1-imidazolyl, 2-(dimethylaminomethyl)-1-imidazolyl, 2-(methylaminomethyl)-1-imidazolyl, 2-(N-(cyclopropylmethyl)aminomethyl)phenyl, 2-(N-(cyclobutyl)aminomethyl)phenyl, 2-(N-(cyclopentyl)aminomethyl)phenyl, 2-(N-(4-hydroxypiperidinyl)methyl)phenyl, 2-(N-(3-hydroxypyrrolidinyl)methyl)phenyl, and 2-(N-(2-hydroxyethyl)methylamino)-methyl)phenyl.

In another preferred embodiment, the present invention provides a novel compound, wherein;

R is selected from C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl, F, Cl, Br, I, OH, OCH<sub>3</sub>, OCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>, OCH(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>, OCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>, NH<sub>2</sub>, NH(C<sub>1-3</sub> alkyl), N(C<sub>1-3</sub> alkyl)<sub>2</sub>, C(=NH)NH<sub>2</sub>, CH<sub>2</sub>NH<sub>2</sub>, CH<sub>2</sub>NH(C<sub>1-3</sub> alkyl), CH<sub>2</sub>N(C<sub>1-3</sub> alkyl)<sub>2</sub>, CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>NH<sub>2</sub>, CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>NH(C<sub>1-3</sub> alkyl), and CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>N(C<sub>1-3</sub> alkyl)<sub>2</sub>.

In another preferred embodiment, the present invention provides a novel compound, wherein;

R<sup>a</sup> and R<sup>b</sup>, at each occurrence, are independently selected from H, C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl, F, Cl, Br, I, OH, OCH<sub>3</sub>, OCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>, OCH(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>, OCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>, NH<sub>2</sub>, NH(C<sub>1-3</sub> alkyl), N(C<sub>1-3</sub> alkyl)<sub>2</sub>, C(=NH)NH<sub>2</sub>, CH<sub>2</sub>NH<sub>2</sub>, CH<sub>2</sub>NH(C<sub>1-3</sub> alkyl),



$\text{CH}_2\text{N}(\text{C}_{1-3} \text{ alkyl})_2$ ,  $\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{NH}_2$ ,  $\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{NH}(\text{C}_{1-3} \text{ alkyl})$ ,  
and  $\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{N}(\text{C}_{1-3} \text{ alkyl})_2$ ; and

alternatively,  $\text{R}^a$  and  $\text{R}^b$  combine to form methylenedioxy or  
5 ethylenedioxy.

In another preferred embodiment, the present  
invention provides a novel compound, wherein;

10

$\text{R}^c$  is selected from  $\text{C}_{1-4}$  alkyl, F, Cl, Br, I, OH,  $\text{OCH}_3$ ,  
 $\text{OCH}_2\text{CH}_3$ ,  $\text{OCH}(\text{CH}_3)_2$ ,  $\text{OCH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_3$ , CN,  $\text{C}(=\text{NR}^8)\text{NR}^7\text{R}^9$ ,  
 $\text{NHC}(=\text{NR}^8)\text{NR}^7\text{R}^9$ ,  $\text{NR}^8\text{CH}(=\text{NR}^7)$ ,  $(\text{CR}^8\text{R}^9)_t\text{NR}^7\text{R}^8$ , and  
 $(\text{CR}^8\text{R}^9)_t\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NR}^7\text{R}^8$ .

15

In another preferred embodiment, the present  
invention provides a novel compound, wherein;

20  $\text{R}^3$ , at each occurrence, is selected from H,  
 $\text{C}_{1-4}$  alkyl substituted with 0-2  $\text{R}^{1a}$ ;  
 $\text{C}_{2-4}$  alkenyl substituted with 0-2  $\text{R}^{1a}$ ;  
 $\text{C}_{2-4}$  alkynyl substituted with 0-2  $\text{R}^{1a}$ ;  
 $\text{C}_{3-7}$  cycloalkyl( $\text{C}_{0-2}$  alkyl)- substituted with 0-3  $\text{R}^{1a}$ ;  
25 heterocyclyl( $\text{C}_{0-2}$  alkyl)- substituted with 0-3  $\text{R}^{1a}$ ;  
aryl( $\text{C}_{0-2}$  alkyl)- substituted with 0-3  $\text{R}^{1a}$ ;  
heteroaryl( $\text{C}_{0-2}$  alkyl)- substituted with 0-3  $\text{R}^{1a}$ .

30

In another preferred embodiment, the present  
invention provides a novel compound, wherein;

$R^4$ , at each occurrence, is selected from H, =O,  $(CH_2)_rOR^2$ ,  
 F, Cl, Br, I,  $C_{1-4}$  alkyl, -CN,  $NO_2$ ,  $(CH_2)_rNR^2R^{2a}$ ,  
 $(CH_2)_rC(O)R^{2c}$ ,  $NR^2C(O)R^{2b}$ ,  $C(O)NR^2R^{2a}$ ,  $NR^2C(O)NR^2R^{2a}$ ,  
 $NHC(=NR^2)NR^2R^{2a}$ ,  $C(O)NHC(=NR^2)NR^2R^{2a}$ ,  $SO_2NR^2R^{2a}$ ,  
 5  $NR^2SO_2NR^2R^{2a}$ ,  $NR^2SO_2-C_{1-4}$  alkyl,  $NR^2SO_2R^{3f}$ ,  $S(O)_pR^{3f}$ ,  
 $(CF_2)_rCF_3$ ,  $NCH_2R^{1c}$ ,  $OCH_2R^{1c}$ ,  $SCH_2R^{1c}$ ,  $N(CH_2)_2(CH_2)_tR^{1b}$ ,  
 $O(CH_2)_2(CH_2)_tR^{1b}$ , and  $S(CH_2)_2(CH_2)_tR^{1b}$ .

10 In another preferred embodiment, the present  
 invention provides a novel compound, wherein;

$R^4$ , at each occurrence, is selected from H, OH,  $OR^2$ ,  
 $(CH_2)OR^2$ ,  $(CH_2)_2OR^2$ , F, Br, Cl, I,  $C_{1-4}$  alkyl,  $NR^2R^{2a}$ ,  
 15  $(CH_2)NR^2R^{2a}$ ,  $(CH_2)_2NR^2R^{2a}$ ,  $CF_3$ , and  $(CF_2)CF_3$ .

In another preferred embodiment, the present  
 invention provides a novel compound, wherein;

20  $R^{4a}$ , at each occurrence, is selected from H, =O,  
 $(CH_2)_rOR^2$ ,  $(CH_2)_r-F$ ,  $(CH_2)_r-Br$ ,  $(CH_2)_r-Cl$ ,  $C_{1-4}$  alkyl,  
 -CN,  $NO_2$ ,  $(CH_2)_rNR^2R^{2a}$ ,  $(CH_2)_rC(O)R^{2c}$ ,  $NR^2C(O)R^{2b}$ ,  
 $C(O)NR^2R^{2a}$ ,  $(CH_2)_rN=CHOR^3$ ,  $C(O)NH(CH_2)_2NR^2R^{2a}$ ,  
 25  $NR^2C(O)NR^2R^{2a}$ ,  $NHC(=NR^2)NR^2R^{2a}$ ,  $SO_2NR^2R^{2a}$ ,  
 $NR^2SO_2NR^2R^{2a}$ ,  $NR^2SO_2-C_{1-4}$  alkyl,  $C(O)NHSO_2-C_{1-4}$  alkyl,  
 $NR^2SO_2R^{3f}$ ,  $S(O)_pR^{3f}$ , and  $(CF_2)_rCF_3$ .

In another preferred embodiment, the present  
 30 invention provides a novel compound, wherein;

R<sup>4a</sup> is selected from H, C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl, CF<sub>3</sub>, OR<sup>2</sup>, (CH<sub>2</sub>)OR<sup>2</sup>,  
 (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2</sub>OR<sup>2</sup>, NR<sup>2</sup>R<sup>2a</sup>, (CH<sub>2</sub>)NR<sup>2</sup>R<sup>2a</sup>, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2</sub>NR<sup>2</sup>R<sup>2a</sup>, SR<sup>5</sup>,  
 S(O)R<sup>5</sup>, S(O)<sub>2</sub>R<sup>5</sup>, SO<sub>2</sub>NR<sup>2</sup>R<sup>2a</sup>, and 1-CF<sub>3</sub>-tetrazol-2-yl.

5

In another preferred embodiment, the present invention provides a novel compound, wherein;

R<sup>4b</sup>, at each occurrence, is selected from H, =O,  
 10 (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>r</sub>OR<sup>3</sup>, F, Cl, Br, I, C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl, CN, NO<sub>2</sub>,  
 (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>r</sub>NR<sup>3</sup>R<sup>3a</sup>, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>r</sub>C(O)R<sup>3</sup>, (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>r</sub>C(O)OR<sup>3c</sup>, NR<sup>3</sup>C(O)R<sup>3a</sup>,  
 C(O)NR<sup>3</sup>R<sup>3a</sup>, NR<sup>3</sup>C(O)NR<sup>3</sup>R<sup>3a</sup>, NR<sup>3</sup>C(=NR<sup>3</sup>)NR<sup>3</sup>R<sup>3a</sup>, SO<sub>2</sub>NR<sup>3</sup>R<sup>3a</sup>,  
 NR<sup>3</sup>SO<sub>2</sub>NR<sup>3</sup>R<sup>3a</sup>, NR<sup>3</sup>SO<sub>2</sub>-C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl, NR<sup>3</sup>SO<sub>2</sub>CF<sub>3</sub>,  
 NR<sup>3</sup>SO<sub>2</sub>-phenyl, S(O)<sub>p</sub>CF<sub>3</sub>, -S(O)<sub>p</sub>-C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl,  
 15 S(O)<sub>p</sub>-phenyl, and (CF<sub>2</sub>)<sub>r</sub>CF<sub>3</sub>.

In another preferred embodiment, the present invention provides a novel compound, wherein;

20

R<sup>4b</sup>, at each occurrence, is selected from H, CH<sub>3</sub>, and OH.

In another preferred embodiment, the present invention provides a novel compound, wherein;

25

R<sup>5</sup>, at each occurrence, is selected from H, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl,  
 =O, CF<sub>3</sub>, phenyl substituted with 0-2 R<sup>6</sup>, naphthyl  
 substituted with 0-2 R<sup>6</sup>, and benzyl substituted with  
 30 0-2 R<sup>6</sup>.

In another preferred embodiment, the present invention provides a novel compound, wherein;

5        R<sup>5</sup>, at each occurrence, is selected from CF<sub>3</sub>, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, phenyl, and benzyl.

10        [7] In an even further preferred embodiment, the present invention provides a novel compound selected from:

3-({1-[3-fluoro-2'-(methylsulfonyl)-[1,1']-biphenyl-4-yl]-2-oxo-3-piperidinyl}oxy)benzonitrile;

15        3-({1-[3-fluoro-2'-(methylsulfonyl)-[1,1']-biphenyl-4-yl]-2-oxo-3-piperidinyl}oxy)benzene-carboximidamide;

4-({1-[3-fluoro-2'-(methylsulfonyl)-[1,1']-biphenyl-4-yl]-2-oxo-3-piperidinyl}oxy)benzene-carboximidamide;

20        3-({1-[2-[(dimethylamino)methyl]-3-fluoro-[1,1']-biphenyl-4-yl]-2-oxo-3-piperidinyl}oxy)benzonitrile;

25        3-({1-[2-[(dimethylamino)methyl]-3-fluoro-[1,1']-biphenyl-4-yl]-2-oxo-3-piperidinyl}oxy)benzene-carboximidamide;

3-({1-[2'-[(dimethylamino)methyl]-[1,1']-biphenyl-4-yl]-2-oxo-3-piperidinyl}oxy)benzene-carboximidamide;

30        3-({1-[2-[(dimethylamino)methyl]-3-fluoro-[1,1']-biphenyl-4-yl]-2-oxo-3-piperidinyl}amino)benzene-carboximidamide;

35        2,4-dichloro-N-{1-[3-fluoro-2'-(methylsulfonyl)-[1,1']-biphenyl-4-yl]-2-oxo-3-piperidinyl}benzamide;

- 3-chloro-*N*-{1-[3-fluoro-2'-(methylsulfonyl)-[1,1']-  
biphenyl-4-yl]-2-oxo-3-piperidinyl}-*N*-methyl-  
benzamide;
- 5 3,4-dichloro-*N*-{1-[3-fluoro-2'-(methylsulfonyl)-[1,1']-  
biphenyl-4-yl]-2-oxo-3-piperidinyl}-benzamide;
- 4-fluoro-*N*-{1-[3-fluoro-2'-(methylsulfonyl)-[1,1']-  
10 biphenyl-4-yl]-2-oxo-3-piperidinyl}-benzamide;
- 4-chloro-*N*-{1-[3-fluoro-2'-(methylsulfonyl)-[1,1']-  
biphenyl-4-yl]-2-oxo-3-piperidinyl}-benzamide;
- 15 2-chloro-*N*-{1-[3-fluoro-2'-(methylsulfonyl)-[1,1']-  
biphenyl-4-yl]-2-oxo-3-piperidinyl}-isonicotinamide;
- 6-chloro-*N*-{1-[3-fluoro-2'-(methylsulfonyl)-[1,1']-  
biphenyl-4-yl]-2-oxo-3-piperidinyl}-nicotinamide;
- 20 *N*-{1-[3-fluoro-2'-(methylsulfonyl)-[1,1']-biphenyl-4-yl]-  
2-oxo-3-piperidinyl}-6-(1*H*-pyrazol-1-  
yl)nicotinamide;
- 25 1-[3-fluoro-2'-(methylsulfonyl)-[1,1']-biphenyl-4-yl]-2-  
oxo-3-piperidinyl}-2-chloronicotinate;
- 1-[3-fluoro-2'-(methylsulfonyl)-[1,1']-biphenyl-4-yl]-2-  
oxo-3-piperidinyl-4-methoxybenzoate;
- 30 2-((1-[3-fluoro-2'-(methylsulfonyl)-[1,1']-biphenyl-4-  
yl)-2-oxo-3-piperidinyl)oxy)-5-methoxybenzaldehyde;

- 3-[{5-chloro-2-pyridynyl) amino]-1-[3-fluoro-2'-(methylsulfonyl)-[1,1']-biphenyl-4-yl]-2-piperidinone;
- 5 1-[3-fluoro-2'-(methylsulfonyl)-[1,1']-biphenyl-4-yl]-3(4-methoxyphenoxy)-2-piperidinone;
- 2-({1-[3-fluoro-2'-(methylsulfonyl)-[1,1']-biphenyl-4-yl]-2-oxo-3-piperidinyl}oxy)-5-methoxybenzoate;
- 10 3-[3-(aminomethyl)phenoxy]-1-[3-fluoro-2'-(methylsulfonyl)-[1,1']-biphenyl-4-yl]-2-piperidinone;
- 15 3-{[2-(anilinomethyl)-4-methoxyphenyl]oxo}-1-[3-fluoro-2'-(methylsulfonyl)-[1,1']-biphenyl-4-yl]-2-piperidinone;
- 20 3-chloro-*N*-{1-[3-fluoro-2'-(methylsulfonyl)-[1,1']-biphenyl-4-yl]-2-oxo-3-piperidinyl}-benzamide;
- N*-benzyl-4-chloro-*N*-{1-[3-fluoro-2'-(methylsulfonyl)-[1,1']-biphenyl-4-yl]-2-oxo-3-piperidinyl}-benzamide;
- 25 *N*-{1-[3-fluoro-2'-(methylthio)-[1,1']-biphenyl-4-yl]-2-oxo-3-piperidinyl}-1*H*-indole-5-carboxamide;
- N*-{1-[3-fluoro-2'-(methylthio)-[1,1']-biphenyl-4-yl]-2-oxo-3-piperidinyl}-1*H*-pyrazole-4-carboxamide;
- 30 *N*-{1-[3-fluoro-2'-(methylthio)-[1,1']-biphenyl-4-yl]-2-oxo-3-piperidinyl}-isonicotinamide;

*N*-{1-[3-fluoro-2'-(methylthio)-[1,1']-biphenyl-4-yl]-2-oxo-3-piperidinyl}-nicotinamide;

5 6-amino-*N*-{1-[3-fluoro-2'-(methylthio)-[1,1']-biphenyl-4-yl]-2-oxo-3-piperidinyl}-nicotinamide;

6-amino-*N*-{1-[3-fluoro-2'-(methylthio)-[1,1']-biphenyl-4-yl]-2-oxo-3-piperidinyl}-nicotinamide;

10 3-{{1-[2'-aminosulfonyl-[1,1']-biphenyl-4-yl]-2-oxo-3-piperidinyl}(benzyl)amino)sulfonyl}benzenecarboximidamide;

15 3-{{1-(3-fluoro-2'-aminosulfonyl)-[1,1']-biphenyl-4-yl]-2-oxo-3-piperidinyl}(benzyl)amino)sulfonyl}benzenecarboximidamide;

20 3-{*N*-benzyl-*N*-[2-oxo-1-(2'-sulfamoyl-biphenyl-4-yl)-piperidin-3-yl]-sulfamoyl}-benzamidine;

4-chloro-*N*-[1-3-fluoro-1-(2'-methylsulfonyl-biphenyl-4-yl)-2-oxo-piperidin-3-yl]-benzenesulfonamide;

25 6-chloro-*N*-[1-(3-fluoro-2'-methylsulfonyl-biphenyl-4-yl)-2-oxo-piperidin-3-yl]-naphthalene-2-sulfonamide;

7-chloro-*N*-[1-(3-fluoro-2'-methylsulfonyl-biphenyl-4-yl)-2-oxo-piperidin-3-yl]-naphthalene-2-sulfonamide;

30 5-chloro-*N*-[1-(3-fluoro-2'-methylsulfonyl-biphenyl-4-yl)-2-oxo-piperidin-3-yl]-thiophene-2-sulfonamide;

35 5-(3-isoxazolyl)-[1-3-fluoro-(2'-methylsulfonyl-biphenyl-4-yl)-2-oxo-piperidin-3-yl]-thiophene-2-sulfonamide;

- 4-fluoro-N-[1-(3-fluoro-1-(2'-methylsulfonyl-biphenyl-4-yl)-2-oxo-piperidin-3-yl]-benzenesulfonamide;
- 5 N-[1-(3-fluoro-1-(2'-methylsulfonyl-biphenyl-4-yl)-2-oxo-piperidin-3-yl]-4-methoxyl-benzenesulfonamide;
- 4-ethyl-N-[1-(3-fluoro-1-(2'-methylsulfonyl-biphenyl-4-yl)-2-oxo-piperidin-3-yl]-benzenesulfonamide;
- 10 N-[3-fluoro-1-(2'-methylsulfonyl-biphenyl-4-yl)-2-oxo-piperidin-3-yl]-3-methoxyl-benzenesulfonamide;
- 5-bromo-6-chloro-[3-fluoro-1-(2'-methanesulfonyl-biphenyl-4-yl)-2-oxo-piperidin-3-yl]-pyridine-3-sulfonamide;
- 15 5-(2-pyridyl)-[3-fluoro-1-(2'-methanesulfonyl-biphenyl-4-yl)-2-oxo-piperidin-3-yl]-thiophene-2-sulfonamide;
- 20 3,4-difluoro-N-[3-fluoro-1-(2'-methylsulfonyl-biphenyl-4-yl)-2-oxo-piperidin-3-yl]-benzenesulfonamide;
- 3-chloro-N-[3-fluoro-1-(2'-methylsulfonyl-biphenyl-4-yl)-2-oxo-piperidin-3-yl]-benzenesulfonamide;
- 25 3,5-dichloro-[3-fluoro-1-(2'-methanesulfonyl-biphenyl-4-yl)-2-oxo-piperidin-3-yl]-thiophene-2-sulfonamide;
- 3-cyano-N-[3-fluoro-1-(2'-methanesulfonyl-biphenyl-4-yl)-2-oxo-piperidin-3-yl]-benzenesulfonamide;
- 30 3-chloro-4-fluoro-N-[3-fluoro-1-(2'-methanesulfonyl-biphenyl-4-yl)-2-oxo-piperidin-3-yl]-benzenesulfonamide
- 35



- 1-methyl-[3-fluoro-1-(2'-methanesulfonyl-biphenyl-4-yl)-  
2-oxo-piperidin-3-yl]-imidazole-4-sulfonamide;
- 2,5-dichloro-N-[3-fluoro-1-(2'-methylsulfonyl-biphenyl-4-  
5 yl)-2-oxo-piperidin-3-yl]-benzenesulfonamide;
- 3,5-dichloro-N-[3-fluoro-1-(2'-methylsulfonyl-biphenyl-4-  
yl)-2-oxo-piperidin-3-yl]-benzenesulfonamide;
- 10 5-chloro-N-[1-(2'-diethylaminomethyl-3-fluoro-biphenyl-4-  
yl)-2-oxo-piperidin-3-yl]-thiophene-2-sulfonamide;
- 5-chloro-N-[1-(3-fluoro-1-2'-pyrrolidin-1-ylmethyl-  
biphenyl-4-yl)-2-oxo-piperidin-3-yl]-thiophene-2-  
15 sulfonamide;
- 5-chloro-N-{1-[3-fluoro-1-2'-(3-hydroxypyrrolidin-1-  
ylmethyl)-biphenyl-4-yl]-2-oxo-piperidin-3-yl}-  
thiophene-2-sulfonamide;
- 20 5-chloro-N-{1-[3-fluoro-1-2'-(4-hydroxypiperidin-1-  
ylmethyl)-biphenyl-4-yl]-2-oxo-piperidin-3-yl}-  
thiophene-2-sulfonamide;
- 25 N-benzyl-5-chloro-N-[1-(2'-diethylaminomethyl-3-fluoro-  
biphenyl-4-yl)-2-oxo-piperidin-3-yl]-thiophene-2-  
sulfonamide;
- N-benzyl-5-chloro-N-[1-(3-fluoro-1-2'-pyrrolidin-1-  
30 ylmethyl-biphenyl-4-yl)-2-oxo-piperidin-3-yl]-  
thiophene-2-sulfonamide;
- N-benzyl-5-chloro-N-{1-[3-fluoro-1-2'-(3-  
hydroxypyrrolidin-1-ylmethyl)-biphenyl-4-yl]-2-oxo-  
35 piperidin-3-yl}-thiophene-2-sulfonamide;

- N-benzyl-5-chloro-N-{1-[3-fluoro-1-2'-(4-hydroxypiperidin-1-ylmethyl)-biphenyl-4-yl]-2-oxo-piperidin-3-yl}-thiophene-2-sulfonamide;
- 5 5-chloro-[3-fluoro-1-(2'-{[(2-hydroxy-ethyl)-methyl-amino]-methyl}-biphenyl-4-yl)-2-oxo-piperidin-3-yl]-thiophene-2-sulfonamide;
- 10 3-amino-N-[1-(3-fluoro-2'-methanesulfonyl-biphenyl-4-yl)-2-oxo-piperidin-3-yl]-benzo[d]isoxazole-5-sulfonamide;
- 15 3-(3-amino-benzo[d]isoxazol-5-ylamino)-1-(3-fluoro-2'-methanesulfonyl-biphenyl-4-yl)-piperidin-2-one;
- 20 2-fluoro-5-[1-(3-fluoro-2'-methanesulfonyl-biphenyl-4-yl)-2-oxo-piperidin-3-ylamino]-N-hydroxybenzamidine;
- 1-(3-fluoro-2'-methanesulfonyl-biphenyl-4-yl)-3-[3-(5-oxo-4,5-dihydro-1H-[1,2,4]triazol-3-yl)-phenylamino]-piperidin-2-one;
- 25 N-benzyl-4-chloro-N-[1-(2'-methanesulfonyl-biphenyl-4-yl)-2-oxo-piperidin-3-yl]-benzenesulfonamide;
- 4-chloro-N-methyl-N-[1-(2'-methanesulfonyl-biphenyl-4-yl)-2-oxo-piperidin-3-yl]-benzenesulfonamide;
- 30 4-chloro-N-ethyl-N-[1-(2'-methanesulfonyl-biphenyl-4-yl)-2-oxo-piperidin-3-yl]-benzenesulfonamide;

- 4-chloro-N-[1-(3-fluoro-2'-methanesulfonyl-biphenyl-4-yl)-2-oxo-piperidin-3-yl]-N-(3-pyridylmethyl)-benzenesulfonamide;
- 5 4-chloro-N-[1-(3-fluoro-2'-methanesulfonyl-biphenyl-4-yl)-2-oxo-piperidin-3-yl]-N-(2-pyridylmethyl)-benzenesulfonamide;
- 10 3-[[1,2-dihydro-1-[2'-(methysulfonyl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]-2-oxo-3-pyridinyl]amino]-benzenecarboximidamide;
- 3-[(4-methoxyphenyl)amino]-1-[2'-(methysulfonyl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]-2(1H)-pyridinone;
- 15 N-[1,2-dihydro-1-[2'-(methysulfonyl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]-2-oxo-3-pyridinyl]-4-methoxy-benzamide;
- 6-chloro-N-[1,2-dihydro-1-[2'-(methysulfonyl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]-2-oxo-3-pyridinyl]-3-pyridinecarboxamide;
- 20 3-[[1,2-dihydro-1-[2'-[(3-hydroxy-1-pyrrolidinyl)methyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]-2-oxo-4-(1-pyrrolidinyl)-3-pyridinyl]amino]-benzenecarboximidamide;
- 25 3-[[1,2-dihydro-1-[2'-[(3-hydroxy-1-pyrrolidinyl)methyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]-2-oxo-4-(1-pyrrolidinyl)-3-pyridinyl]amino]-benzamide;
- 30 3-[3-(2'-methanesulfonyl-biphenyl-4-yl)-2-oxo-tetrahydro-pyrimidin-1-ylmethyl]-benzamidine;
- 4-benzyloxycarbonyl-3-(4-chlorobenzenesulfonylamino)-1-(2'-methanesulfonyl-biphenyl-4-yl)-2-oxo-piperazine;
- 35

- 4-benzyloxycarbonyl-3-(4-methoxybenzenesulfonylamino)-1-(2'-methanesulfonyl-biphenyl-4-yl)-2-oxo-piperazine;
- 5 5-chloro-[2-(3-fluoro-2'-methanesulfonyl-biphenyl-4-yl)-3-oxo-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroisoquinolin-4-yl]-thiophene-2-sulfonamide;
- 10 3-[1-(2'-dimethylaminomethyl-biphenyl-4-yl)-2-oxo-azepan-3-ylamino]-benzamidine;
- N-[3-benzyl-1-(2'-methanesulfonyl-biphenyl-4-yl)-2-oxo-piperidin-3-yl]-4-chlorobenzamide;
- 15 [3-(6-chloro-naphthalene-2-sulfonylamino)-1-(2'-methanesulfonyl-biphenyl-4-yl)-2-oxo-piperidin-3-yl]-acetic acid methyl ester;
- 20 N-[1-(3-fluoro-2'-methanesulfonyl-biphenyl-4-yl)-2-oxo-piperidin-3-yl]-3-(5-oxo-4,5-dihydro-1H-[1,2,4]triazol-3-yl)-benzenesulfonamide;
- 1-(3-fluoro-2'-methanesulfonyl-biphenyl-4-yl)-3-[3-(5-oxo-4,5-dihydro-1H-[1,2,4]triazol-3-yl)-phenoxy]-piperidin-2-one;
- 25 [1-(3-fluoro-2'-methanesulfonyl-biphenyl-4-yl)-2-oxo-piperidin-3-yl]-benzenesulfonamide;
- 30 [1-(3-fluoro-2'-methanesulfonyl-biphenyl-4-yl)-2-oxo-piperidin-3-yl]-pyridin-3-yl-sulfonamide;
- 5-chloro-3-methyl-N-{1-[3-fluoro-1-2'-(4-hydroxypiperidin-1-ylmethyl)-biphenyl-4-yl]-2-oxo-piperidin-3-yl}-thiophene-2-sulfonamide;
- 35

- [1-(3-fluoro-2'-methanesulfonyl-biphenyl-4-yl)-2-oxo-piperidin-3-yl]-quinolin-3-yl-sulfonamide;
- 5 [1-(3-fluoro-2'-methanesulfonyl-biphenyl-4-yl)-2-oxo-piperidin-3-yl]-quinolin-6-yl-sulfonamide;
- [1-(3-fluoro-2'-methanesulfonyl-biphenyl-4-yl)-2-oxo-piperidin-3-yl]-quinoxalin-6-yl-sulfonamide;
- 10 [1-(3-fluoro-2'-methanesulfonyl-biphenyl-4-yl)-2-oxo-piperidin-3-yl]-(6-amino-pyridin-3-yl)-sulfonamide;
- [1-(3-fluoro-2'-methanesulfonyl-biphenyl-4-yl)-2-oxo-piperidin-3-yl]-indazol-6-yl-sulfonamide;
- 15 6-chloronaphthalene-2-sulfonic acid [1-benzyl-4-(2'-dimethylaminomethylbiphenyl-4-yl)-5-oxo-[1,4]-diazepan-6-yl]amide;
- 20 5-chloro-*N*-(1-[2'-(methylsulfonyl)-1,1'-biphenyl-4-yl]-2-oxo-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1*H*-1-benzazepin-3-yl)-2-thiophenesulfonamide;
- 25 {(6-chloro-naphthalene-2-sulfonyl)-[1-(3-fluoro-2'-methanesulfonyl-biphenyl-4-yl)-2-oxo-piperidin-3-yl]-amino}-acetic acid methyl ester;
- 30 {(6-chloro-naphthalene-2-sulfonyl)-[1-(3-fluoro-2'-methanesulfonyl-biphenyl-4-yl)-2-oxo-piperidin-3-yl]-amino}-acetic acid ethyl ester;
- 35 {(6-chloro-naphthalene-2-sulfonyl)-[1-(3-fluoro-2'-methanesulfonyl-biphenyl-4-yl)-2-oxo-piperidin-3-yl]-amino}-acetic acid *t*-butyl ester;

6-chloro-naphthalene-2-sulfonic acid benzoyl-[1-(3-fluoro-2'-methanesulfonyl-biphenyl-4-yl)-2-oxo-piperidin-3-yl]-amide;

5

{(6-chloro-naphthalene-2-sulfonyl)-[1-(3-fluoro-2'-methanesulfonylbiphenyl-4-yl)-2-oxo-piperidin-3-yl]amino}acetic acid;

10 2-{{(6-chloronaphthalene-2-sulfonyl)-[1-(3-fluoro-2'-methanesulfonylbiphenyl-4-yl)-2-oxo-piperidin-3-yl]-amino}-N-(2-dimethylaminoethyl)-N-methylacetamide;

15 2-{{(6-Chloro-naphthalene-2-sulfonyl)-[1-(3-fluoro-2'-methanesulfonyl-biphenyl-4-yl)-2-oxo-piperidin-3-yl]-amino}-N-(2-hydroxy-ethyl)-acetamide; and

20 2-{{(6-Chloro-naphthalene-2-sulfonyl)-[1-(3-fluoro-2'-methanesulfonyl-biphenyl-4-yl)-2-oxo-piperidin-3-yl]-amino}-N-(2-dimethylamino-ethyl)-acetamide;

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt form thereof.

25 In another embodiment, the present invention provides novel pharmaceutical compositions, comprising: a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier and a therapeutically effective amount of a compound of formula (I) or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt form thereof.

30

In another embodiment, the present invention provides a novel method for treating a thromboembolic disorder, comprising: administering to a patient in need thereof a therapeutically effective amount of a compound

35

of formula (I) or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt form thereof.

5           In another embodiment, the present invention provides a novel method of treating a patient in need of thromboembolic disorder treatment, comprising: administering a compound of the present invention or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt form thereof in an  
10 amount effective to treat a thromboembolic disorder.

          In another embodiment, the present invention provides a novel method, comprising: administering a  
15 compound of the present invention or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt form thereof in an amount effective to treat a thromboembolic disorder.

20           In another embodiment, the present invention provides novel monocyclic or bicyclic carbocycles and heterocycles as described above for use in therapy.

          In another embodiment, the present invention  
25 provides the use of novel monocyclic or bicyclic carbocycles and heterocycles as described above for the manufacture of a medicament for the treatment of a thromboembolic disorder.

30           This invention also encompasses all combinations of preferred aspects of the invention noted herein. It is understood that any and all embodiments of the present invention may be taken in conjunction with any other embodiment to describe additional even more preferred  
35 embodiments of the present invention. It is also

understood that each and every element of any embodiment is intended to be a separate specific embodiment. Furthermore, any elements of an embodiment are meant to be combined with any and all other elements from any of  
5 the embodiments to describe additional embodiments.

#### DEFINITIONS

The compounds herein described may have asymmetric  
10 centers. Compounds of the present invention containing an asymmetrically substituted atom may be isolated in optically active or racemic forms. It is well known in the art how to prepare optically active forms, such as by resolution of racemic forms or by synthesis from  
15 optically active starting materials. Many geometric isomers of olefins, C=N double bonds, and the like can also be present in the compounds described herein, and all such stable isomers are contemplated in the present invention. Cis and trans geometric isomers of the  
20 compounds of the present invention are described and may be isolated as a mixture of isomers or as separated isomeric forms. All chiral, diastereomeric, racemic forms and all geometric isomeric forms of a structure are intended, unless the specific stereochemistry or isomeric  
25 form is specifically indicated. All processes used to prepare compounds of the present invention and intermediates made therein are considered to be part of the present invention. All tautomers of shown or  
30 described compounds are also considered to be part of the present invention.

The term "substituted," as used herein, means that any one or more hydrogens on the designated atom is replaced with a selection from the indicated group, provided that the designated atom's normal valency is not  
35 exceeded, and that the substitution results in a stable



compound. When a substituent is keto (i.e., =O), then 2 hydrogens on the atom are replaced. Keto substituents are not present on aromatic moieties.

The present invention is intended to include all  
5 isotopes of atoms occurring in the present compounds. Isotopes include those atoms having the same atomic number but different mass numbers. By way of general example and without limitation, isotopes of hydrogen include tritium and deuterium. Isotopes of carbon include  
10 C-13 and C-14.

When any variable (e.g.,  $R^6$ ) occurs more than one time in any constituent or formula for a compound, its definition at each occurrence is independent of its definition at every other occurrence. Thus, for example,  
15 if a group is shown to be substituted with 0-2  $R^6$ , then said group may optionally be substituted with up to two  $R^6$  groups and  $R^6$  at each occurrence is selected independently from the definition of  $R^6$ . Also, combinations of substituents and/or variables are  
20 permissible only if such combinations result in stable compounds.

When a bond to a substituent is shown to cross a bond connecting two atoms in a ring, then such substituent may be bonded to any atom on the ring. When a  
25 substituent is listed without indicating the atom via which such substituent is bonded to the rest of the compound of a given formula, then such substituent may be bonded via any atom in such substituent. Combinations of substituents and/or variables are permissible only if  
30 such combinations result in stable compounds.

As used herein, "alkyl" is intended to include both branched and straight-chain saturated aliphatic hydrocarbon groups having the specified number of carbon atoms.  $C_{1-10}$  alkyl, is intended to include  $C_1$ ,  $C_2$ ,  $C_3$ ,  $C_4$ ,

C<sub>5</sub>, C<sub>6</sub>, C<sub>7</sub>, C<sub>8</sub>, C<sub>9</sub>, and C<sub>10</sub> alkyl groups. Examples of alkyl include, but are not limited to, methyl, ethyl, n-propyl, i-propyl, n-butyl, s-butyl, t-butyl, n-pentyl, and s-pentyl. "Haloalkyl" is intended to include both  
5 branched and straight-chain saturated aliphatic hydrocarbon groups having the specified number of carbon atoms, substituted with 1 or more halogen (for example -C<sub>v</sub>F<sub>w</sub> where v = 1 to 3 and w = 1 to (2v+1)). Examples of haloalkyl include, but are not limited to,  
10 trifluoromethyl, trichloromethyl, pentafluoroethyl, and pentachloroethyl. "Alkoxy" represents an alkyl group as defined above with the indicated number of carbon atoms attached through an oxygen bridge. C<sub>1-10</sub> alkoxy, is intended to include C<sub>1</sub>, C<sub>2</sub>, C<sub>3</sub>, C<sub>4</sub>, C<sub>5</sub>, C<sub>6</sub>, C<sub>7</sub>, C<sub>8</sub>, C<sub>9</sub>, and  
15 C<sub>10</sub> alkoxy groups. Examples of alkoxy include, but are not limited to, methoxy, ethoxy, n-propoxy, i-propoxy, n-butoxy, s-butoxy, t-butoxy, n-pentoxy, and s-pentoxy. "Cycloalkyl" is intended to include saturated ring groups, such as cyclopropyl, cyclobutyl, or cyclopentyl.  
20 C<sub>3-7</sub> cycloalkyl, is intended to include C<sub>3</sub>, C<sub>4</sub>, C<sub>5</sub>, C<sub>6</sub>, and C<sub>7</sub> cycloalkyl groups. "Alkenyl" is intended to include hydrocarbon chains of either a straight or branched configuration and one or more unsaturated carbon-carbon bonds which may occur in any stable point along the  
25 chain, such as ethenyl and propenyl. C<sub>2-10</sub> alkenyl, is intended to include C<sub>2</sub>, C<sub>3</sub>, C<sub>4</sub>, C<sub>5</sub>, C<sub>6</sub>, C<sub>7</sub>, C<sub>8</sub>, C<sub>9</sub>, and C<sub>10</sub> alkenyl groups. "Alkynyl" is intended to include hydrocarbon chains of either a straight or branched configuration and one or more triple carbon-carbon bonds  
30 which may occur in any stable point along the chain, such as ethynyl and propynyl. C<sub>2-10</sub> alkynyl, is intended to include C<sub>2</sub>, C<sub>3</sub>, C<sub>4</sub>, C<sub>5</sub>, C<sub>6</sub>, C<sub>7</sub>, C<sub>8</sub>, C<sub>9</sub>, and C<sub>10</sub> alkynyl groups.

"Halo" or "halogen" as used herein refers to fluoro, chloro, bromo, and iodo; and "counterion" is used to represent a small, negatively charged species such as chloride, bromide, hydroxide, acetate, and sulfate.

5       As used herein, "carbocycle" or "carbocyclic residue" is intended to mean any stable 3, 4, 5, 6, or 7-membered monocyclic or bicyclic or 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, or 13-membered bicyclic or tricyclic, any of which may be saturated, partially unsaturated, or aromatic. Examples  
10 of such carbocycles include, but are not limited to, cyclopropyl, cyclobutyl, cyclopentyl, cyclohexyl, cycloheptyl, adamantyl, cyclooctyl, [3.3.0]bicyclooctane, [4.3.0]bicyclononane, [4.4.0]bicyclodecane, [2.2.2]bicyclooctane, fluorenyl, phenyl, naphthyl,  
15 indanyl, adamantyl, and tetrahydronaphthyl.

      As used herein, the term "heterocycle" or "heterocyclic system" is intended to mean a stable 5, 6, or 7-membered monocyclic or bicyclic or 7, 8, 9, or 10-membered bicyclic heterocyclic ring which is saturated,  
20 partially unsaturated or unsaturated (aromatic), and which consists of carbon atoms and 1, 2, 3, or 4 heteroatoms independently selected from the group consisting of N, NH, O and S and including any bicyclic group in which any of the above-defined heterocyclic  
25 rings is fused to a benzene ring. The nitrogen and sulfur heteroatoms may optionally be oxidized. The heterocyclic ring may be attached to its pendant group at any heteroatom or carbon atom which results in a stable structure. The heterocyclic rings described herein may be  
30 substituted on carbon or on a nitrogen atom if the resulting compound is stable. A nitrogen in the heterocycle may optionally be quaternized. It is preferred that when the total number of S and O atoms in the heterocycle exceeds 1, then these heteroatoms are not  
35 adjacent to one another. It is preferred that the total

number of S and O atoms in the heterocycle is not more than 1. As used herein, the term "aromatic heterocyclic system" or "heteroaryl" is intended to mean a stable 5, 6, or 7-membered monocyclic or bicyclic or 7, 8, 9, or 10-membered bicyclic heterocyclic aromatic ring which consists of carbon atoms and 1, 2, 3, or 4 heterotams independently selected from the group consisting of N, NH, O and S. It is to be noted that total number of S and O atoms in the aromatic heterocycle is not more than 1.

Examples of heterocycles include, but are not limited to, acridinyl, azocinyl, benzimidazolyl, benzofuranyl, benzothiofuranyl, benzothiophenyl, benzoxazolyl, benzthiazolyl, benztriazolyl, benztetrazolyl, benzisoxazolyl, benzisothiazolyl, benzimidazolinyl, carbazolyl, 4*aH*-carbazolyl, carbolinyl, chromanyl, chromenyl, cinnolinyl, decahydroquinolinyl, 2*H*,6*H*-1,5,2-dithiazinyl, dihydrofuro[2,3-*b*]tetrahydrofuran, furanyl, furazanyl, imidazolidinyl, imidazolinyl, imidazolyl, 1*H*-indazolyl, indolenyl, indolinyl, indoliziny, indolyl, 3*H*-indolyl, isobenzofuranyl, isochromanyl, isoindazolyl, isoindolinyl, isoindolyl, isoquinolinyl, isothiazolyl, isoxazolyl, methylenedioxyphenyl, morpholinyl, naphthyridinyl, octahydroisoquinolinyl, oxadiazolyl, 1,2,3-oxadiazolyl, 1,2,4-oxadiazolyl, 1,2,5-oxadiazolyl, 1,3,4-oxadiazolyl, oxazolidinyl, oxazolyl, oxazolidinyl, pyrimidinyl, phenanthridinyl, phenanthrolinyl, phenazinyl, phenothiazinyl, phenoxathiinyl, phenoxazinyl, phthalazinyl, piperazinyl, piperidinyl, piperidonyl, 4-piperidonyl, piperonyl, pteridinyl, purinyl, pyranyl, pyrazinyl, pyrazolidinyl, pyrazolinyl, pyrazolyl, pyridazinyl, pyridooxazole, pyridoimidazole, pyridothiazole, pyridinyl, pyridyl, pyrimidinyl, pyrrolidinyl, pyrrolinyl, 2*H*-pyrrolyl, pyrrolyl, quinazolinyl, quinolinyl, 4*H*-quinoliziny, quinoxalinyl,

quinuclidinyl, tetrahydrofuranyl,  
tetrahydroisoquinolinyl, tetrahydroquinolinyl,  
tetrazolyl, 6H-1,2,5-thiadiazinyl, 1,2,3-thiadiazolyl,  
1,2,4-thiadiazolyl, 1,2,5-thiadiazolyl, 1,3,4-  
5 thiadiazolyl, thianthrenyl, thiazolyl, thienyl,  
thienothiazolyl, thienooxazolyl, thienoimidazolyl,  
thiophenyl, triazinyl, 1,2,3-triazolyl, 1,2,4-triazolyl,  
1,2,5-triazolyl, 1,3,4-triazolyl, and xanthenyl.  
Preferred heterocycles include, but are not limited to,  
10 pyridinyl, furanyl, thienyl, pyrrolyl, pyrazolyl,  
pyrrolidinyl, imidazolyl, indolyl, benzimidazolyl, 1H-  
indazolyl, oxazolidinyl, benztriazolyl, benzisoxazolyl,  
oxindolyl, benzoxazolyl, and isatinoyl. Also included  
are fused ring and spiro compounds containing, for  
15 example, the above heterocycles.

Preferably, the molecular weight of compounds of the  
present invention is less than about 500, 550, 600, 650,  
700, 750, 800, 850, 900, 950, or 1000 grams per mole.  
More preferably, the molecular weight is less than about  
20 950 grams per mole. Even more preferably, the molecular  
weight is less than about 850 grams per mole. Still more  
preferably, the molecular weight is less than about 750  
grams per mole.

The phrase "pharmaceutically acceptable" is employed  
25 herein to refer to those compounds, materials,  
compositions, and/or dosage forms which are, within the  
scope of sound medical judgment, suitable for use in  
contact with the tissues of human beings and animals  
without excessive toxicity, irritation, allergic  
30 response, or other problem or complication, commensurate  
with a reasonable benefit/risk ratio.

As used herein, "pharmaceutically acceptable salts"  
refer to derivatives of the disclosed compounds wherein  
the parent compound is modified by making acid or base  
35 salts thereof. Examples of pharmaceutically acceptable

salts include, but are not limited to, mineral or organic acid salts of basic residues such as amines; alkali or organic salts of acidic residues such as carboxylic acids; and the like. The pharmaceutically acceptable salts include the conventional non-toxic salts or the quaternary ammonium salts of the parent compound formed, for example, from non-toxic inorganic or organic acids. For example, such conventional non-toxic salts include those derived from inorganic acids such as hydrochloric, hydrobromic, sulfuric, sulfamic, phosphoric, nitric and the like; and the salts prepared from organic acids such as acetic, propionic, succinic, glycolic, stearic, lactic, malic, tartaric, citric, ascorbic, pamoic, maleic, hydroxymaleic, phenylacetic, glutamic, benzoic, salicylic, sulfanilic, 2-acetoxybenzoic, fumaric, toluenesulfonic, methanesulfonic, ethane disulfonic, oxalic, isethionic, and the like.

The pharmaceutically acceptable salts of the present invention can be synthesized from the parent compound which contains a basic or acidic moiety by conventional chemical methods. Generally, such salts can be prepared by reacting the free acid or base forms of these compounds with a stoichiometric amount of the appropriate base or acid in water or in an organic solvent, or in a mixture of the two; generally, nonaqueous media like ether, ethyl acetate, ethanol, isopropanol, or acetonitrile are preferred. Lists of suitable salts are found in *Remington's Pharmaceutical Sciences*, 17th ed., Mack Publishing Company, Easton, PA, 1985, p. 1418, the disclosure of which is hereby incorporated by reference.

Since prodrugs are known to enhance numerous desirable qualities of pharmaceuticals (e.g., solubility, bioavailability, manufacturing, etc...) the compounds of the present invention may be delivered in prodrug form. Thus, the present invention is intended to cover prodrugs

of the presently claimed compounds, methods of delivering the same and compositions containing the same. "Prodrugs" are intended to include any covalently bonded carriers which release an active parent drug of the present invention *in vivo* when such prodrug is administered to a mammalian subject. Prodrugs the present invention are prepared by modifying functional groups present in the compound in such a way that the modifications are cleaved, either in routine manipulation or *in vivo*, to the parent compound. Prodrugs include compounds of the present invention wherein a hydroxy, amino, or sulfhydryl group is bonded to any group that, when the prodrug of the present invention is administered to a mammalian subject, it cleaves to form a free hydroxyl, free amino, or free sulfhydryl group, respectively. Examples of prodrugs include, but are not limited to, acetate, formate and benzoate derivatives of alcohol and amine functional groups in the compounds of the present invention. Further examples of prodrugs include amidine prodrugs wherein R is  $C(=NR^7)NH_2$  or its tautomer  $C(=NH)NHR^7$  and  $R^7$  is selected from OH,  $C_{1-4}$  alkoxy,  $C_{6-10}$  aryloxy,  $C_{1-4}$  alkoxycarbonyl,  $C_{6-10}$  aryloxycarbonyl,  $C_{6-10}$  arylmethylcarbonyl,  $C_{1-4}$  alkylcarbonyloxy  $C_{1-4}$  alkoxycarbonyl, and  $C_{6-10}$  arylcarbonyloxy  $C_{1-4}$  alkoxycarbonyl. More preferred amidine prodrugs are where  $R^7$  is OH, methoxy, ethoxy, benzyloxycarbonyl, methoxycarbonyl, and methylcarbonyloxymethoxycarbonyl.

"Stable compound" and "stable structure" are meant to indicate a compound that is sufficiently robust to survive isolation to a useful degree of purity from a reaction mixture, and formulation into an efficacious therapeutic agent.

"Substituted" is intended to indicate that one or more hydrogens on the atom indicated in the expression

using "substituted" is replaced with a selection from the indicated group(s), provided that the indicated atom's normal valency is not exceeded, and that the substitution results in a stable compound. When a substituent is keto  
5 (i.e., =O) group, then 2 hydrogens on the atom are replaced.

As used herein, "treating" or "treatment" cover the treatment of a disease-state in a mammal, particularly in a human, and include: (a) preventing the disease-state  
10 from occurring in a mammal, in particular, when such mammal is predisposed to the disease-state but has not yet been diagnosed as having it; (b) inhibiting the disease-state, i.e., arresting its development; and/or (c) relieving the disease-state, i.e., causing regression of  
15 the disease state.

"Therapeutically effective amount" is intended to include an amount of a compound of the present invention or an amount of the combination of compounds claimed effective to inhibit factor Xa. The combination of  
20 compounds is preferably a synergistic combination. Synergy, as described for example by Chou and Talalay, Adv. Enzyme Regul. 22:27-55 (1984), occurs when the effect (in this case, inhibition of factor Xa) of the compounds when administered in combination is greater  
25 than the additive effect of the compounds when administered alone as a single agent. In general, a synergistic effect is most clearly demonstrated at suboptimal concentrations of the compounds. Synergy can be in terms of lower cytotoxicity, increased antiviral  
30 effect, or some other beneficial effect of the combination compared with the individual components.

#### SYNTHESIS

The compounds of the present invention can be  
35 prepared in a number of ways known to one skilled in the



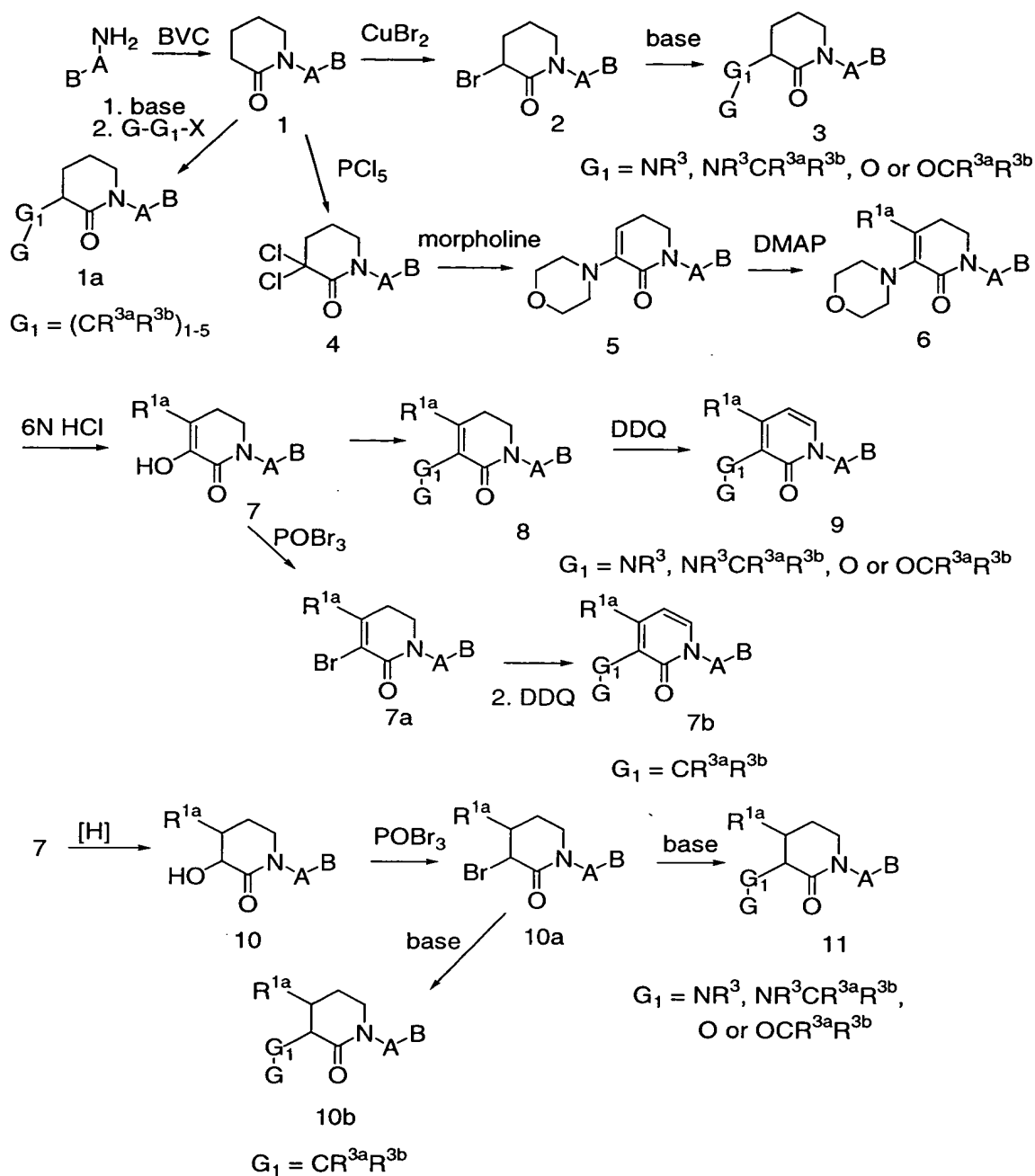
art of organic synthesis. The compounds of the present invention can be synthesized using the methods described below, together with synthetic methods known in the art of synthetic organic chemistry, or by variations thereon as appreciated by those skilled in the art. Preferred methods include, but are not limited to, those described below. The reactions are performed in a solvent appropriate to the reagents and materials employed and suitable for the transformations being effected. It will be understood by those skilled in the art of organic synthesis that the functionality present on the molecule should be consistent with the transformations proposed. This will sometimes require a judgment to modify the order of the synthetic steps or to select one particular process scheme over another in order to obtain a desired compound of the invention. It will also be recognized that another major consideration in the planning of any synthetic route in this field is the judicious choice of the protecting group used for protection of the reactive functional groups present in the compounds described in this invention. An authoritative account describing the many alternatives to the trained practitioner is Greene and Wuts (*Protective Groups In Organic Synthesis*, Wiley and Sons, **1991**). All references cited herein are hereby incorporated in their entirety herein by reference.

Preparation of the compounds in Scheme 1 commences by the treatment of the appropriately substituted amine  $\text{NH}_2\text{-A-B}$  (for prep. see WO97/23212, WO97/30971, WO97/23212, WO97/38984, WO98/01428, WO98/06694, WO98/28269, WO98/28282, WO98/57934, WO98/57937 and WO98/57951) with 5-bromovaleryl chloride (BVC) to afford **1**. Bromination can proceed in benzene with  $\text{CuBr}_2$  according to the procedure by Fort et. al. (*J. Org. Chem.* **1962**, 2937) to afford **2**. Displacement of the bromide by

reaction with a suitably substituted amino or hydroxy compound via an SN2 type of reaction in a solvent like THF, acetonitrile, benzene, or methylene chloride in a presence of a mild base affords compounds of type 3.

5        Preparation of the compounds of type 7 from 1 can proceed according to the procedures described in the published patent applications cited above. Treatment of 7 with an appropriately substituted amino or hydroxy compound in a solvent such as methanol, ethanol, or THF  
10 provides compounds of formula 8. Treatment of 8 with DDQ provides compounds of formula 9. Reduction of 7 or 8 can be accomplished under mild reducing conditions according to the methods known to those in the art to give 10. Conversion of 10 to the intermediate bromide 10a by  
15 treatment with PBr<sub>3</sub> or carbon tetrabromide and triphenylphosphine in an appropriate solvent, followed by an SN2 displacement with a suitably substituted amino or hydroxy compound yields compounds of formula 11. Compounds of formula 1a wherein G<sub>1</sub> is a (CR<sup>3a</sup>R<sup>3b</sup>)<sub>1-5</sub> can be  
20 prepared from compounds of formula 1 by treatment of 1 with a strong base, such as sodium hydride or sodium or lithium hexamethydisilazide, followed by quenching the intermediate anion with a suitably substituted alkyl halide to give 1a. Reaction of compounds of formula 10a  
25 with an appropriately functionalized organometallic reagent, such as a Grignard or organolithium reagent, would lead to compounds of formula 10b.

Scheme 1

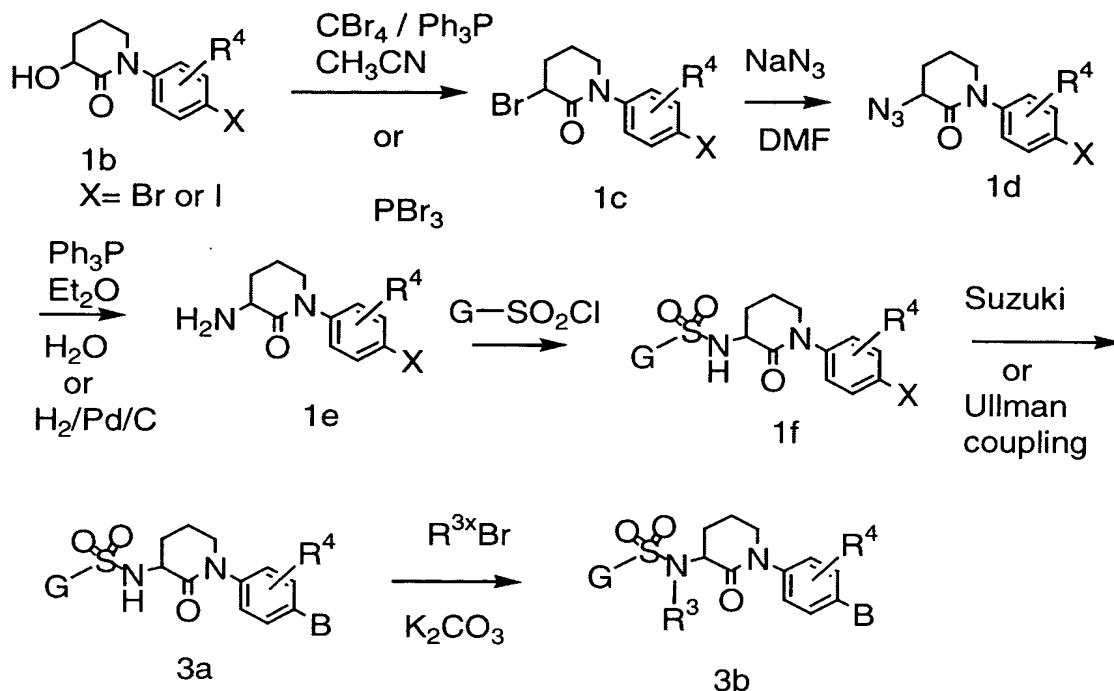


Alternately, when  $\text{G}_1$  is  $\text{SO}_2\text{NH}$  or  $\text{CONH}$ , compounds of formula I may be prepared from amine **1e** which in turn is prepared in three steps from **1b** as shown in **Scheme 1a**. Starting material **1b** is prepared according to procedure found in W000/37131 from a suitably substituted aniline

and tetrahydrofuran carboxylic acid. Treatment of **1b** with either carbon tetrabromide/triphenyl-phosphine or phosphorus tribromide in a suitable solvent such as methylene chloride provides bromide **1c**. Displacement of  
5 the bromide with azide and subsequent reduction using triphenylphosphine (Staudinger rxn) or by catalytic hydrogenation provides **1e**. Treatment of **1e** with a suitably-substituted sulfonyl chloride provides the corresponding sulfonamides which are in turn further  
10 elaborated to introduce substitituent B by Suzuki, Stille or Ullmann-type coupling methods or other methods known to one skilled in the art. Subsequent modification to the B substituent to introduce the desired functional groups may also be done using established methods. Subsequent  
15 alkylation of the sulfonamide nitrogen in the presence of potassium carbonate and an alkyl chloride or bromide provides compounds of the invention where  $R^3$  is other than hydrogen. Replacement of the sulfonyl chloride in **Scheme 1a** with an acid chloride will provide the  
20 analogous amide examples of the invention. The substituent B can also be introduced in the early steps of the synthesis prior to the synthesis of the lactam ring to yield an analog of **1e** where the Br is replaced by substituent B which is then carried through the rest of  
25 the steps to the final targets.

In some cases it is advantageous to introduce the  $R^3$  substituent prior to the sulfonyl or acyl group. This may be done by reductive amination of **1e** with an appropriate aldehyde in the presence of sodium  
30 triacetoxyborohydride or sodium cyanoborohydride to provide a secondary amine which is then sulfonylated or acylated as above.

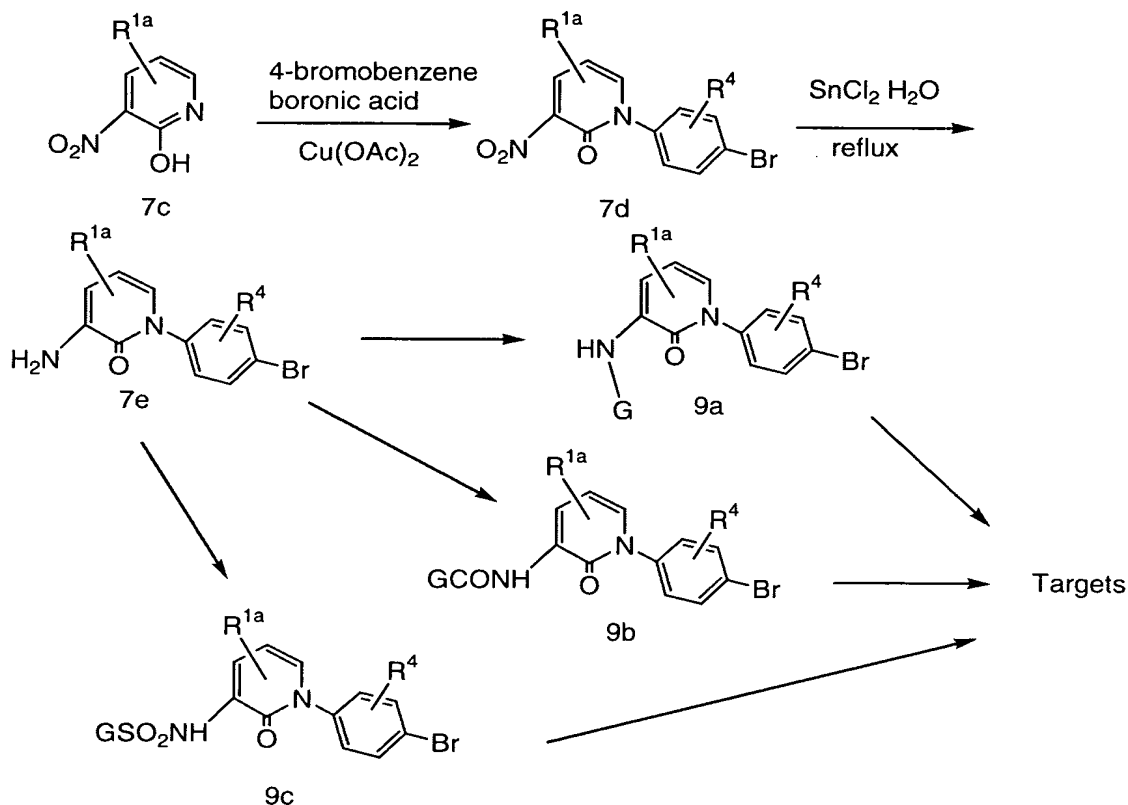
Scheme 1a



- 5 Compounds of this invention wherein ring M is a pyridinone and G1 is linked to ring M through nitrogen can also be prepared from 3-nitropyridinone starting materials as outlined in **Scheme 1b**. N-Arylation of a 3-nitro-2-pyridinone compound with an appropriately
- 10 substituted A group precursor by copper-mediated boronic acid coupling (*Tetrahedron* **1999**, 55(44) 12757)) provides compounds of formula **7d**. Selective reduction of the nitro group to the corresponding amine with tin(II)chloride provides **7e**. Introduction of the B
- 15 substituent and elaboration of the amino group to the desired G or G<sub>1</sub>-G group can be carried out as described above for the compounds in **Schemes 1** and **1a** to yield compounds of the invention of formula **9a**, **9b** and **9c**. Additional starting materials for **Scheme 1b** with
- 20 alternate R<sup>1a</sup> substituents can be prepared by starting with a substituted 3-nitro-2-pyridinone, for example, 4-

hydroxy-3-nitro-2-pyridinone, which can be converted to the corresponding chloro compound with a reagent such as  $\text{POCl}_3$  followed by displacement of the chlorine with a nucleophile, such as pyrrolidine, as illustrated in the synthesis of **Ex. 68** in the Examples section below.

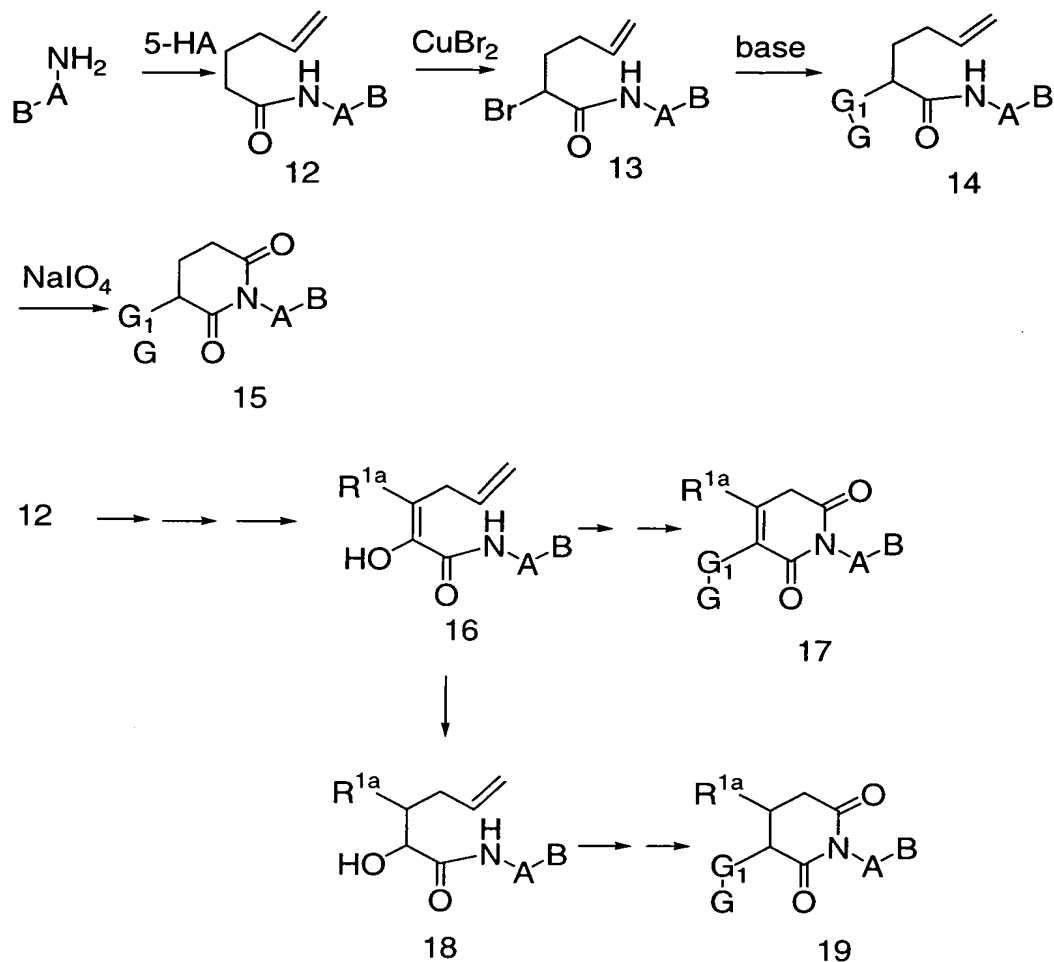
Scheme 1b



Compounds **15**, **17**, and **19** could be synthesized as outlined in Scheme 2.  $\text{NH}_2\text{-A-B}$  is reacted with 5-hexenoic acid (5-HA) in a presence of a base and an amide bond coupling reagent such as TBTU to give **12**. Bromination with  $\text{CuBr}_2$  (see sch.1), followed by displacement with  $\text{G}_1\text{-G}$  ( $\text{G}_1 = \text{NR}^3$ ,  $\text{NR}^3\text{CR}^3\text{aR}^3\text{b}$ ,  $\text{O}$ , or  $\text{OCR}^3\text{aR}^3\text{b}$ ) leads to **14**. Conversion to **15** follows the methods described by Miller et. al. (*J. Org. Chem.* **1991**, 1453). Formation of **17** ( $\text{G}_1 = \text{NR}^3$ ,  $\text{NR}^3\text{CR}^3\text{aR}^3\text{b}$ ,  $\text{O}$ , or  $\text{OCR}^3\text{aR}^3\text{b}$ ) and **19** ( $\text{G}_1 = \text{CR}^3\text{aR}^3\text{b}$ ) follows

procedures outlined in Scheme 1 according to the methods known to those in the art.

Scheme 2

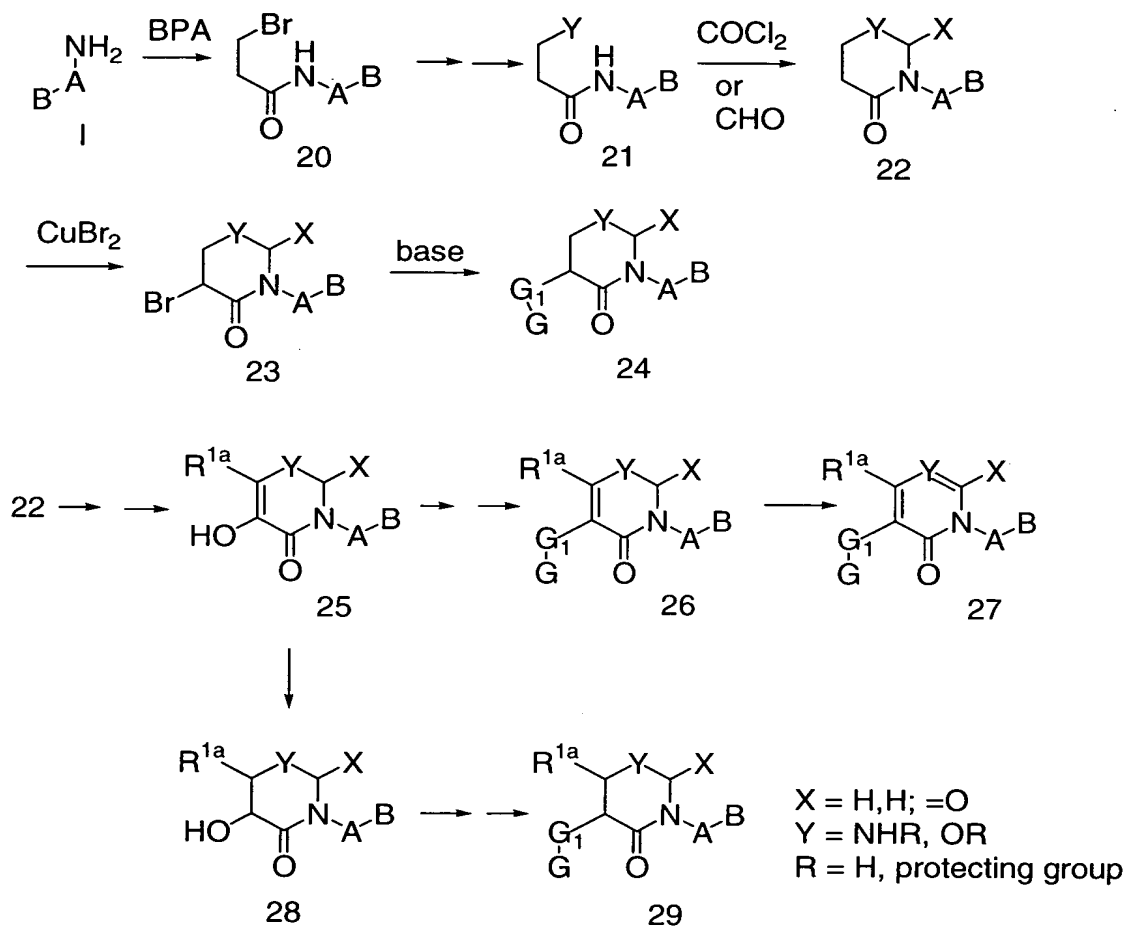


Scheme 3 outlines the preparation of structures of type **24** could be prepared by reaction of a compound of formula,  $H_2N-A-B$ , with 3-bromopropionic acid chloride (BPA) to afford **20**. Conversion to **21** could be accomplished by the methods known to those in the art. Cyclization to **22** in the presence of phosgene ( $X=O$ ) or with formaldehyde ( $X=H,H$ ), is followed by bromination to afford an intermediate **23**. Displacement of the bromide in an  $SN_2$  type of reaction yields **24** ( $G_1 = NR^3$ ,  $NR^3CR^3aR^3b$ ,

O, or  $\text{OCR}^3\text{aR}^3\text{b}$ ). Transformations leading to the compounds **27** and **29** ( $\text{G}_1 = \text{NR}^3$ ,  $\text{NR}^3\text{CR}^3\text{aR}^3\text{b}$ , O, or  $\text{OCR}^3\text{aR}^3\text{b}$ ) and **24**, **27**, and **29** ( $\text{G}_1 = \text{CR}^3\text{aR}^3\text{b}$ ) are done according to Scheme 1 and methods known to those familiar with the art.

5

Scheme 3



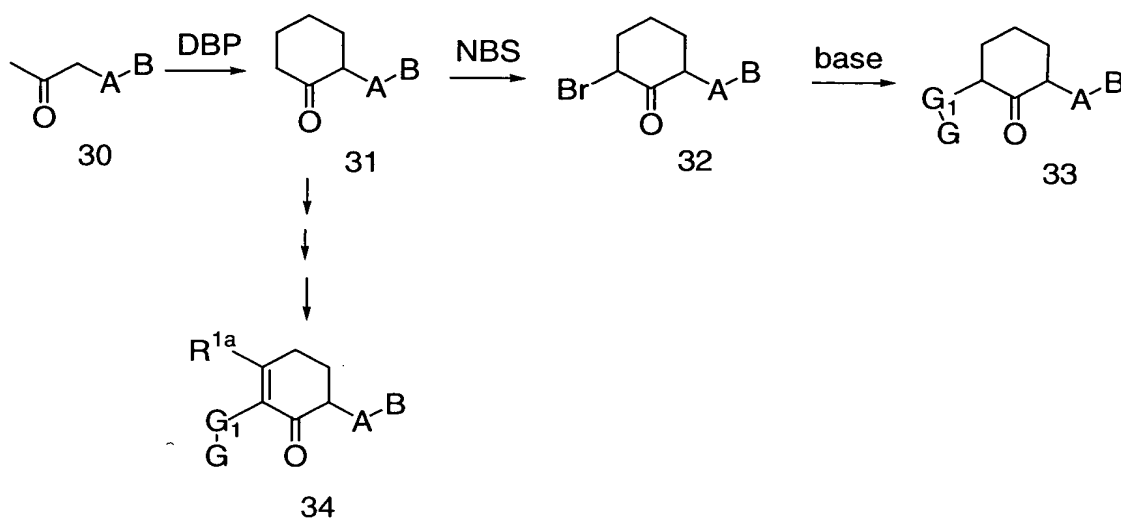
Compounds of formula **33** and **34** can be prepared as shown in Scheme 4. Compound **30** could be prepared via Suzuki reaction of 3-(4-bromophenyl)-2-propanone and an appropriate boronic acid. Treatment of **30** with base like LDA in an ethereal solvent and 1,3 dibromopropane (DBP) leads to **31**. Reaction with NBS in  $\text{CCl}_4$  following the procedure by Shimazaki *et. al.* (*Synthesis* **1990**, 677) affords bromide **32**. Displacement of the bromide in the



presence of a mild base via SN2 reaction leads to compound **33** ( $G_1 = \text{NR}^3$ ,  $\text{NR}^3\text{CR}^{3a}\text{R}^{3b}$ , O, or  $\text{OCR}^{3a}\text{R}^{3b}$ ). Synthesis of **34** ( $G_b = \text{CR}^{3a}\text{R}^{3b}$ ), could be accomplished following the sequence of reactions outlined in Scheme 1.

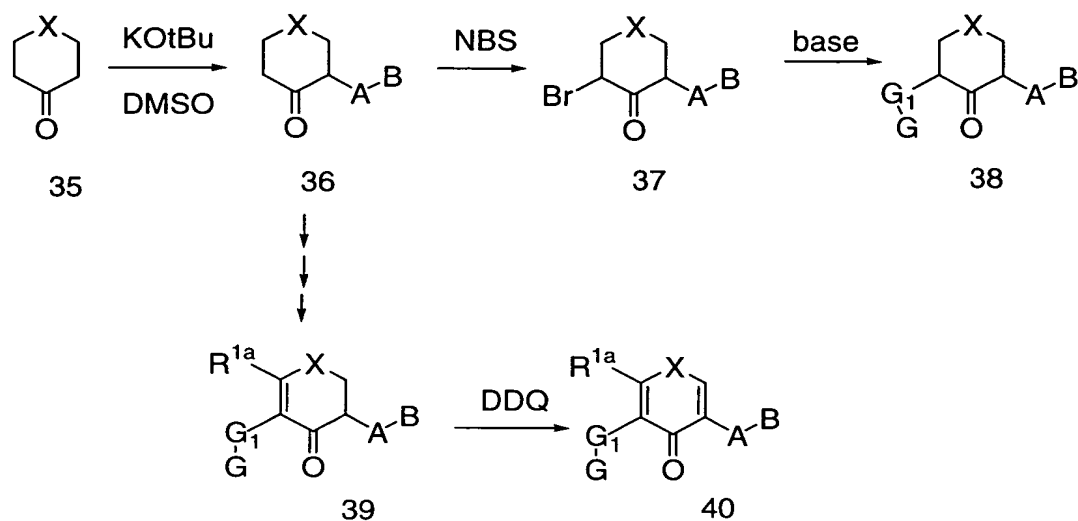
5

Scheme 4



Synthesis of compounds **38** and **40** follows the protocol shown in Scheme 5. Reacting an appropriately substituted commercially available **35** ( $\text{X}=\text{O}$ , tetrahydro-4H-pyranone and  $\text{X}=\text{NZ}$ , 4-piperidone derivative) in DMSO with K<sub>2</sub>OtBu (see Scamehorn et. al.; *J. Org. Chem.* **1984**, 4881) affords **36**. The further transformations leading to **38** and **40** could proceed according to the chemistry outlined in Schemes 4 and 1.

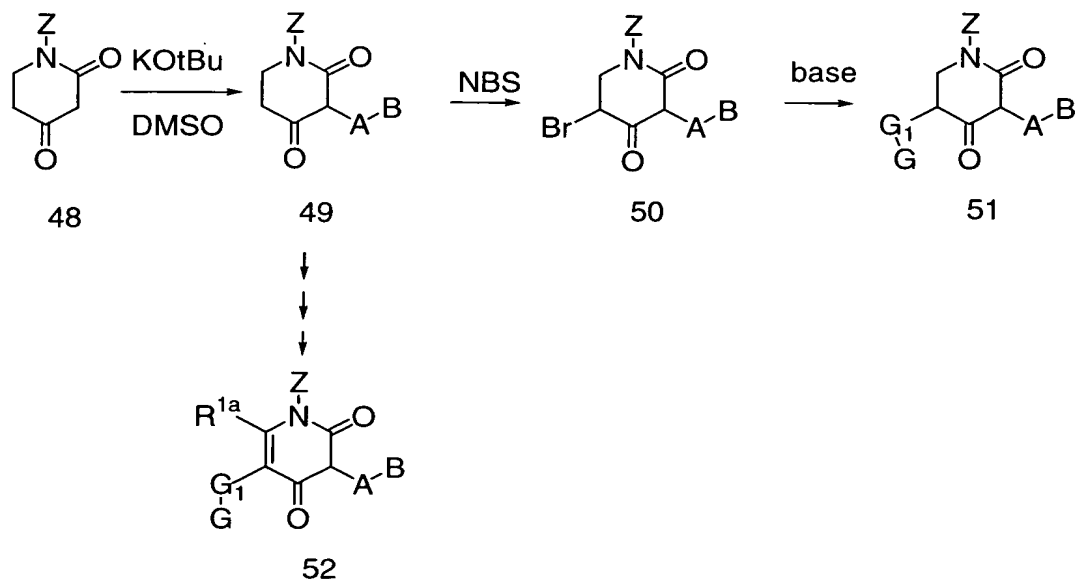
Scheme 5



X = NZ, O

In Scheme 6 an appropriately substituted starting material **48** could be converted to **49** following the procedure of Scamehorn *et. al.* (*J. Org. Chem.* **1984**, 4881). The synthesis of the desired compounds **51** and **52** follows the procedures outlined in Schemes 4 and 1.

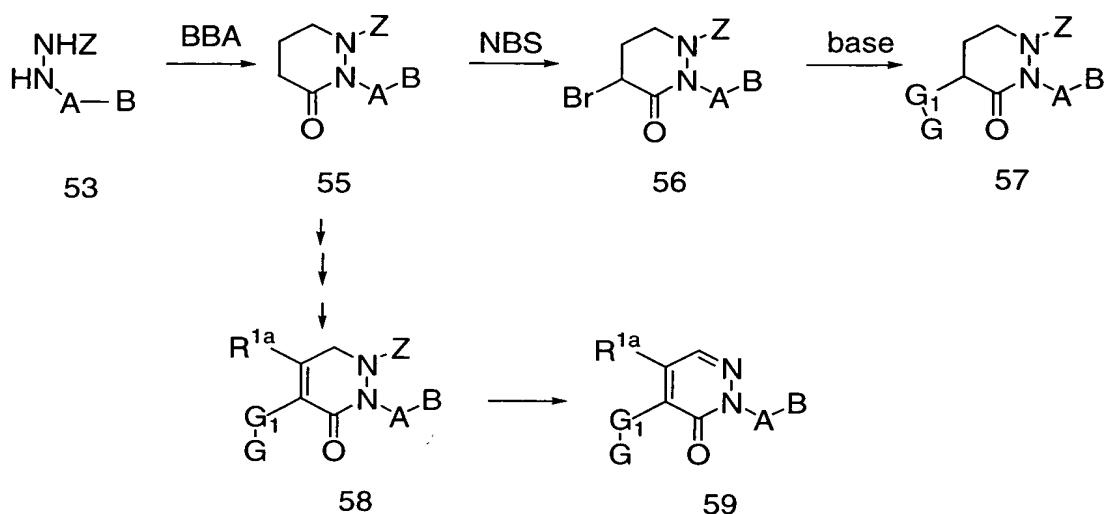
Scheme 6



Synthesis of compounds described in Scheme 7 could be accomplished by reacting the hydrazine **53** (prepared from the corresponding aniline by diazotization, followed by reduction in acidic media) with 4-bromobutanoic acid chloride (BBA) in solvents like THF, EtOAc, or CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> to afford **55**. The further transformations leading to **57** and **59** proceed according to the chemistry outlined in Schemes 4 and 1.

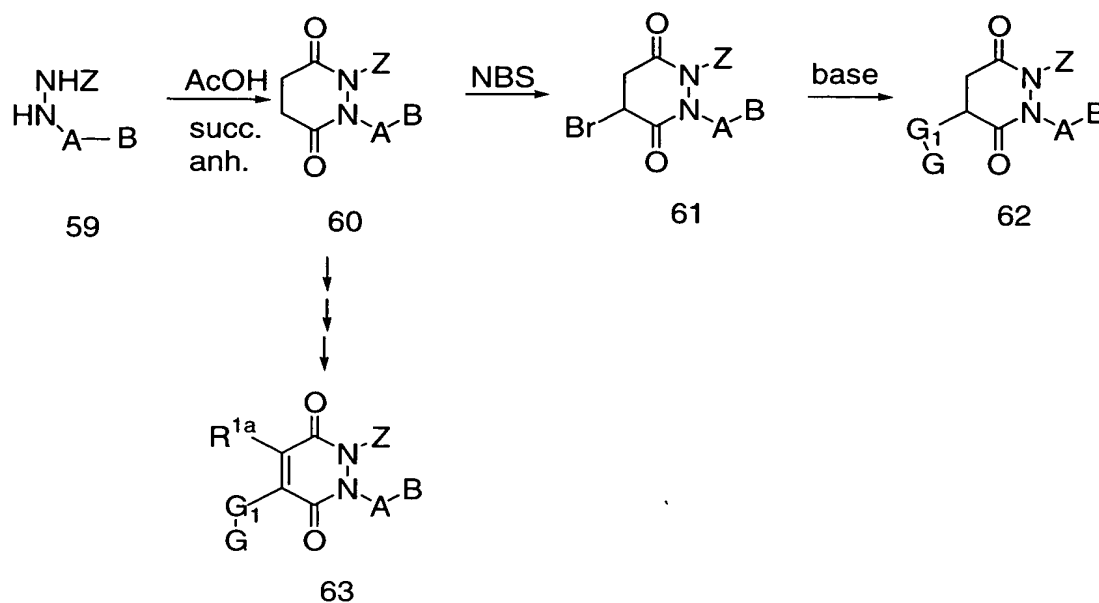
10

Scheme 7



Preparation of the compounds in Scheme 8 can proceed by reacting hydrazine **59** with succinic anhydride in acetic acid following the procedure by Bourel *et. al.* (*Tet.Lett.* **1996**, 4145) to afford compound **60**. The further transformations leading to **62** and **63** proceed according to the chemistry outlined in Schemes 4 and 1.

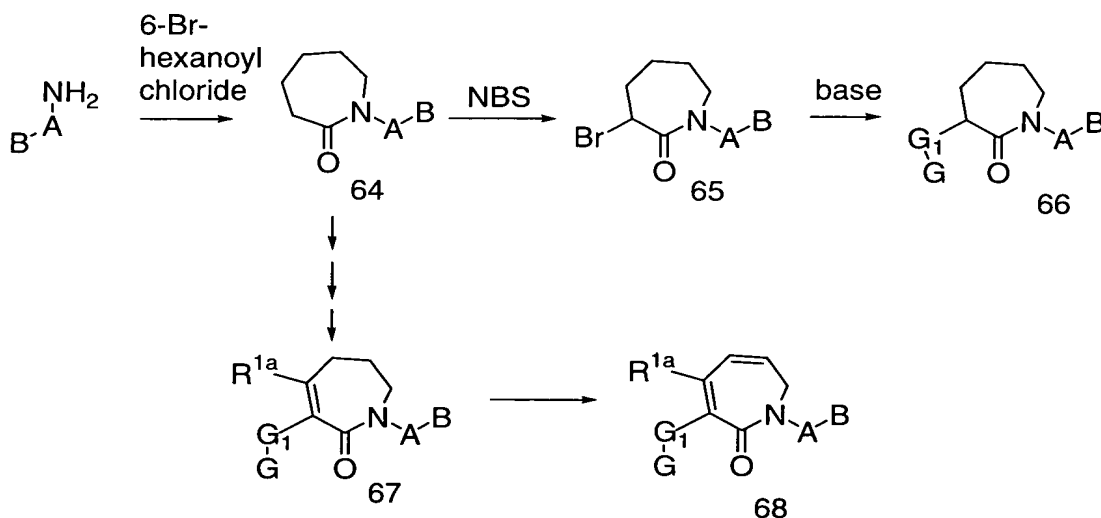
Scheme 8



Compounds **66**, **67**, and **68** in Scheme 9 could be obtained following the procedures outlined in Scheme 1.

5

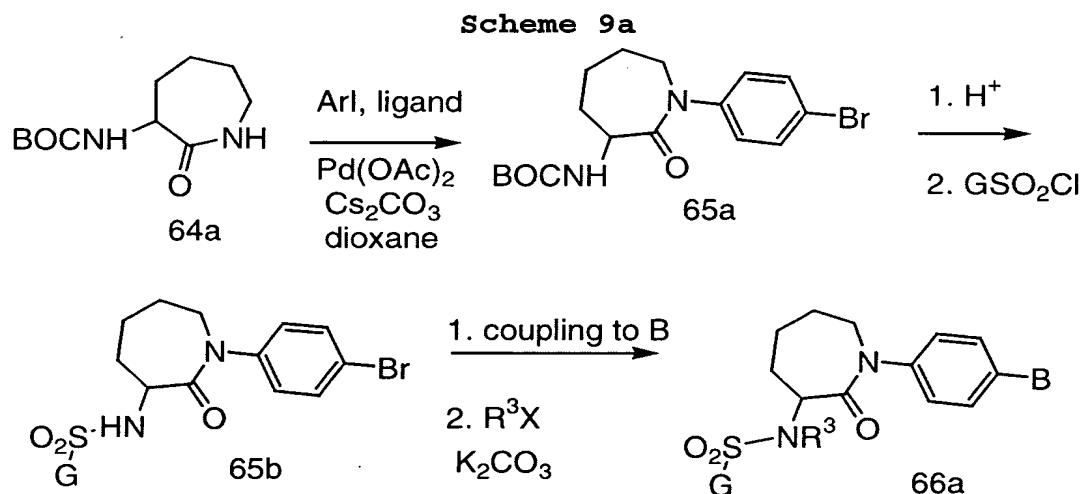
Scheme 9



Alternately, compounds of the invention wherein the core ring M is a caprolactam and the  $G_1$  group is  $-\text{SO}_2\text{NR}^3-$  can be prepared from  $\alpha$ -t-butoxycarbonylamino- $\epsilon$ -caprolactam **64a** as outlined in **Scheme 9a**. Arylation of **64a** with 4-bromoiodobenzene under the conditions

10

described by Yin and Buchwald (*Org. Letters* **2000**, 2, 1101) provides the 1-(4-bromophenyl)lactam intermediate **65a**. Deprotection and treatment with an appropriately substituted sulfonylchloride provides the corresponding sulfonamide **65b**. Introduction of the B substituent and optional alkylation as described above provides the targets **66a**. Alternately, the B group can be introduced prior to the deprotection and sulfonylation step. The corresponding amide analogs ( $G_1 = -CONR^3-$ ) can be prepared in similar fashion by substitution of a suitable acylchloride for the sulfonylchloride in **Scheme 9a**. Compounds with this core ring where  $G_1$  is NH are obtained in similar fashion by direct arylation of the amine obtained from deprotection of **65a**, either before or after the introduction of the B substituent, using one of several methods known to one skilled in the art of organic synthesis.



20

Compounds of formula **69** ( $X = \text{OH}$ ) can be prepared by reacting an appropriately substituted amine with 3-hydroxypropionic acid, wherein the hydroxyl group can be optionally protected and then deprotected after coupling, in solvents like THF or DMF in a presence of diisopropyl

25

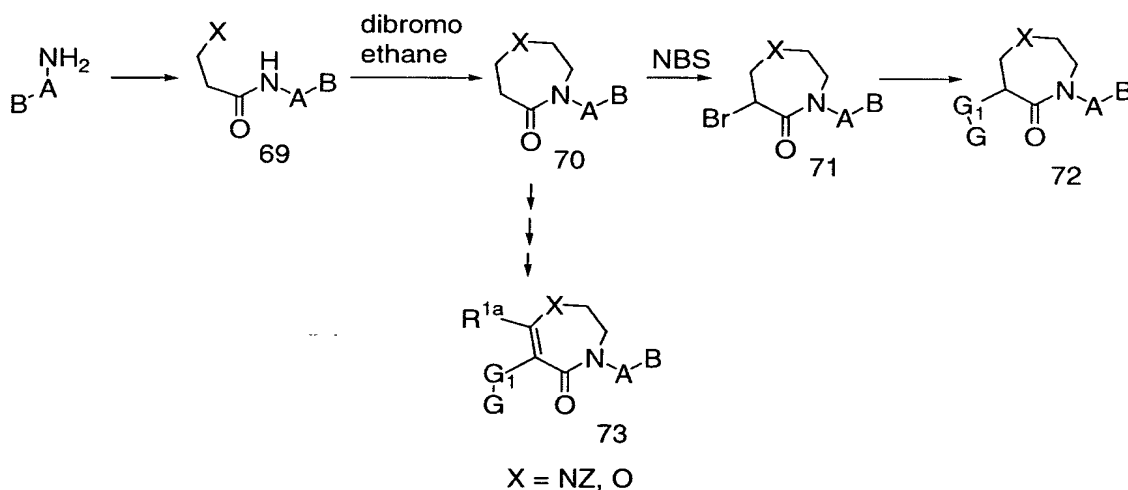
ethyl amine and a coupling reagent such as DCC.

Alternately, compounds of formula **69** ( $X=NHZ$ ) could be prepared by reaction of 3-bromo propionic acid with an appropriately substituted amine ( $H_2N-A-B$ ) in the presence

of a peptide bond forming reagent such as TBTU or other methods known in the art followed by displacement of the bromide with an amine of formula  $ZNH_2$ . Reaction of either of these intermediates with dibromoethane in a suitable solvent such as THF or methylene chloride

produces **70** ( $X=O$  or  $NZ$ ). The synthesis of the desired compounds **72** and **73** can be completed following the procedures described above or by other methods known to one skilled in the art of organic synthesis.

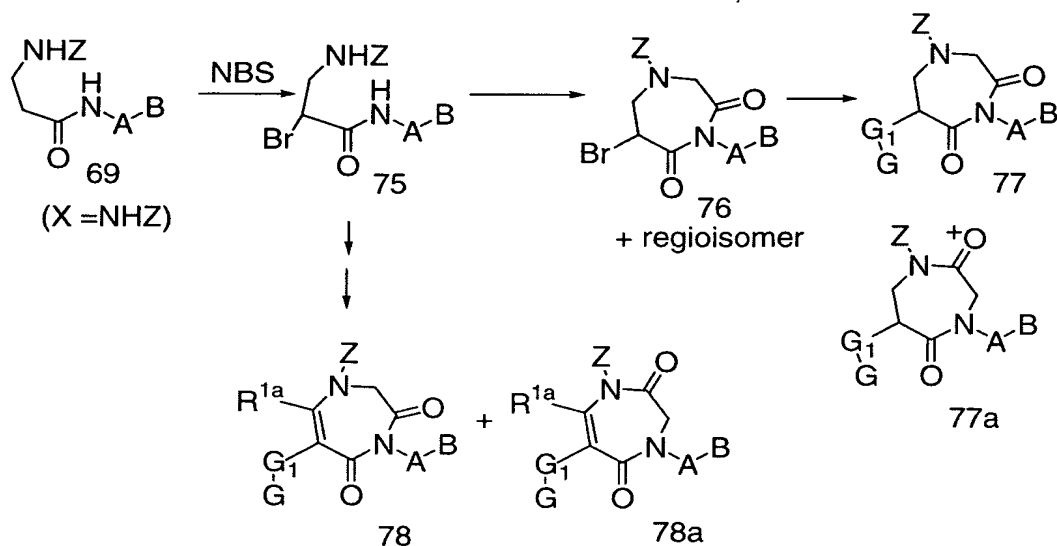
**Scheme 10**



Compounds shown in **Scheme 11** could be prepared by treatment of **69** ( $X=NHZ$ ) (see Scheme 10) with NBS in carbon tetrachloride (see Scheme 4) to give bromide **75**, that could be reacted with bromoacetyl bromide in an appropriate solvent under mild basic conditions to afford **76** and its regioisomer. Compounds **77**, **77a**, **78**, and **78a** could be prepared following the procedures outlined above

followed by separation of regioisomers by suitable chromatographic methods.

Scheme 11

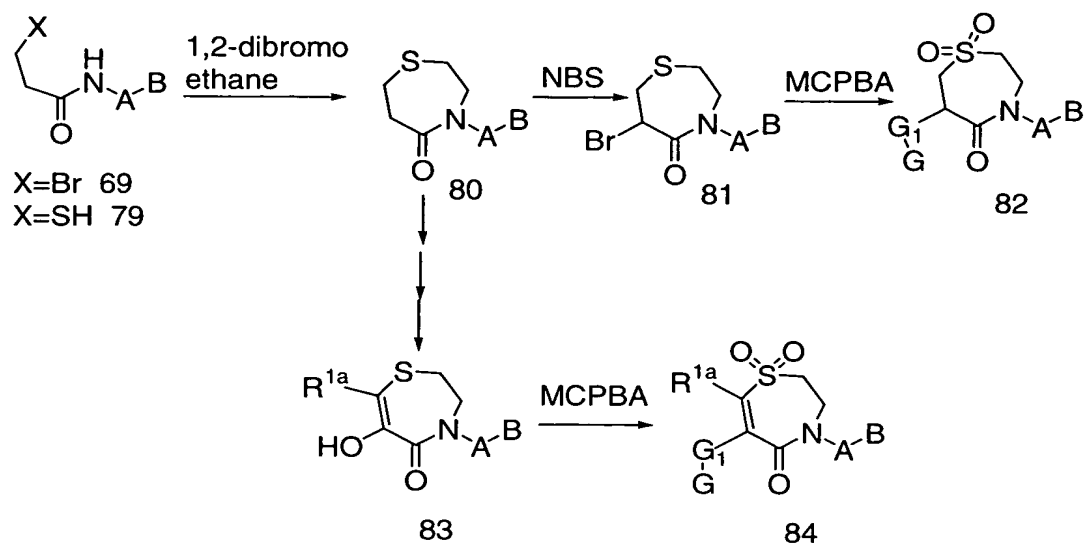


5

Synthesis of the compounds **82** and **84** could proceed according to Scheme 12. Compound **69** (X=Br) could be converted to **79** by treatment with an appropriately substituted thiol, pretreated with a mild base, in solvents like THF, methylene chloride, ethyl acetate or benzene. Treatment of **79** with 1,2 dibromoethane in the appropriate solvent affords **80**. Further transformations are conducted according to Schemes 1 and 4 and are followed by MCPBA oxidations to the target sulfones.

15

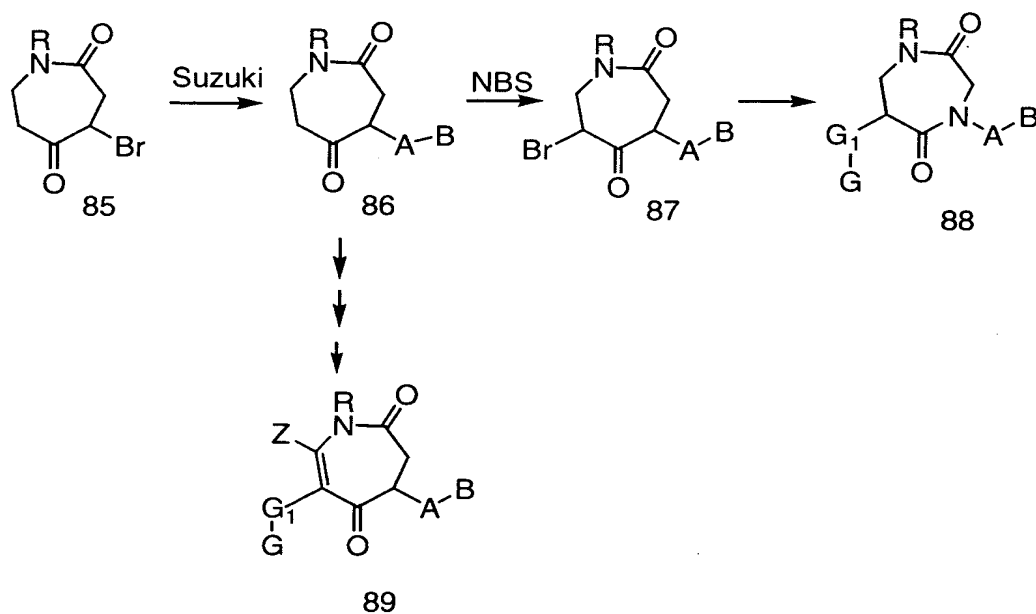
Scheme 12



As shown in Scheme 13, synthesis of **86** could be accomplished from compounds of formula **85** via Suzuki or other palladium mediated reactions known to those familiar with the art. (For preparation of **85**, see Wally *et.al.*; *J. Prakt. Chem.* **1994**, 86). Further transformations leading to the final compounds **88** and **89** could proceed as outlined in Schemes 1 and 4.

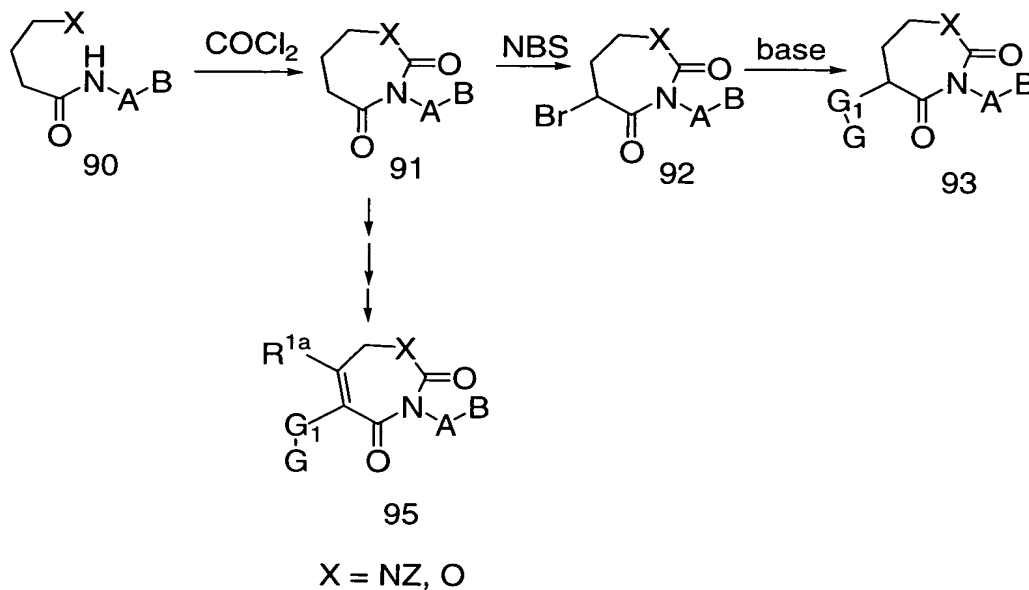
10

Scheme 13

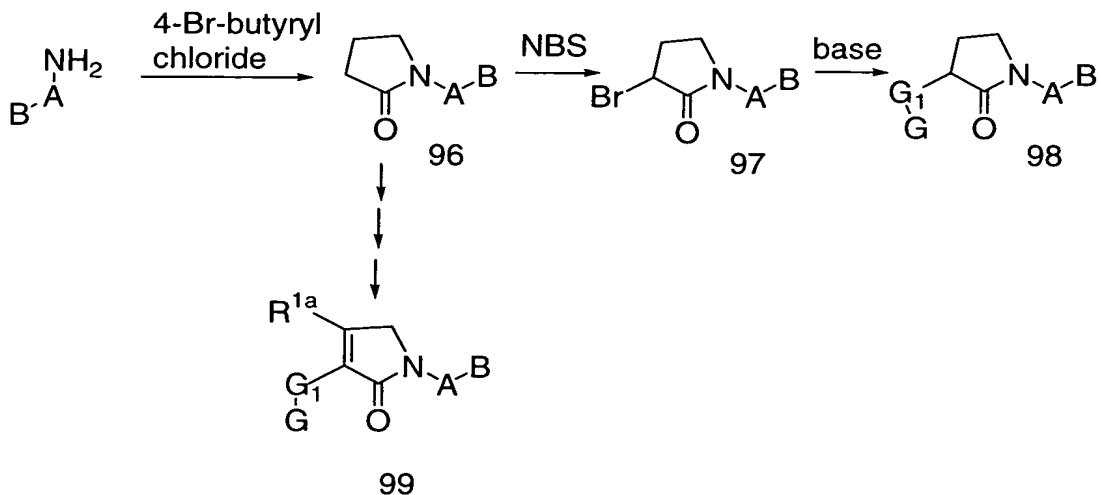




Preparation of compounds in Scheme 14 can proceed via compound **90** that is prepared according to the transformations outlined in Scheme 10. Compound **90** is treated with phosgene in toluene to provide **91**, that is then converted to **93** and **95** following the syntheses in Schemes 1 and 4.

**Scheme 14**

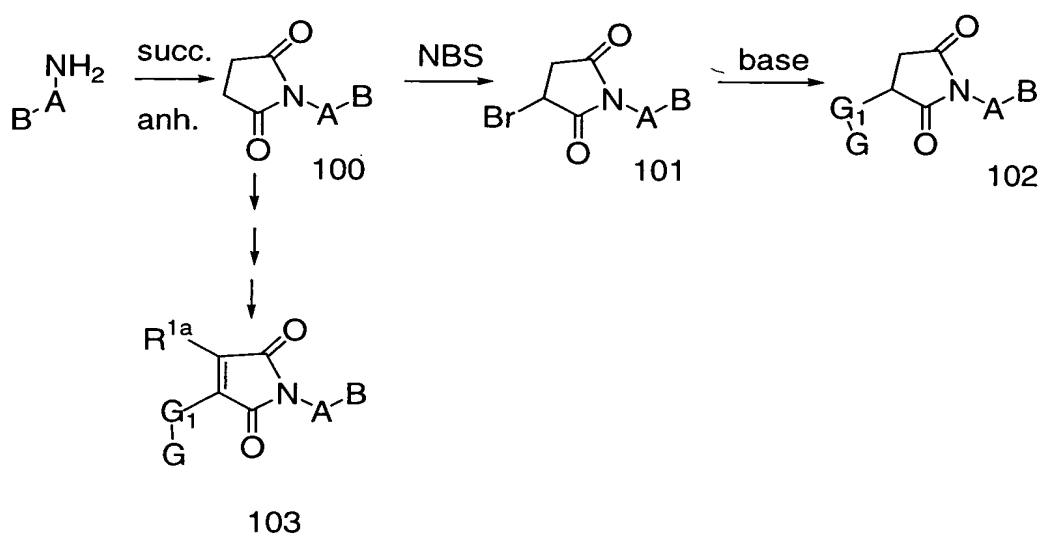
Compounds **98** and **99** could be prepared according to the methods outlined in Scheme 15.

**Scheme 15**

Synthesis of compound **100** from the amine shown could be accomplished by treatment of the amine with succinic anhydride in a presence of the acetic acid. Bromination of **100** with NBS in carbon tetrachloride affords **101**. Further transformations leading to the compounds of interest **102** and **103** could be done as described in Scheme 1.

10

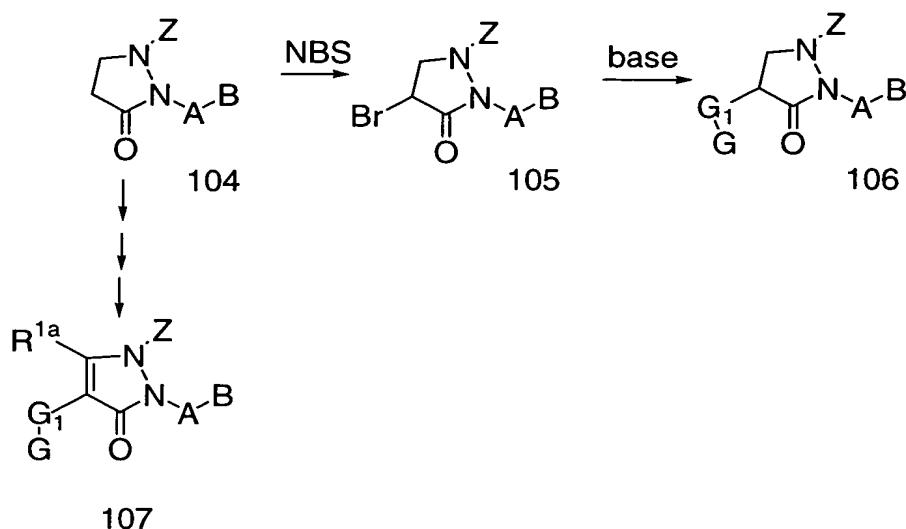
Scheme 16



Synthesis of compounds in Scheme 17 proceeds according to the methods described in Scheme 7.

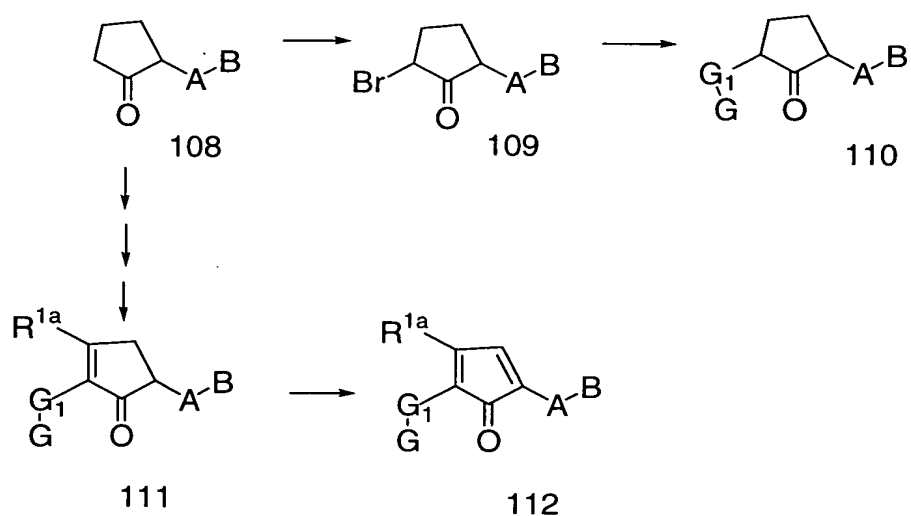
15

**Scheme 17**



Synthesis of compounds in Scheme 18 proceeds  
5 according to the methods described in Scheme 4.

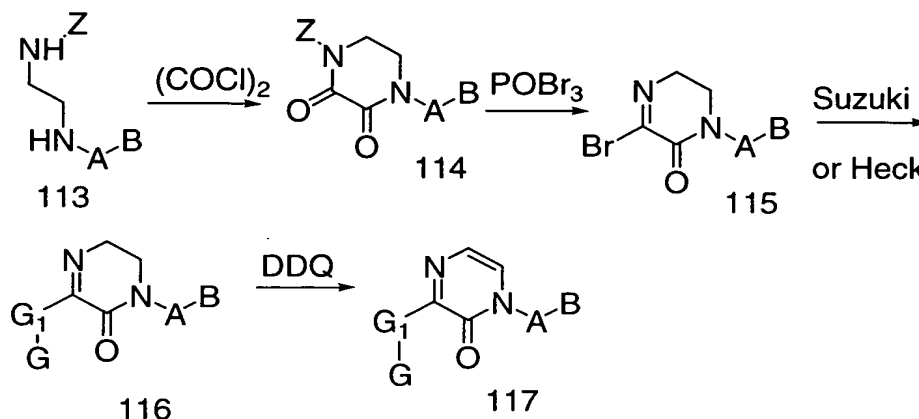
**Scheme 18**



10 Preparation of the compounds **116** and **117** could be accomplished as outlined in Scheme 19. Closure of an amine **113** to the intermediate **114** could be affected on reaction with oxalyl chloride in a suitable solvent. Treatment with POBr<sub>3</sub> affords **115**. Pd-mediated coupling

via Suzuki or Heck reaction conditions affords **116**, that upon treatment with DDQ could be converted to **117**.

Scheme 19

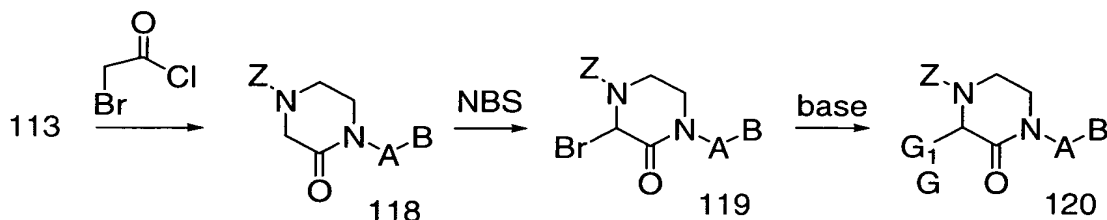


5

As shown in Scheme 20, **118** could be prepared from **113** on treatment with bromoacetyl chloride in a suitable solvent such as THF. The synthesis of **120** could proceed according to the synthesis shown in Scheme 1.

10

Scheme 20



15

Compounds of formula **120** wherein  $G_1$  is connected to a central piperazinone ring via a nitrogen may also be prepared as shown in Scheme 20a from commercially available 4-benzyloxycarbonylpiperazin-2-one (**120a**).

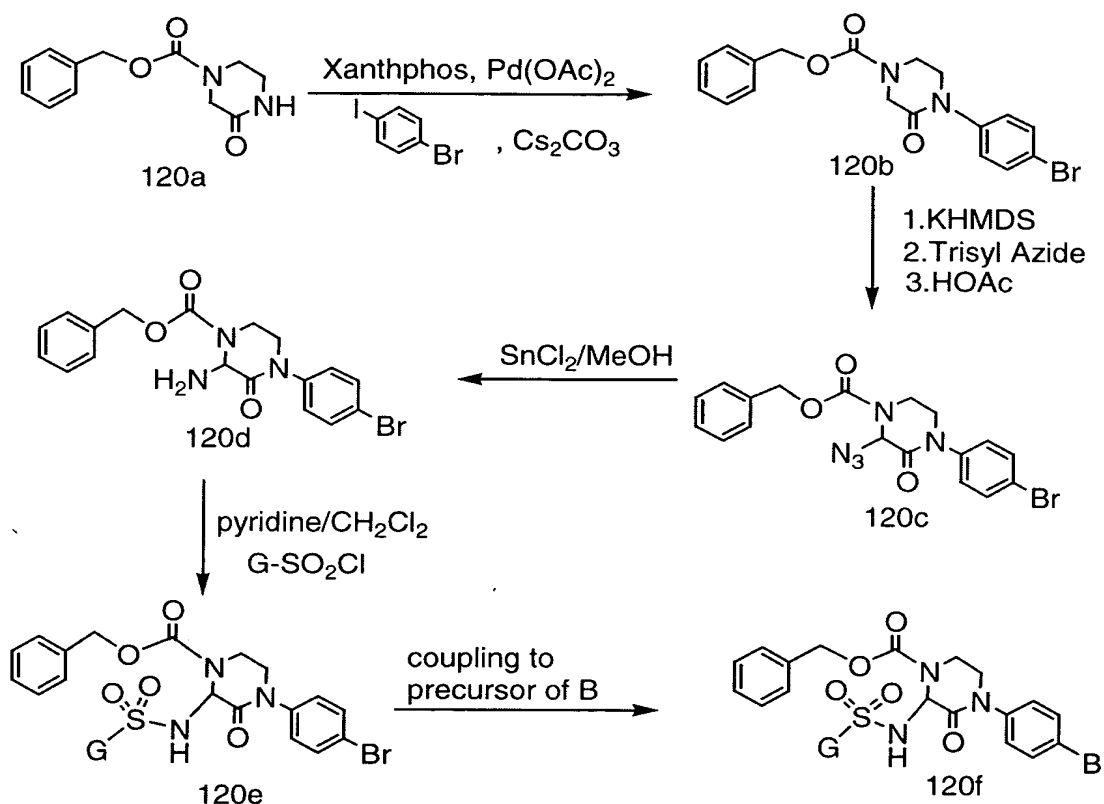
Palladium-catalyzed coupling of **120a** with *p*-

20

bromoiodobenzene using methods known in the art provides intermediate **120b**. Treatment of **120b** with potassium bis(trimethylsilyl)amide followed by trisyl azide and

acetic acid provides an azide intermediate **120c** which can be selectively reduced to the desired amine **120d** with tin dichloride. Sulfonylation, acylation or arylation of **120d** followed by introduction of substituent B and final  
 5 manipulations to introduce the desired functionality as described previously provides the compounds of the invention.

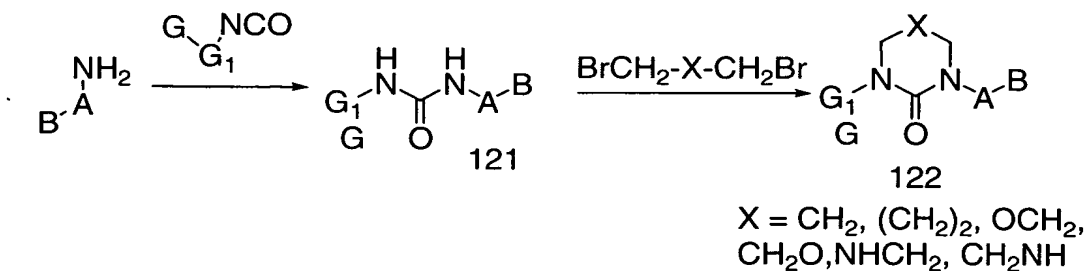
Scheme 20a



10

Cyclic ureas of type **122** could be prepared as outlined in Scheme 21. An appropriately substituted amine is reacted with an isocyanate derivative to afford  
 15 urea **121**. Cyclization of **121** to **122** can be carried out by treatment with a dibromo compound according to the methods familiar to those skilled in the art of organic synthesis.

Scheme 21



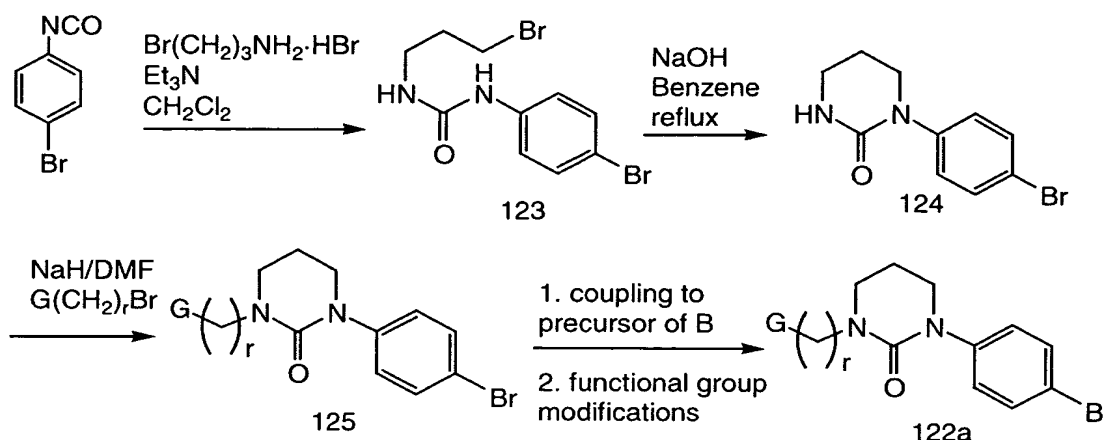
5 Alternately, cyclic ureas of formula **122a** can be prepared as shown in **Scheme 21a** wherein an isocyanate bearing an appropriately substituted A moiety, for example, 4-bromophenylisocyanate, is reacted with 3-bromopropylamine in the presence of a base such as

10 triethylamine. Suitable solvents for this transformation include methylene chloride or tetrahydrofuran. The resulting urea intermediate **123** can be cyclized by treatment with a base, for example sodium hydroxide in a solvent such as benzene at room temperature or above to

15 provide cyclic urea **124**. Alkylation of the unsubstituted urea nitrogen of **124** with an appropriately substituted alkyl halide can be accomplished by treatment of **124** with a strong base such as sodium hydride in a polar solvent such as DMF. Finally, the B group may be introduced onto

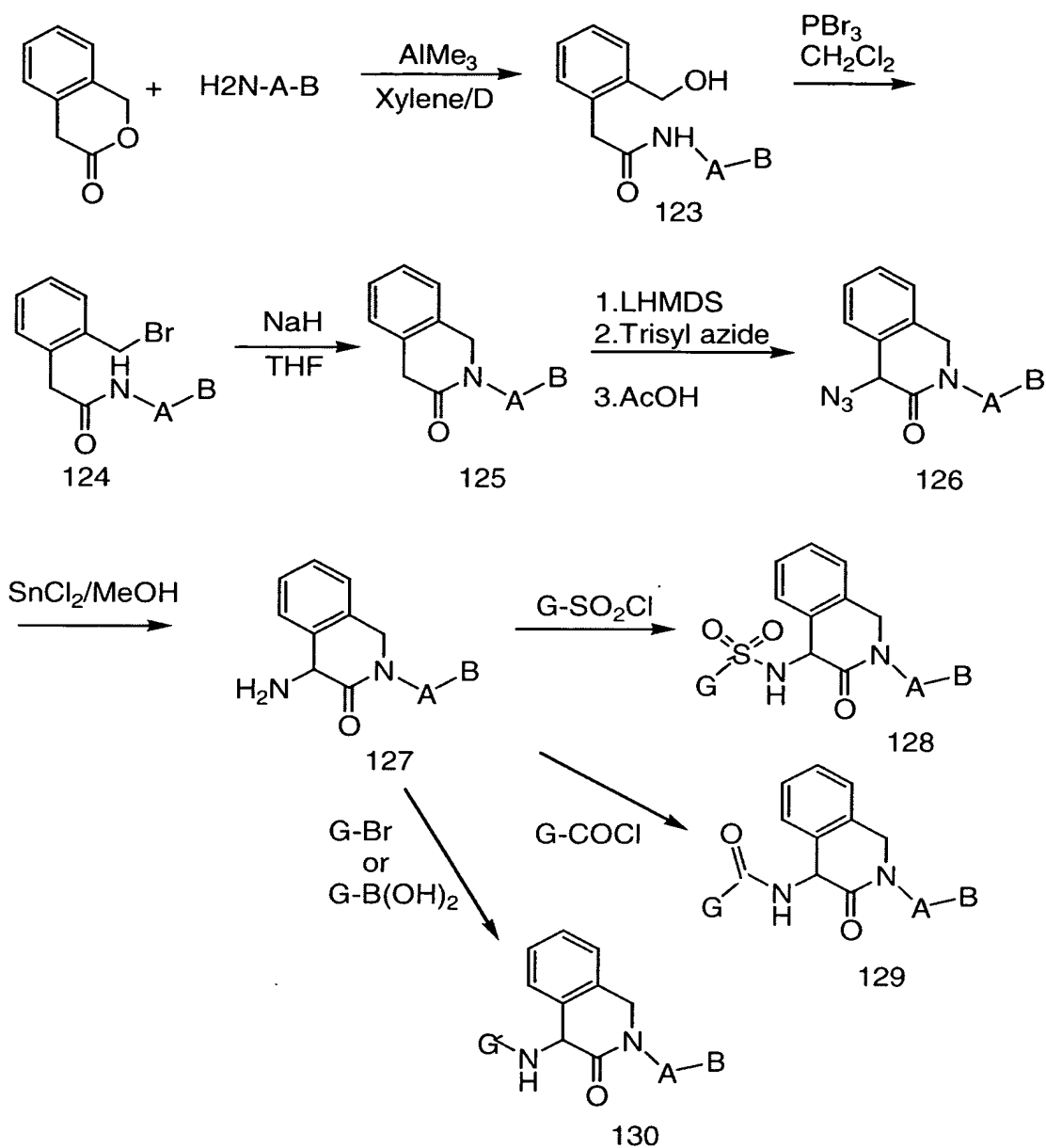
20 intermediate **125** by any of the methods already described or known in the art. Subsequent manipulation of the functional groups on the B and G groups provide cyclic urea compounds **122a** of this invention.

Scheme 21a



Compounds of the invention wherein the central ring M is a tetrahydroquinolinone ring system can be prepared as shown in Scheme 22. Addition of an appropriately substituted amine to commercially available isochromanone in the presence of trimethylaluminum affords hydroxyamide **123**. Conversion of the hydroxy moiety to the corresponding bromide can be achieved by treatment of **123** with phosphorous tribromide in a suitable solvent such as methylene chloride to give compounds of formula **124**. Treatment of **124** with a suitable base, for example, sodium hydride, provides the desired cyclized intermediates **125**. The azide moiety can be introduced by treating **125** with a strong base, such as lithium hexamethyldisilazide, and quenching the resulting carbanion with trisyl azide followed by addition of acetic acid. Azide **126** can be reduced to the corresponding amine **127** with tin dichloride. Further elaboration of **127** to introduce the G substituent with or with an additional linking atom can be accomplished by the methods described above or by other methods known to one skilled in the art of organic synthesis to give compounds such as **128**, **129** and **130**.

Scheme 22



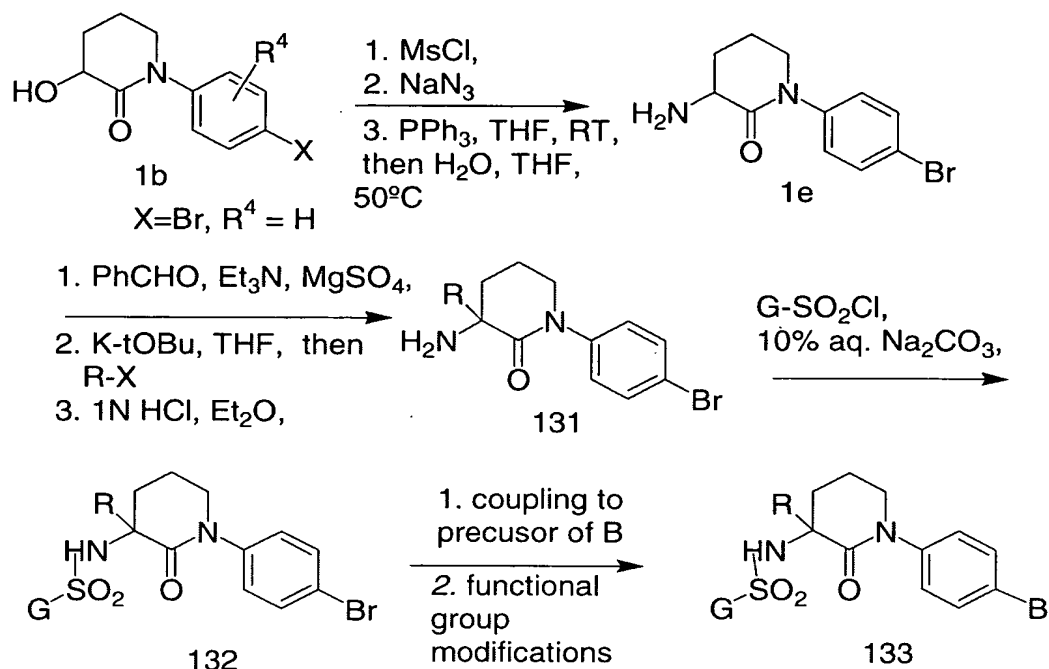
Compounds of this invention wherein ring M is a 3,3-  
 5 disubstituted 2-oxo-piperidine system can be prepared as  
 shown in Scheme 23 starting from 1-bromophenyl-3-hydroxy-  
 2-oxopiperidine, **1b**. The hydroxyl group can be converted  
 to an amino group via the intermediate azide either  
 through the bromide as described above or alternately by  
 10 treatment of the alcohol with methanesulfonyl chloride to



give a mesylate intermediate which is displaced with azide. Reduction of the azide may be accomplished by any of numerous methods known to one skilled in the art to provide amine **1e**. Protection of the amino group as its Schiff base can be achieved by treatment with benzaldehyde in the presence of a suitable base such as triethylamine and a reagent to remove water such as magnesium sulfate. Subsequent deprotonation with a base, such as potassium t-butoxide, treatment of the anion with an alkyl halide and deprotection of the amine provides compounds of formula **131**. Reaction of **131** with a suitably substituted sulfonyl chloride provides compounds **132** which can in turn be converted to compounds of the invention of formula **133** by the introduction of the B substituent and modification of functional groups on G and B, if needed, using methods described above or known in the literature. Alternately, the B substituent or alternate A-B groups may be introduced at an earlier point in the synthesis to provide an intermediate  $H_2N-A-B$  which can be substituted for compound **1b** in Scheme 23 to provide additional target compounds. Also as previously described, intermediate **131** can be acylated, alkylated or arylated in place of sulfonylation to provide amide, alkyl amine and aryl amine analogs of **133**.

25

Scheme 23



The A-B moieties can be prepared by methods known to those of skill in the art. The following publications, the contents of which are incorporated herein by reference, describe and exemplify means of preparing A-B moieties: WO 97/23212, WO97/30971, WO97/38984, WO98/06694, WO98/01428, WO98/28269, WO98/28282, WO98/57934, WO98/57937, WO99/32454, WO99/50255, WO00/39108, WO00/39131.

#### UTILITY

The compounds of this invention are useful as anticoagulants for the treatment or prevention of thromboembolic disorders in mammals. The term "thromboembolic disorders" as used herein includes arterial or venous cardiovascular or cerebrovascular thromboembolic disorders, including, for example, unstable angina, first or recurrent myocardial infarction, ischemic sudden death, transient ischemic

attack, stroke, atherosclerosis, venous thrombosis, deep  
vein thrombosis, thrombophlebitis, arterial embolism,  
coronary and cerebral arterial thrombosis, cerebral  
embolism, kidney embolisms, and pulmonary embolisms. The  
5 anticoagulant effect of compounds of the present  
invention is believed to be due to inhibition of factor  
Xa or thrombin.

The effectiveness of compounds of the present  
invention as inhibitors of factor Xa was determined using  
10 purified human factor Xa and synthetic substrate. The  
rate of factor Xa hydrolysis of chromogenic substrate  
S2222 (Diapharma/Chromogenix, West Chester, OH) was  
measured both in the absence and presence of compounds of  
the present invention. Hydrolysis of the substrate  
15 resulted in the release of pNA, which was monitored  
spectrophotometrically by measuring the increase in  
absorbance at 405 nM. A decrease in the rate of  
absorbance change at 405 nm in the presence of inhibitor  
is indicative of enzyme inhibition. The results of this  
20 assay are expressed as inhibitory constant,  $K_i$ .

Factor Xa determinations were made in 0.10 M sodium  
phosphate buffer, pH 7.5, containing 0.20 M NaCl, and 0.5  
% PEG 8000. The Michaelis constant,  $K_m$ , for substrate  
hydrolysis was determined at 25°C using the method of  
25 Lineweaver and Burk. Values of  $K_i$  were determined by  
allowing 0.2-0.5 nM human factor Xa (Enzyme Research  
Laboratories, South Bend, IN) to react with the substrate  
(0.20 mM-1 mM) in the presence of inhibitor. Reactions  
were allowed to go for 30 minutes and the velocities  
30 (rate of absorbance change vs time) were measured in the  
time frame of 25-30 minutes. The following relationship  
was used to calculate  $K_i$  values:

$$(v_o - v_s) / v_s = I / (K_i (1 + S / K_m))$$

where:

$v_o$  is the velocity of the control in the absence of inhibitor;

$v_s$  is the velocity in the presence of inhibitor;

$I$  is the concentration of inhibitor;

5  $K_i$  is the dissociation constant of the enzyme:inhibitor complex;

$S$  is the concentration of substrate;

$K_m$  is the Michaelis constant.

Compounds tested in the above assay are considered  
10 to be active if they exhibit a  $K_i$  of  $\leq 10$   $\mu\text{M}$ . Preferred compounds of the present invention have  $K_i$ 's of  $\leq 1$   $\mu\text{M}$ . More preferred compounds of the present invention have  $K_i$ 's of  $\leq 0.1$   $\mu\text{M}$ . Even more preferred compounds of the present invention have  $K_i$ 's of  $\leq 0.01$   $\mu\text{M}$ . Still more  
15 preferred compounds of the present invention have  $K_i$ 's of  $\leq 0.001$   $\mu\text{M}$ . Using the methodology described above, a number of compounds of the present invention were found to exhibit  $K_i$ 's of  $\leq 10$   $\mu\text{M}$ , thereby confirming the utility of the compounds of the present invention as effective Xa  
20 inhibitors.

The antithrombotic effect of compounds of the present invention can be demonstrated in a rabbit arterio-venous (AV) shunt thrombosis model. In this model, rabbits weighing 2-3 kg anesthetized with a  
25 mixture of xylazine (10 mg/kg i.m.) and ketamine (50 mg/kg i.m.) are used. A saline-filled AV shunt device is connected between the femoral arterial and the femoral venous cannulae. The AV shunt device consists of a piece of 6-cm tygon tubing that contains a piece of silk  
30 thread. Blood will flow from the femoral artery via the AV-shunt into the femoral vein. The exposure of flowing blood to a silk thread will induce the formation of a significant thrombus. After forty minutes, the shunt is disconnected and the silk thread covered with thrombus is

weighed. Test agents or vehicle will be given (i.v.,  
i.p., s.c., or orally) prior to the opening of the AV  
shunt. The percentage inhibition of thrombus formation  
is determined for each treatment group. The ID<sub>50</sub> values  
5 (dose which produces 50% inhibition of thrombus  
formation) are estimated by linear regression.

The compounds of the present invention may also be  
useful as inhibitors of serine proteases, notably human  
thrombin, Factor VIIa, Factor IXa, plasma kallikrein and  
10 plasmin. Because of their inhibitory action, these  
compounds are indicated for use in the prevention or  
treatment of physiological reactions, blood coagulation  
and inflammation, catalyzed by the aforesaid class of  
enzymes. Specifically, the compounds have utility as  
15 drugs for the treatment of diseases arising from elevated  
thrombin activity such as myocardial infarction, and as  
reagents used as anticoagulants in the processing of  
blood to plasma for diagnostic and other commercial  
purposes.

20 Some compounds of the present invention were shown  
to be direct acting inhibitors of the serine protease  
thrombin by their ability to inhibit the cleavage of  
small molecule substrates by thrombin in a purified  
system. *In vitro* inhibition constants were determined by  
25 the method described by Kettner et al. in *J. Biol. Chem.*  
**265**, 18289-18297 (1990), herein incorporated by  
reference. In these assays, thrombin-mediated hydrolysis  
of the chromogenic substrate S2238 (Helena Laboratories,  
Beaumont, TX) was monitored spectrophotometrically.  
30 Addition of an inhibitor to the assay mixture results in  
decreased absorbance and is indicative of thrombin  
inhibition. Human thrombin (Enzyme Research  
Laboratories, Inc., South Bend, IN) at a concentration of  
0.2 nM in 0.10 M sodium phosphate buffer, pH 7.5, 0.20 M  
35 NaCl, and 0.5% PEG 6000, was incubated with various

substrate concentrations ranging from 0.20 to 0.02 mM. After 25 to 30 minutes of incubation, thrombin activity was assayed by monitoring the rate of increase in absorbance at 405 nm that arises owing to substrate hydrolysis. Inhibition constants were derived from reciprocal plots of the reaction velocity as a function of substrate concentration using the standard method of Lineweaver and Burk. Using the methodology described above, some compounds of this invention were evaluated and found to exhibit a  $K_i$  of less than 10  $\mu\text{M}$ , thereby confirming the utility of the compounds of the present invention as effective thrombin inhibitors.

The compounds of the present invention can be administered alone or in combination with one or more additional therapeutic agents. These include other anti-coagulant or coagulation inhibitory agents, anti-platelet or platelet inhibitory agents, thrombin inhibitors, or thrombolytic or fibrinolytic agents.

The compounds are administered to a mammal in a therapeutically effective amount. By "therapeutically effective amount" it is meant an amount of a compound of the present invention that, when administered alone or in combination with an additional therapeutic agent to a mammal, is effective to prevent or ameliorate the thromboembolic disease condition or the progression of the disease.

By "administered in combination" or "combination therapy" it is meant that a compound of the present invention and one or more additional therapeutic agents are administered concurrently to the mammal being treated. When administered in combination each component may be administered at the same time or sequentially in any order at different points in time. Thus, each component may be administered separately but sufficiently closely in time so as to provide the desired therapeutic

effect. Other anticoagulant agents (or coagulation inhibitory agents) that may be used in combination with the compounds of this invention include warfarin and heparin (either unfractionated heparin or any  
5 commercially available low molecular weight heparin), synthetic pentasaccharide, direct acting thrombin inhibitors including hirudin and argatroban as well as other factor Xa inhibitors such as those described in the publications identified above under Background of the  
10 Invention.

The term anti-platelet agents (or platelet inhibitory agents), as used herein, denotes agents that inhibit platelet function such as by inhibiting the aggregation, adhesion or granular secretion of platelets.  
15 Such agents include, but are not limited to, the various known non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDS) such as aspirin, ibuprofen, naproxen, sulindac, indomethacin, mefenamate, droxicam, diclofenac, sulfinpyrazone, and piroxicam, including pharmaceutically acceptable salts or  
20 prodrugs thereof. Of the NSAIDS, aspirin (acetylsalicyclic acid or ASA), and piroxicam are preferred. Other suitable anti-platelet agents include ticlopidine and clopidogrel, including pharmaceutically acceptable salts or prodrugs thereof. Ticlopidine and  
25 clopidogrel are also preferred compounds since they are known to be gentle on the gastro-intestinal tract in use. Still other suitable platelet inhibitory agents include IIb/IIIa antagonists, including tirofiban, eptifibatide, and abciximab, thromboxane-A<sub>2</sub>-receptor antagonists and  
30 thromboxane-A<sub>2</sub>-synthetase inhibitors, as well as pharmaceutically acceptable salts or prodrugs thereof.

The term thrombin inhibitors (or anti-thrombin agents), as used herein, denotes inhibitors of the serine protease thrombin. By inhibiting thrombin, various  
35 thrombin-mediated processes, such as thrombin-mediated

platelet activation (that is, for example, the aggregation of platelets, and/or the granular secretion of plasminogen activator inhibitor-1 and/or serotonin) and/or fibrin formation are disrupted. A number of  
5 thrombin inhibitors are known to one of skill in the art and these inhibitors are contemplated to be used in combination with the present compounds. Such inhibitors include, but are not limited to, boroarginine derivatives, boroptides, heparins, hirudin, argatroban,  
10 and melagatran, including pharmaceutically acceptable salts and prodrugs thereof. Boroarginine derivatives and boroptides include N-acetyl and peptide derivatives of boronic acid, such as C-terminal  $\alpha$ -aminoboronic acid derivatives of lysine, ornithine, arginine, homoarginine  
15 and corresponding isothiuronium analogs thereof. The term hirudin, as used herein, includes suitable derivatives or analogs of hirudin, referred to herein as hirulogs, such as disulfatohirudin. The term thrombolytics (or fibrinolytic) agents (or thrombolytics or fibrinolytics), as used herein, denotes agents that  
20 lyse blood clots (thrombi). Such agents include tissue plasminogen activator and modified forms thereof, anistreplase, urokinase or streptokinase, including pharmaceutically acceptable salts or prodrugs thereof.  
25 The term anistreplase, as used herein, refers to anisoylated plasminogen streptokinase activator complex, as described, for example, in EP 028,489, the disclosure of which is hereby incorporated herein by reference herein. The term urokinase, as used herein, is intended  
30 to denote both dual and single chain urokinase, the latter also being referred to herein as prourokinase.

Administration of the compounds of the present invention in combination with such additional therapeutic agent, may afford an efficacy advantage over the  
35 compounds and agents alone, and may do so while



permitting the use of lower doses of each. A lower dosage minimizes the potential of side effects, thereby providing an increased margin of safety.

The compounds of the present invention are also  
5 useful as standard or reference compounds, for example as a quality standard or control, in tests or assays involving the inhibition of factor Xa. Such compounds may be provided in a commercial kit, for example, for use in pharmaceutical research involving factor Xa. For  
10 example, a compound of the present invention could be used as a reference in an assay to compare its known activity to a compound with an unknown activity. This would ensure the experimenter that the assay was being performed properly and provide a basis for comparison,  
15 especially if the test compound was a derivative of the reference compound. When developing new assays or protocols, compounds according to the present invention could be used to test their effectiveness.

The compounds of the present invention may also be  
20 used in diagnostic assays involving factor Xa. For example, the presence of factor Xa in an unknown sample could be determined by addition of chromogenic substrate S2222 to a series of solutions containing test sample and optionally one of the compounds of the present invention.  
25 If production of pNA is observed in the solutions containing test sample, but not in the presence of a compound of the present invention, then one would conclude factor Xa was present.

### 30 Dosage and Formulation

The compounds of this invention can be administered in such oral dosage forms as tablets, capsules (each of which includes sustained release or timed release formulations), pills, powders, granules, elixirs,  
35 tinctures, suspensions, syrups, and emulsions. They may

also be administered in intravenous (bolus or infusion), intraperitoneal, subcutaneous, or intramuscular form, all using dosage forms well known to those of ordinary skill in the pharmaceutical arts. They can be administered  
5 alone, but generally will be administered with a pharmaceutical carrier selected on the basis of the chosen route of administration and standard pharmaceutical practice. They can also be administered with other therapeutic agents known to those of skill in  
10 the art.

The dosage regimen for the compounds of the present invention will, of course, vary depending upon known factors, such as the pharmacodynamic characteristics of the particular agent and its mode and route of  
15 administration; the species, age, sex, health, medical condition, and weight of the recipient; the nature and extent of the symptoms; the kind of concurrent treatment; the frequency of treatment; the route of administration, the renal and hepatic function of the patient, and the  
20 effect desired. A physician or veterinarian can determine and prescribe the effective amount of the drug required to prevent, counter, or arrest the progress of the thromboembolic disorder. Description of appropriate means of administration as well as dosages and  
25 formulations can be found in WO 97/23212, WO97/30971, WO97/38984, WO98/06694, WO98/01428, WO98/28269, and WO98/28282, the contents of which are incorporated herein by reference.

By way of general guidance, the daily oral dosage of  
30 each active ingredient, when used for the indicated effects, will range between about 0.001 to 1000 mg/kg of body weight, preferably between about 0.01 to 100 mg/kg of body weight per day, and most preferably between about 1.0 to 20 mg/kg/day. Intravenously, the most preferred  
35 doses will range from about 1 to about 10 mg/kg/minute

during a constant rate infusion. Compounds of this invention may be administered in a single daily dose, or the total daily dosage may be administered in divided doses of two, three, or four times daily.

5       Compounds of this invention can be administered in intranasal form via topical use of suitable intranasal vehicles, or via transdermal routes, using transdermal skin patches. When administered in the form of a transdermal delivery system, the dosage administration  
10 will, of course, be continuous rather than intermittent throughout the dosage regimen.

      The compounds are typically administered in admixture with suitable pharmaceutical diluents, excipients, or carriers (collectively referred to herein  
15 as pharmaceutical carriers) suitably selected with respect to the intended form of administration, that is, oral tablets, capsules, elixirs, syrups and the like, and consistent with conventional pharmaceutical practices.

      For instance, for oral administration in the form of  
20 a tablet or capsule, the active drug component can be combined with an oral, non-toxic, pharmaceutically acceptable, inert carrier such as lactose, starch, sucrose, glucose, methyl cellulose, magnesium stearate, dicalcium phosphate, calcium sulfate, mannitol, sorbitol  
25 and the like; for oral administration in liquid form, the oral drug components can be combined with any oral, non-toxic, pharmaceutically acceptable inert carrier such as ethanol, glycerol, water, and the like. Moreover, when desired or necessary, suitable binders, lubricants,  
30 disintegrating agents, and coloring agents can also be incorporated into the mixture. Suitable binders include starch, gelatin, natural sugars such as glucose or beta-lactose, corn sweeteners, natural and synthetic gums such as acacia, tragacanth, or sodium alginate,  
35 carboxymethylcellulose, polyethylene glycol, waxes, and

the like. Lubricants used in these dosage forms include sodium oleate, sodium stearate, magnesium stearate, sodium benzoate, sodium acetate, sodium chloride, and the like. Disintegrators include, without limitation,  
5 starch, methyl cellulose, agar, bentonite, xanthan gum, and the like.

The compounds of the present invention can also be administered in the form of liposome delivery systems, such as small unilamellar vesicles, large unilamellar  
10 vesicles, and multilamellar vesicles. Liposomes can be formed from a variety of phospholipids, such as cholesterol, stearylamine, or phosphatidylcholines.

Compounds of the present invention may also be coupled with soluble polymers as targetable drug  
15 carriers. Such polymers can include polyvinylpyrrolidone, pyran copolymer, polyhydroxypropylmethacrylamide-phenol, polyhydroxyethylaspartamidephenol, or polyethyleneoxide-polylysine substituted with palmitoyl residues.  
20 Furthermore, the compounds of the present invention may be coupled to a class of biodegradable polymers useful in achieving controlled release of a drug, for example, polylactic acid, polyglycolic acid, copolymers of polylactic and polyglycolic acid, polyepsilon  
25 caprolactone, polyhydroxy butyric acid, polyorthoesters, polyacetals, polydihydropyrans, polycyanoacylates, and crosslinked or amphipathic block copolymers of hydrogels.

Dosage forms (pharmaceutical compositions) suitable for administration may contain from about 1 milligram to  
30 about 100 milligrams of active ingredient per dosage unit. In these pharmaceutical compositions the active ingredient will ordinarily be present in an amount of about 0.5-95% by weight based on the total weight of the composition.

Gelatin capsules may contain the active ingredient and powdered carriers, such as lactose, starch, cellulose derivatives, magnesium stearate, stearic acid, and the like. Similar diluents can be used to make compressed  
5 tablets. Both tablets and capsules can be manufactured as sustained release products to provide for continuous release of medication over a period of hours. Compressed tablets can be sugar coated or film coated to mask any unpleasant taste and protect the tablet from the  
10 atmosphere, or enteric coated for selective disintegration in the gastrointestinal tract.

Liquid dosage forms for oral administration can contain coloring and flavoring to increase patient acceptance.

15 In general, water, a suitable oil, saline, aqueous dextrose (glucose), and related sugar solutions and glycols such as propylene glycol or polyethylene glycols are suitable carriers for parenteral solutions. Solutions for parenteral administration preferably  
20 contain a water soluble salt of the active ingredient, suitable stabilizing agents, and if necessary, buffer substances. Antioxidizing agents such as sodium bisulfite, sodium sulfite, or ascorbic acid, either alone or combined, are suitable stabilizing agents. Also used  
25 are citric acid and its salts and sodium EDTA. In addition, parenteral solutions can contain preservatives, such as benzalkonium chloride, methyl-or propyl-paraben, and chlorobutanol.

Suitable pharmaceutical carriers are described in  
30 Remington's Pharmaceutical Sciences, Mack Publishing Company, a standard reference text in this field.

Representative useful pharmaceutical dosage-forms for administration of the compounds of this invention can be illustrated as follows:

35 Capsules

A large number of unit capsules can be prepared by filling standard two-piece hard gelatin capsules each with 100 milligrams of powdered active ingredient, 150 milligrams of lactose, 50 milligrams of cellulose, and 6 milligrams magnesium stearate.

#### Soft Gelatin Capsules

A mixture of active ingredient in a digestible oil such as soybean oil, cottonseed oil or olive oil may be prepared and injected by means of a positive displacement pump into gelatin to form soft gelatin capsules containing 100 milligrams of the active ingredient. The capsules should be washed and dried.

#### Tablets

Tablets may be prepared by conventional procedures so that the dosage unit is 100 milligrams of active ingredient, 0.2 milligrams of colloidal silicon dioxide, 5 milligrams of magnesium stearate, 275 milligrams of microcrystalline cellulose, 11 milligrams of starch and 98.8 milligrams of lactose. Appropriate coatings may be applied to increase palatability or delay absorption.

#### Injectable

A parenteral composition suitable for administration by injection may be prepared by stirring 1.5% by weight of active ingredient in 10% by volume propylene glycol and water. The solution should be made isotonic with sodium chloride and sterilized.

#### Suspension

An aqueous suspension can be prepared for oral administration so that each 5 mL contain 100 mg of finely divided active ingredient, 200 mg of sodium carboxymethyl cellulose, 5 mg of sodium benzoate, 1.0 g of sorbitol solution, U.S.P, and 0.025 mL of vanillin.

Where the compounds of this invention are combined with other anticoagulant agents, for example, a daily dosage may be about 0.1 to 100 milligrams of the compound

of Formula I and about 1 to 7.5 milligrams of the second anticoagulant, per kilogram of patient body weight. For a tablet dosage form, the compounds of this invention generally may be present in an amount of about 5 to 10  
5 milligrams per dosage unit, and the second anti-coagulant in an amount of about 1 to 5 milligrams per dosage unit.

Where the compounds of the present invention are administered in combination with an anti-platelet agent, by way of general guidance, typically a daily dosage may  
10 be about 0.01 to 25 milligrams of the compound of Formula I and about 50 to 150 milligrams of the anti-platelet agent, preferably about 0.1 to 1 milligrams of the compound of Formula I and about 1 to 3 milligrams of antiplatelet agents, per kilogram of patient body weight.

15 Where the compounds of Formula I are administered in combination with thrombolytic agent, typically a daily dosage may be about 0.1 to 1 milligrams of the compound of Formula I, per kilogram of patient body weight and, in the case of the thrombolytic agents, the usual dosage of  
20 the thrombolytic agent when administered alone may be reduced by about 70-80% when administered with a compound of Formula I.

Where two or more of the foregoing second therapeutic agents are administered with the compound of  
25 Formula I, generally the amount of each component in a typical daily dosage and typical dosage form may be reduced relative to the usual dosage of the agent when administered alone, in view of the additive or synergistic effect of the therapeutic agents when  
30 administered in combination.

Particularly when provided as a single dosage unit, the potential exists for a chemical interaction between the combined active ingredients. For this reason, when the compound of Formula I and a second therapeutic agent  
35 are combined in a single dosage unit they are formulated

such that although the active ingredients are combined in a single dosage unit, the physical contact between the active ingredients is minimized (that is, reduced). For example, one active ingredient may be enteric coated. By  
5 enteric coating one of the active ingredients, it is possible not only to minimize the contact between the combined active ingredients, but also, it is possible to control the release of one of these components in the gastrointestinal tract such that one of these components  
10 is not released in the stomach but rather is released in the intestines. One of the active ingredients may also be coated with a material that affects a sustained-release throughout the gastrointestinal tract and also serves to minimize physical contact between the combined  
15 active ingredients. Furthermore, the sustained-released component can be additionally enteric coated such that the release of this component occurs only in the intestine. Still another approach would involve the formulation of a combination product in which the one  
20 component is coated with a sustained and/or enteric release polymer, and the other component is also coated with a polymer such as a lowviscosity grade of hydroxypropyl methylcellulose (HPMC) or other appropriate materials as known in the art, in order to further  
25 separate the active components. The polymer coating serves to form an additional barrier to interaction with the other component.

These as well as other ways of minimizing contact between the components of combination products of the  
30 present invention, whether administered in a single dosage form or administered in separate forms but at the same time by the same manner, will be readily apparent to those skilled in the art, once armed with the present disclosure.



Other features of the invention will become apparent in the course of the following descriptions of exemplary embodiments that are given for illustration of the invention and are not intended to be limiting thereof.

5

## EXAMPLES

## Example 1

3-({1-[3-fluoro-2'-(methylsulfonyl)-[1,1']-biphenyl-4-  
yl]-2-oxo-3-piperidinyl}oxy)benzonitrile

10

**Part A: 3-Bromo-1-(4-bromo-2-fluorophenyl)-2-**

**piperidinone:** A solution of 1-(4-bromo-2-fluorophenyl)-3-hydroxy-2-piperidinone (1 g, 3.5 mmol), prepared according to the procedure in WO00/39131 in acetonitrile (20 mL), was treated with carbon tetrabromide (2.3 g, 7 mmol) and triphenylphosphine (1.8g, 7 mmol). The reaction was stirred at ambient temperature over a period of 3h, taken up in water, and extracted with ethyl acetate (3x). Ethyl acetate extracts were dried over sodium sulfate and concentrated. The crude residue was purified by flash chromatography (hexane/ethyl acetate, 1:3) to afford the bromide (0.8 g, 67%). LRMS (ES+): 352.1 (M+H)+.

15

20

**Part B. 3-([1-(4-Bromo-2-fluorophenyl)-2-oxo-3-**

**piperidinyl]oxy)benzonitrile:** A solution of 3-cyanophenol (0.53 g, 4.5 mmol) in tetrahydrofuran (15 mL) was cooled down and treated with sodium hydride (0.18 g, 4.5 mmol) and the compound of Ex. 1, Part A (1.6g, 4.5 mmol). The reaction was stirred at ambient temperature over a period of 4 h, taken up in water and extracted with ethyl acetate (3x). Ethyl acetate extracts were dried over sodium sulfate and concentrated. The crude residue was purified by flash chromatography (hexane/ethyl acetate,

30

1:3) to afford the product (1 g, 59%). LRMS (ES+): 390.3 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>.

**Part C. 3-({1-[3-fluoro-2'-(methylsulfonyl)-[1,1']-biphenyl-4-yl]-2-oxo-3-piperidinyl}oxy)benzonitrile: A**

5 solution of the compound of Ex. 1, Part B (0.5 g, 1.3 mmol) and 2-thioanisole boronic acid (0.21 g, 1.3 mmol) in a mixture of tetrahydrofuran (20 mL) and aqueous sodium carbonate (10 mL) was deoxygenated by a rapid stream of nitrogen applied to the system over a period of  
10 20 min, then treated with Pd(0). The reaction was refluxed over a period of 18 h, cooled down, filtered through Celite®, and washed with THF (20 mL). The filtrate was evaporated to dryness, taken up in water, and extracted with ethyl acetate (3x). The ethyl acetate  
15 extracts were dried over sodium sulfate and concentrated. The crude residue was purified by flash chromatography (hexane/ethyl acetate, 1:3) to afford coupling product (0.5 g, 90%) which was dissolved in methylene chloride and treated with MCPBA (0.4g, 2 mmol). The reaction  
20 mixture was stirred for 18h, concentrated and purified through a plug of silica gel (hexane/ethyl acetate, 1:1) to afford the title compound (0.5g, 93%). LRMS (ES+): 465.5 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>.

25

**Example 2**

**({1-[3-fluoro-2'-(methylsulfonyl)-[1,1']-biphenyl-4-yl]-2-oxo-3-piperidinyl}oxy)benzene-carboximidamide**

A solution of the compound of Ex. 1 (0.1 g, 0.22  
30 mmol) in anhydrous EtOH (20 mL) was bubbled with HCl gas at 0°C for 15 min. The resulting solution was stirred overnight at room temperature and concentrated *in vacuo*. The solid was redissolved in anhydrous EtOH (20 mL) and ammonium carbonate (2g, 2.5 mmol) was added followed by 1

mL pyridine. The resulting solution was stirred overnight at room temperature. The volatile was removed *in vacuo* and the residue purified by reverse phase HPLC to give the target compound. LRMS (ES+): 482.3 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>.

5

### Example 3

**4-({1-[3-fluoro-2'-(methylsulfonyl)-[1,1']-biphenyl-4-yl]-2-oxo-3-piperidinyl}oxy)benzene-carboximidamide**

10 This compound was prepared from 4-cyanophenol and the compound of Ex. 1, Part A following the procedures of Ex. 1, Part B and C, and Ex. 2. LRMS (ES+): 482.5 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>.

15

### Example 4

**3-({1-[2-[(dimethylamino)methyl]-3-fluoro-[1,1']-biphenyl-4-yl]-2-oxo-3-piperidinyl}oxy)benzonitrile**

A mixture of the compound of Ex. 1, Part B (0.5 g, 1.3 mmol) and 2-formylbenzene boronic acid (0.2 g, 1.3 mmol) was diluted with THF (20 mL) and 2M sodium carbonate (10 mL), then deoxygenated by a rapid stream of nitrogen applied to the system over a period of 20 min, followed by treatment with Pd(0). The reaction was  
25 refluxed over a period of 18 h, cooled down, filtered through Celite®, and washed with THF (20 mL). The filtrate was evaporated to dryness, taken up in water and extracted with ethyl acetate (3x). The ethyl acetate extracts were dried over sodium sulfate and concentrated.  
30 The crude residue (0.6 g) was treated with sodium borohydride (0.6 g, 2.8 mmol) and dimethyl amine (1.5 mL, 2M solution in THF). The reaction mixture was stirred for 18 h, diluted with ice water, and extracted with ethyl acetate. Ethyl acetate extracts were dried over

sodium sulfate and concentrated. The crude residue was purified by flash chromatography (hexane/ethyl acetate, 1:3) to afford the desired product (0.6 g, 75% over 2 steps). LRMS (ES+): 427.2 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>.

5

**Example 5**

**3-({1-[2-[(dimethylamino)methyl]-3-fluoro-[1,1']-biphenyl-4-yl]-2-oxo-3-piperidinyl}oxy)benzene-carboximidamide**

10

This compound was prepared from the compound of Ex. 4 by a Pinner reaction according to the procedure described in Example 2. LRMS (ES+): 461.55 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>.

15

**Example 6**

**3-({1-[2'-[(dimethylamino)methyl]-[1,1']-biphenyl-4-yl]-2-oxo-3-piperidinyl}oxy)benzene-carboximidamide**

This compound was prepared from 1-(4-bromophenyl)-3-hydroxy-2-piperidinone following the procedures described in Ex. 1, Part A and B, Ex. 4 and Ex. 5 above. LRMS (ES+): 442.5 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>.

20

**Example 7**

**3-({1-[2-[(dimethylamino)methyl]-3-fluoro-[1,1']-biphenyl-4-yl]-2-oxo-3-piperidinyl}amino)benzene-carboximidamide**

25

This compound was prepared from 3-aminobenzonitrile and the compound of Ex. 1, Part A according to the procedures described in Ex. 1, Part B and Ex. 4 and Ex. 5 above. LRMS (ES+): 460.6 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>.

30

**Example 8****2,4-dichloro-N-(1-[3-fluoro-2'-(methylsulfonyl)-[1,1']-biphenyl-4-yl]-2-oxo-3-piperidinyl)benzamide**

5 **Part A. 1-[3-fluoro-2'-(methylsulfonyl)-[1,1']-biphenyl-4-yl]-3-hydroxy-2-piperidinone:** A solution of the compound of Ex 1, Part A (5.0 g, 16.3 mmol) and 2-thioanisole boronic acid (2.7g, 16.3 mmol) in a mixture of tetrahydrofuran (50 mL) and aqueous sodium carbonate  
 10 (15 mL) was deoxygenated by a rapid stream of nitrogen applied to the system over a period of 20 min., then treated with Pd(0). The reaction was refluxed over a period of 18 h, cooled down, filtered through Celite®, and washed with THF (20 mL). The filtrate evaporated to  
 15 dryness, taken up in water, and extracted with ethyl acetate (3x). Ethyl acetate extracts were dried over sodium sulfate and concentrated. The crude residue was purified by flash chromatography (hexane/ethyl acetate, 1:3) to afford the product (5g, 88). LRMS (ES<sup>+</sup>): 350.5  
 20 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>.

**Part B. 3-bromo-1-[3-fluoro-2'-(methylsulfonyl)-[1,1']-biphenyl-4-yl]-2-piperidinone:** A solution of the compound of Ex. 8, Part A (1 g, 3.5 mmol) in methylene chloride (20 mL) was treated with PBr<sub>3</sub> (0.8 g, 3.5 mmol). The  
 25 reaction was stirred at ambient temperature over a period of 3h, taken up in water, and extracted with ethyl acetate (3x). Ethyl acetate extracts were dried over sodium sulfate and concentrated. The crude residue was purified by flash chromatography (hexane/ethyl acetate,  
 30 1:3) to afford the bromide (1 g, 50%). LRMS (ES<sup>+</sup>): 414.1 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>. The product was dissolved in methylene chloride and treated with MCPBA (1.3 g, 10.5 mmol). The reaction mixture was stirred for 18h, concentrated, and purified through a plug of silica gel (hexane/ethyl acetate, 1:1)

to afford the product (1 g, 93%). LRMS (ES+): 445.5 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>.

**Part C. 3-amino-1-[3-fluoro-2'-(methylsulfonyl)-[1,1']-**

**biphenyl-4-yl]-2-piperidinone:** A solution of the compound  
5 of Ex. 8, Part B (1 g, 2.4 mmol) in *N,N*-dimethylformamide  
(20 mL), was treated with NaN<sub>3</sub> (0.2 g, 2.4 mmol). The  
reaction was stirred at ambient temperature over a period  
of 18h, taken up in water, and extracted with ethyl  
acetate (3x). Ethyl acetate extracts were dried over  
10 sodium sulfate and concentrated. The crude residue was  
purified by flash chromatography (hexane/ethyl acetate,  
1:3) to afford the azide, which was dissolved in ether  
and treated with PPh<sub>3</sub> (1.9 g, 7.2 mmol). The reaction  
mixture was stirred for 18h, concentrated, and purified  
15 through a plug of silica gel (methanol/methylene  
chloride, 1:10) to afford the amine (0.3g, 36%). LRMS  
(ES+): 349.6 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>.

**Part D. 2,4-dichloro-*N*-(1-[3-fluoro-2'-(methylsulfonyl)-**  
**[1,1']-biphenyl-4-yl]-2-oxo-3-piperidinyl)benzamide:**

20 A solution of the compound of Ex. 8, Part C (30 mg, 0.09  
mmol) and 2,4-dichlorobenzoic acid (17 mg, 0.09 mmol) in  
*N,N*-dimethylformamide (5 mL), was treated with TBTU (60  
mg, 0.2 mmol) and triethylamine (0.5 mL). The reaction  
was stirred at ambient temperature over a period of 18h,  
25 taken up in water, and extracted with ethyl acetate (3x).  
Ethyl acetate extracts were dried over sodium sulfate and  
concentrated. The crude residue was purified by flash  
chromatography (methanol/methylene chloride, 1:10) to  
afford the title compound (20 mg, 39%). LRMS (ES+):  
30 536.4 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>.

The following amides were similarly prepared by  
coupling the compound of Ex. 8, Part C with the acid

indicated in parentheses in the presence of TBTU and TEA using DMF as solvent.

**Example 9**

5    **3-chloro-N-{1-[3-fluoro-2'-(methylsulfonyl)-[1,1']-biphenyl-4-yl]-2-oxo-3-piperidinyl}-benzamide:** (3-chlorobenzoic acid) LRMS (ES<sup>+</sup>): 501.9 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>.

**Example 10**

10    **3,4-dichloro-N-{1-[3-fluoro-2'-(methylsulfonyl)-[1,1']-biphenyl-4-yl]-2-oxo-3-piperidinyl}-benzamide:** (3,4-dichlorobenzoic acid) LRMS (ES<sup>+</sup>): 536.4 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>.

**Example 11**

15    **4-fluoro-N-{1-[3-fluoro-2'-(methylsulfonyl)-[1,1']-biphenyl-4-yl]-2-oxo-3-piperidinyl}-benzamide:** (4-fluorobenzoic acid) LRMS (ES<sup>+</sup>): 485.4 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>.

**Example 12**

20    **4-chloro-N-{1-[3-fluoro-2'-(methylsulfonyl)-[1,1']-biphenyl-4-yl]-2-oxo-3-piperidinyl}-benzamide:** (4-chlorobenzoic acid) LRMS (ES<sup>+</sup>): 501.9 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>.

**Example 12a**

25    **N-{1-[3-Fluoro-2'-(methylsulfonyl)-[1,1']-biphenyl-4-yl]-2-oxo-3-piperidinyl}-4-methoxy-benzamide:** (4-methoxybenzoic acid) LRMS (ES<sup>+</sup>): 501.9 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>.

30

**Example 12b**

**N-{1-[3-Fluoro-2'-(methylsulfonyl)-[1,1']-biphenyl-4-yl]-2-oxo-3-piperidinyl}-3-methoxy-benzamide:** (3-methoxybenzoic acid) LRMS (ES<sup>+</sup>): 501.9 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>.

**Example 13**

**2-chloro-*N*-(1-[3-fluoro-2'-(methylsulfonyl)-[1,1']-biphenyl-4-yl]-2-oxo-3-piperidinyl)-isonicotinamide:** (2-chloroisonicotinic acid) LRMS (ES<sup>+</sup>): 502.9 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>.

**Example 14**

**6-chloro-*N*-(1-[3-fluoro-2'-(methylsulfonyl)-[1,1']-biphenyl-4-yl]-2-oxo-3-piperidinyl)-nicotinamide:** (6-chloronicotinic acid) LRMS (ES<sup>+</sup>): 502.9 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>.

**Example 15**

***N*-(1-[3-fluoro-2'-(methylsulfonyl)-[1,1']-biphenyl-4-yl]-2-oxo-3-piperidinyl)-6-(1*H*-pyrazol-1-yl)nicotinamide:** (6-(1*H*-pyrazol-1-yl)nicotinic acid) LRMS (ES<sup>+</sup>): 534.6 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>.

In similar fashion, the following esters were prepared from the compound of Ex. 8, Part A by TBTU-mediated coupling to the acid indicated in parentheses in the presence of TEA and DMF as solvent following the procedure set out in Ex. 8, Part D. The resulting thiomethyl products were then oxidized to the corresponding methylsulfones using MPCBA in methylene chloride as described above.

**Example 16**

**1-[3-fluoro-2'-(methylsulfonyl)-[1,1']-biphenyl-4-yl]-2-oxo-3-piperidinyl)-2-chloronicotinate:** (2-chloronicotinic acid) LRMS (ES<sup>+</sup>): 503.9 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>.

**Example 17**



1-[3-fluoro-2'-(methylsulfonyl)-[1,1']-biphenyl-4-yl]-2-oxo-3-piperidinyl 4-methoxybenzoate: (4-methoxybenzoic acid) LRMS (ES<sup>+</sup>): 498.5 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>.

5

**Example 18**

2-({1-[3-fluoro-2'-(methylsulfonyl)-[1,1']-biphenyl-4-yl]-2-oxo-3-piperidinyl}oxy)-5-methoxybenzaldehyde

The title compound was obtained from the compound of  
 10 Ex. 8, Part B, 5-methoxy-2-hydroxybenzaldehyde and sodium  
 hydride in THF as solvent according to the procedure of  
 Ex. 1, Part B. LRMS (ES<sup>+</sup>): 498.5 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>.

Similarly prepared from the indicated alcohols or amines  
 15 were the following:

**Example 19**

3-[(5-chloro-2-pyridinyl)amino]-1-[3-fluoro-2'-(methylsulfonyl)-[1,1']-biphenyl-4-yl]-2-piperidinone:  
 20 (5-chloro-2-aminopyridine) LRMS (ES<sup>+</sup>): 381.6 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>.

**Example 20**

1-[3-fluoro-2'-(methylsulfonyl)-[1,1']-biphenyl-4-yl]-3(4-methoxyphenoxy)-2-piperidinone: (p-anisole) LRMS  
 25 (ES<sup>+</sup>): 470.5 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>.

**Example 20a**

1-[3-fluoro-2'-(methylsulfonyl)-[1,1']-biphenyl-4-yl]-3(4-methoxyanilino)-2-piperidinone: (p-methoxyaniline)  
 30 LRMS (ES<sup>+</sup>): 469.3 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>.

**Example 21**

2-({1-[3-fluoro-2'-(methylsulfonyl)-[1,1']-biphenyl-4-yl]-2-oxo-3-piperidinyl}oxy)-5-methoxybenzoate: (methyl 2-hydroxy-5-methoxybenzoate) LRMS (ES+): 528.5 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>.

5

**Example 22**

3-[3-(aminomethyl)phenoxy]-1-[3-fluoro-2'-(methylsulfonyl)-[1,1']-biphenyl-4-yl]-2-piperidinone

A solution of the nitrile compound of Ex. 1 in MeOH/HOAc was hydrogenated over 10% Pd/C to provide the desired benzyl amine target compound. LRMS (ES+): 469.5 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>.

15 **Example 23**

3-{[2-(anilinomethyl)-4-methoxyphenyl]oxo}-1-[3-fluoro-2'-(methylsulfonyl)-[1,1']-biphenyl-4-yl]-2-piperidinone

Reductive amination of the compound of Ex. 18 with aniline in the presence of sodium borohydride in methanol for 2 h provided the title compound. LRMS (ES+): 517.5 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>.

**Example 23a**

3-{[2-(4-pyridylaminocarbonyl)-4-methoxyphenyl]oxo}-1-[3-fluoro-2'-(methylsulfonyl)-[1,1']-biphenyl-4-yl]-2-piperidinone

This compound was prepared from the compound of Ex. 21 by reaction of the ester with 4-aminopyridine in the presence of trimethylaluminum to give the amide. LRMS (ESI+) 590.6 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>.

**Example 24**

3-chloro-N-{1-[3-fluoro-2'-(methylsulfonyl)-[1,1']-biphenyl-4-yl]-2-oxo-3-piperidinyl}-N-methyl-benzamide

Alkylation of the compound of Ex. 9 with methyl iodide in the presence of sodium hydride in THF provided the N-methyl amide. LRMS (ES+): 516.0 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>.

5

**Example 25**

**N-benzyl-4-chloro-N-{1-[3-fluoro-2'-(methylsulfonyl)-[1,1']-biphenyl-4-yl]-2-oxo-3-piperidinyl}-benzamide**

10 Similarly alkylation of the compound of Ex. 12 with benzyl bromide in the presence of sodium hydride in THF gave its N-benzyl amide analog. LRMS (ES+): 592.2 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>.

The following **Examples 26-30** were prepared from 3-amino-15 1-([3-fluoro-2'-(methylthio)-[1,1']-biphenyl-4-yl]-2-piperidinone by coupling with the indicated carboxylic acid in the presence of TBTU and TEA using DMF as solvent.

20

**Example 26**

**N-{1-[3-fluoro-2'-(methylthio)-[1,1']-biphenyl-4-yl]-2-oxo-3-piperidinyl}-1H-indole-5-carboxamide:** (indole-5-carboxylic acid) LRMS (ES+): 474.6 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>.

**Example 26a**

***N*-{1-[3-fluoro-2'-(methylthio)-[1,1']-biphenyl-4-yl]-2-oxo-3-piperidinyl}-benzimidazole-5-carboxamide:**

5 (imidazole-5-carboxylic acid) LRMS (ES+): 475.5 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>.

**Example 27**

***N*-{1-[3-fluoro-2'-(methylthio)-[1,1']-biphenyl-4-yl]-2-oxo-3-piperidinyl}-1*H*-pyrazole-4-carboxamide:** (4-pyrazole

10 carboxylic acid) LRMS (ES+): 423.4 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>.

**Example 28**

***N*-{1-[3-fluoro-2'-(methylthio)-[1,1']-biphenyl-4-yl]-2-oxo-3-piperidinyl}-isonicotinamide:** (isonicotinic acid)

15 LRMS (ES+): 436.4 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>

**Example 29**

***N*-{1-[3-fluoro-2'-(methylthio)-[1,1']-biphenyl-4-yl]-2-oxo-3-piperidinyl}-nicotinamide:** (nicotinic acid) LRMS

20 (ES+): 436.4 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>.

**Example 29a**

***N*-{1-[3-fluoro-2'-(methylsulfonyl)-[1,1']-biphenyl-4-yl]-2-oxo-3-piperidinyl}-nicotinamide**

25

This compound was prepared from the compound of Ex. 29 by oxidation with MCPBA as previously described. LRMS(ESI+) 468.5 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>.

30

**Example 30**

**6-amino-*N*-{1-[3-fluoro-2'-(methylthio)-[1,1']-biphenyl-4-yl]-2-oxo-3-piperidinyl}-nicotinamide:** (6-aminonicotinic acid) LRMS (ES+): 451.4 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>.

**Example 31**

**6-amino-N-(1-[3-fluoro-2'-(methylthio)-[1,1']-biphenyl-4-yl]-2-oxo-3-piperidinyl)-nicotinamide**

Reductive amination of 3-amino-1-([3-fluoro-2'-(methylthio)-[1,1']-biphenyl-4-yl]-2-piperidinone with 4-chlorobenzaldehyde in the presence of sodium borohydride in methanol provided the title compound. LRMS (ES+): 455.9 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>.

**Example 32**

**3-([(1-[2'-(aminosulfonyl)-[1,1']-biphenyl-4-yl]-2-oxo-3-piperidinyl)-amino]sulfonyl}benzenecarboximidamide, trifluoroacetate salt**

**Part A: 3-bromo-1-[4-bromophenyl]-2-piperidinone:** A mixture of 3-hydroxy-1-[4-bromophenyl]-2-piperidinone (10g, 37.17mmol) and PBr<sub>3</sub> (20.1g, 74.35mmol) in CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (200ml) solution was stirred at r.t. for 18hr. The reaction was quenched with ice water (100ml) and extracted with EtOAc. The extracts were washed with water and brine and dried over MgSO<sub>4</sub>. After filtration and concentration, the product was purified by chromatography on silica gel (2:1 / hexane: EtOAc) to give the bromide (8.8g, 72%) as a white solid. MS (ESI) m/z 372.8, 374.9 [(M+H+ACN)<sup>+</sup>, 100]. 376.9.

**Part B: 3-amino-1-[4-bromophenyl]-2-piperidinone:** The compound of Ex. 32, Part A (8.8g, 26.59mmol) and NaN<sub>3</sub> (5.2g, 79.76mmol) in 100ml DMF was heated at 50°C in an oil bath for 3 h then cooled to 0°C and quenched with water. The mixture was extracted with EtOAc and the extracts washed with water and brine, dried over MgSO<sub>4</sub>, filtrated and concentrated. The residue was purified by chromatography on silica gel (2:1 / hexane: EtOAc) to

give the azide (7.8g, 100%) as a solid. MS (AP<sup>+</sup>) m/z 266.9; 268.9 [(M+H-N<sub>2</sub>)<sup>+</sup>, 100]. This azide intermediate (7.8g, 26.5 mmol) was dissolved in 100ml Et<sub>2</sub>O, then Ph<sub>3</sub>P (6.9g, 26.5 mmol) was added. After 1.5hr stirring at  
 5 r.t., 0.7 ml of water (1.5 eq.) was added. The reaction mixture was stirred for 18hr. The solvent was removed *in vacuo* and the residue purified by chromatography on silica gel (2:1 / hexane: EtOAc) to give the amine (6.6g, 93%) as a white solid. MS (ESI) m/z 269.2, 271.2 [(M+H)<sup>+</sup>  
 10 100].

**Part C. N-[1-[4-bromophenyl]oxo-3-piperidinyl]-3-cyanobenzenesulfonamide:** The compound of Ex. 32, Part B (0.5g, 1.86mmol) was dissolved in CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (5ml) and 5 ml pyridine added. The solution was cooled to 0°C in ice  
 15 bath, and 3-cyanobenzenesulphonyl chloride (0.4 g, 2.05 mmol) was added. The mixture was stirred at 0°C to r.t. for 18h, diluted with CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>, washed with 0.5M HCl, sat. NaHCO<sub>3</sub> and brine, dried over MgSO<sub>4</sub>, filtrated and concentrated. The residue was purified by chromatography  
 20 on silica gel (1:1 hexane: EtOAc) to give the desired compound (0.35g, 43%). MS (ESI) m/z 434.0/436.3 [(M+H)<sup>+</sup> 25], 497.1/499.1 [(M+Na+AcCN)<sup>+</sup>, 100].

**Part D: 3-{[1-[2'-(t-butylaminosulfonyl)-[1,1']-biphenyl-4-yl]-2-oxo-3-piperidinyl]-amino]sulfonyl}benzene carboximidamide:** A solution of the  
 25 compound of Ex. 32, Part C (0.35 g. 0.808 mmol) and 2-t-butylaminosulfonylbenzene boronic acid (0.25g, 0.97 mmol) in a mixture of 30 ml toluene and 12.5 ml ethanol was purged with N<sub>2</sub> for 30 min. To this was added 0.8 ml of a  
 30 2M soln of sodium carbonate, nBu<sub>4</sub>NBr (13 mg, 0.04mmol) and (Ph<sub>3</sub>P)<sub>4</sub>Pd (37 mg, 0.03mmol) and the mixture was heated to reflux for 18 h. Solvents were evaporated and the residue chromatographed on silica gel using 1:1

hexane/ethyl acetate to provide the product (0.4g, 87%) as a white solid. MS (ESI<sup>+</sup>) 589.3 (100).

**Part E. 3-([1-[2'-(aminosulfonyl)-[1,1']-biphenyl-4-yl]-2-oxo-3-piperidinyl]-**

5 **amino]sulfonyl}benzenecarboximidamide trifluoroacetate**

**salt:** The compound of Ex. 32, Part D (0.2 g, 0.35mmol) was dissolved in 3 ml ethanol and hydroxylamine hydrochloride (74 mg, 1.06mmol) and triethylamine (0.2ml, 1.4mmol) were added. The whole was heated in a 95°C oil bath for 4h, cooled to RT, and solvent removed by evaporation. The residue was dried on a vacuum pump and then taken up in 2m glacial acetic acid. To this was added 49µL acetic anhydride (0.53mmol). After stirring for 30 min at room temperature, 20 mg of 5%Pd/C was added and the reaction mixture was placed under a balloon of H<sub>2</sub> for 4h. The catalyst was removed by filtration and washed with ethanol. Combined filtrate and washings were evaporated and the residue dissolved in 3 ml trifluoroacetic acid and stirred overnight at room temperature then heated at 50°C for 1h to complete the de-protection of the sulfonamide. Purification by reverse phase HPLC provided the title compound (140mg, 64%). <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ 9.49 (s, 2H), 9.13 (s, 2H), 8.38 (m, 1H), 8.24 (m, 2H), 8.02 (m, 2H), 7.82 (m, 1H), 7.59 (m, 2H), 7.36 (m, 2H), 7.29 (m, 3H), 7.23 (m, 2H), 4.10 (m, 1H), 3.60 (m, 2H), 2.11 (m, 1H), 1.95 (m, 2H), 1.86 (m, 1H). MS (ESI) 528.2 [(M+H)<sup>+</sup> 100]

**Example 33**

30 **3-{N-Benzyl-N-[2-oxo-1-(2'-sulfamoyl-biphenyl-4-yl)-piperidin-3-yl]-sulfamoyl}-benzamidine**

**Part A. N-benzyl-N-[1-[4-bromophenyl]-2-oxo-3-piperidinyl]-3-cyanobenzenesulfonamide:** A mixture of the

compound of Ex. 32, Part C (0.8g, 1.85mmol) and  $K_2CO_3$  (0.31g, 2.22mmol) in DMF (5ml) was cooled to 0°C, and benzyl bromide (0.33g, 1.94mmol) was added. The reaction mixture was stirred at 0°C to r.t. for 5h, diluted with water (100ml) and extracted with EtOAc. The combined organic layers were washed with water and brine, dried over  $MgSO_4$ , filtered and concentrated. The residue was purified by chromatography on silica gel (2:1 / hexane: EtOAc) to give the desired compound (0.98g, 100%) Ms (ESI) m/z 524.1, 526.1 [(M+H)<sup>+</sup> 35].

**Part B. N-Benzyl-N-[1-(2'-t-butylaminosulfonyl-biphenyl-4-yl) 2-oxo-piperidin-3-yl]-3-cyanobenzenesulfonamide:**

This compound was prepared in 68% yield by Suzuki coupling from the compound of Ex. 33, Part A using the procedure described for Ex. 32, Part D.

**Part C. 3-{Benzyl-[2-oxo-1-(2'-sulfamoyl-biphenyl-4-yl)-piperidin-3-yl]-sulfamoyl}-benzamidine:** The title compound was prepared from the compound of Ex. 33, Part B using the method described for Ex.32, Part E using  $RaNi$  catalyst in place of 5%Pd/C. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ 9.47 (s, 2H), 9.08 (s, 2H), 8.20 (m, 2H), 8.02 (m, 2H), 7.79 (m, 1H), 7.60 (m, 2H), 7.37 (m, 4H), 7.31 (m, 4H), 7.26 (m, 4H), 4.65 (m, 2H), 4.14 (m, 1H), 3.53 (m, 2H), 2.05 (m, 2H), 1.89 (m, 2H). MS (ESI) 618.2 [(M+H)<sup>+</sup>, 100].

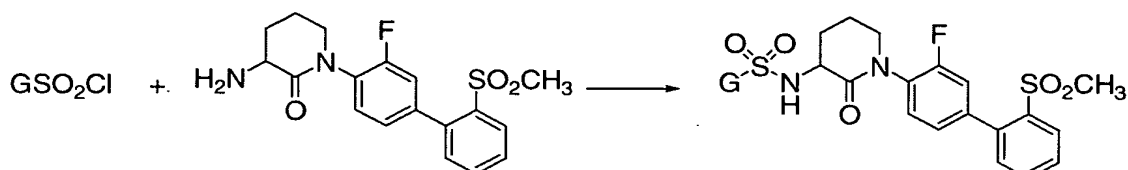
25

**General Procedure for preparation of Sulfonamide Examples from the Compound of Ex. 8, Part C:** The amine from Ex. 8, Part C (25mg, 0.069mmol) and a sulfonyl chloride compound (0.104mmol) were dissolved in 1.5ml EtOAc, and then 1M  $K_2CO_3$  solution (0.5ml) was added. The mixture was stirred at room temperature for 1.5 h. The reaction was diluted with EtOAc (2ml), and the org. layer was separated and washed with water (2x1ml). To the organic layer solution

30



was added PS-Trisamine (100mg) and the mix was stirred at room temperature and overnight.  $\text{MgSO}_4$  was added followed by filtration and concentration to provide the product. Yield were typically in the 70% to 95% range. Where  
 5 necessary the products were further purified by either LC/MS or silica gel chromatography.



Ex. 8, Part C

**Examples 34-52** (see Table 1 below) were prepared using  
 10 the above general procedure.

### Example 53

**5-Chloro-N-[1-(2'-diethylaminomethyl-[1,1']-biphenyl-4-yl)-2-oxo-piperidin-3-yl]-thiophene-2-sulfonamide**

15

**Part A: 5-Chloro-N-[4-bromophenyl]-2-oxo-piperidin-3-yl]-thiophene-2-sulfonamide:** The compound of Ex. 32, Part B (1g, 3.72mmol) was dissolved in ethyl acetate (60ml) and 1M potassium carbonate solution (20ml) was added. The  
 20 mixture was stirred vigorously while 5-chloro-2-thiophenesulfonyl chloride (1.2 g, 5.52mmol) was added in rapid dropwise fashion at room temperature. Stirring was continued under  $\text{N}_2$  for 1.5-2 h at which time the reaction was transferred to a separatory funnel and phases  
 25 separated. The organic layer was washed with water and brine, dried over anhydrous  $\text{Na}_2\text{SO}_4$ , filtered and evaporated. The residue was re-dissolved in a small amount of  $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2$  and charged to a pad of silica gel in a 60 ml sintered glass funnel. After washing with ethyl

acetate-hexane 3:1, the product was eluted with ethyl acetate-hexane 1:1 (0.75g 45%). MS 450.9 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>.

**Part B 5-Chloro-N-[1-(2'-formyl-[1,1']-biphenyl-4-yl)-2-oxo-piperidin-3-yl]-thiophene-2-sulfonamide:** The compound

5 of Ex. 53, Part A (0.7g, 1.56 mmol) and 2-formylbenzene boronic acid (0.28g, 1.87mmol) were dissolved in a mixture of 30 ml toluene and 12.5 ml ethanol and degassed by evacuation and flushing with N<sub>2</sub>. To this solution was added 2M aq. Na<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub> solution (1.56 ml, 3.12mmol), nBu<sub>4</sub>NBr  
10 (25mg, 0.078mmol) and (Ph<sub>3</sub>P)<sub>4</sub>Pd (72mg, 0.78mmol) under N<sub>2</sub> and the whole was heated to reflux in a 95°C oil bath overnight. Reaction was cooled to room temperature and partitioned between ethyl acetate and water. Phases were separated and aqueous re-extracted with EtOAc. The  
15 combined organic phases were washed with water and brine, dried over anhydrous Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>, filtered and evaporated. The residue was chromatographed on silica gel (hexane-ethyl acetate 65/35 to 50/50) to give the product (0.41g, 55%). MS 475.0 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>.

20 **Part C. 5-Chloro-N-[1-(2'-diethylaminomethyl-[1,1']-biphenyl-4-yl)-2-oxo-piperidin-3-yl]-thiophene-2-**

**sulfonamide:** The aldehyde of Ex. 53, Part B (50 mg, 0.105mmol) was charged to a 13 mm test tube and 2-3 ml 1,2-dichloroethane and diethylamine (25 µl, 0.24mmol)  
25 were added. The mixture was agitated using a FirstMate parallel synthesizer for 30 min at room temperature under N<sub>2</sub> followed by addition of sodium triacetoxymethylborohydride (35mg, 0.165mmol). Agitation was continued for 48h. Reaction was quenched with 1 ml 2M  
30 NaOH and extracted 3X with CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>. Extracts were washed with brine, dried over anhydrous Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>, filtered and evaporated. Purification by reverse phase HPLC and lyophilization provided the product as a white solid

(19mg, 34%)  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (DMSO- $d_6$ )  $\delta$  9.02 (1H, bs), 8.47 (1H, d,  $J=12\text{Hz}$ ), 7.72 (1H, m), 7.56 (3H, m), 7.39 (5H, s), 7.23 (1H, m), 4.31 (2H, m), 4.12 (1H, m), 3.65 (2H, m), 3.39 (4H, m), 2.98 (1H, m), 2.83 (1H, m), 2.10 (1H, m), 1.97 (2H, m), 1.94 (1H, m), 0.92 (6H, t,  $J=6.6\text{Hz}$ ). MS 532.4 (M+H) $^+$

**Examples 54-57** (see Table 1 below) were similarly prepared from the respective amines and the compound of Ex. 53, Part B.

#### Example 58

**3-Amino-N-[1-(3-fluoro-2'-methanesulfonyl-biphenyl-4-yl)-2-oxo-piperidin-3-yl]-benzo[d]isoxazole-5-sulfonamide**

15

**Part A. 3-cyano-4-fluoro-N-[1-(3-fluoro-2'-methanesulfonyl-biphenyl-4-yl)-2-oxo-piperidin-3-yl]-benzenesulfonamide:** A mixture of the compound of Ex. 49 (0.12g, 0.217mmol), zinc cyanide (25mg, 0.217mmol), tris(dibenzylideneacetone)dipalladium(0) ( $\text{Pd}_2(\text{dba})_3$ ) (20mg, 0.0217mmol), 1,1'-bis(diphenylphosphino)ferrocene (dppf) (24mg, 0.0433mmol) and zinc powder (2.8mg, 0.0433mmol) in 5 ml N,N-dimethylacetamide was degassed and flushed with nitrogen then heated in a 140°C oil bath for 20h. The mixture was cooled to room temperature, diluted with EtOAc and filtered through Celite®. The filtrate was washed with saturated  $\text{Na}_2\text{CO}_3$  and brine, dried over anhydrous  $\text{Na}_2\text{SO}_4$ , filtered and evaporated. Reverse phase HPLC provided the nitrile product (65mg, 55%). MS 546.4 (M+H) $^+$ .

**Part B. 3-Amino-N-[1-(3-fluoro-2'-methanesulfonyl-biphenyl-4-yl)-2-oxo-piperidin-3-yl]-benzo[d]isoxazole-5-sulfonamide:** A solution of acetoxhydroxamic acid (54mg,

0.715mmol) in 10 ml DMF was treated with potassium carbonate (132mg, 0.95mmol) and water (3ml). This mixture was stirred for 15 min. followed by addition of a solution of the compound of Ex. 58, Part A (65mg, 0.119mmol) in 5 ml DMF. The whole was stirred at room temperature for 3 days. Reaction was diluted with ethyl acetate, washed with water and brine, dried over anhydrous  $\text{MgSO}_4$ , filtered and evaporated. Purification by reverse phase HPLC provided the title compound (18mg, 27%) after lyophilization.  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CD}_3\text{OD}$ )  $\delta$  8.40 (1H, s), 8.14 (2H, m), 7.63 (2H, m), 7.52 (1H, m), 7.38 (1H, m), 7.25 (3H, m), 4.07 (1H, m), 3.67 (2H, m), 2.76 (3H, s), 2.30 (1H, m), 1.95 (1H, m). MS 559.3 ( $\text{M}+\text{H}$ ) $^+$ .

#### Example 58a

##### **3-(3-Amino-benzo[d]isoxazol-5-ylamino)-1-(3-fluoro-2'-methanesulfonyl-biphenyl-4-yl)-piperidin-2-one**

A mixture of the compound of Ex. 8, Part C (0.372 g, 1.03mmol), 3-cyano-4-fluorobenzeneboronic acid (0.848 g, 5.15mmol), copper(II)acetate (0.372 g, 2.06mmol), triethylamine (0.286 ml, 2.06mmol), pyridine (0.166ml, 2.06mmol) and 4Å molecular sieves in methylene chloride (15ml) was stirred for 0.5h at room temperature. The mixture was then filtered through a page of silica gel which was eluted with EtOAc. The filtrate was evaporated and the residue purified by column chromatography (silica gel, 0-25% EtOAc in Hexane) to give the product as an oil (0.268 g, 54%). A portion of this product (50 mg, 0.104mmol) was heated neat with an excess of di-*t*-butyldicarbonate to 100°C. After cooling to room temperature the BOC-protected amine was isolated in 30% yield (18 mg) after chromatography on silica gel (ethyl acetate/hexane 50-50 to 75-25). This material was added to a mixture of acetoxyhydroxamic acid (6 mg, 2.5 eq) and

potassium carbonate (21 mg, 5eq) in DMF/H<sub>2</sub>O (3:1, 2ml) which had been pre-stirred for 20 min. The whole was then stirred overnight at room temperature. Reaction mixture was diluted with water and extracted with ethyl acetate. Combined organics were washed with brine, dried over MgSO<sub>4</sub>, filtered and concentrated in vacuo.

Purification by column chromatography (silica gel, 75% EtOAc-hexane to 100% EtOAc) provided the aminobenzisoxazole product (13 mg, 71% yield).

Deprotection by stirring in a 1:1 mixture of methylene chloride and trifluoroacetic acid at room temperature for 30 min followed by removal of solvent and reverse phase HPLC provided the title compound as a white powder after lyophilization. (7.8 mg). <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ 8.12 (1H,d,J=8Hz), 7.77 (2H,t,J=8Hz), 7.71 (1H,t,J=7Hz), 7.46 (2H,m), 7.45 (1H,d,J=11Hz), 7.29 (1H,d,J=8Hz), 7.20 (1H,d,J=11Hz), 7.04 (1H,d,J=8Hz), 6.98 (1H,s), 4.15 (1H,m), 3.74 (2H,m), 2.91 (3H,s), 2.38 (1H,m), 2.10 (2H,m), 1.88 (1H,m). MS(ESI+) 495.4 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>.

#### Example 58b

#### **2-Fluoro-5-[1-(3-fluoro-2'-methanesulfonyl-biphenyl-4-yl)-2-oxo-piperidin-3-ylamino]-N-hydroxy-benzamidine**

A mixture of acetoxyhydroamic acid (27mg, 2.5eq) and K<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub> (98mg, 5eq) in DMF/H<sub>2</sub>O (3:1, 4ml) was stirred at room temperature for 20min. To this mixture was added 2-fluoro-5-[1-(3-fluoro-2'-methanesulfonyl-biphenyl-4-yl)-2-oxo-piperidin-3-ylamino]-benzonitrile (68mg, 0.141mmol) prepared as described under Ex. 58a above. The whole was stirred and heated at 110°C for 18h. The mixture was diluted with water and extracted 3X with EtOAc. The combined organic extracts were washed with brine, dried over MgSO<sub>4</sub>, filtered and evaporated. Purification by

reverse phase HPLC yielded the title compound (50mg, 72%)  
<sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ 8.11 (1H,d,J=8Hz), 7.79 (1H,t,J=7,3Hz),  
 7.71 (1H,t,J=7,73Hz), 7.46 (2H,m), 7.37 (1H,d,J=11Hz),  
 7.28 (1H,d,J=8Hz), 7.18 (1H,t,J=9.5Hz), 6.98 (1H,m), 6.85  
 5 (1H,m), 4.29 (1H,m), 3.72 (2H,t,J=6.2Hz), 2.91 (3H,s),  
 2.28 (1H,m), 2.08 (2H,m), 1.84 (1H,m). MS 515.3 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>.

### Example 58c

10 **1-(3-Fluoro-2'-methanesulfonyl-biphenyl-4-yl)-3-[3-(5-  
 oxo-4,5-dihydro-1H-[1,2,4]triazol-3-yl)-phenylamino]-  
 piperidin-2-one**

A sample of 3-[1-(3-fluoro-2'-methanesulfonyl-biphenyl-4-yl)-2-oxo-piperidin-3-ylamino]-benzonitrile, prepared  
 15 from the compound of Ex. 1, part A and 3-cyanoaniline according to the procedure of Ex. 1, Part B, was  
 suspended in a 2:1 mixture of anhydrous MeOH and chloroform and cooled in a 0°C ice-bath. HCl gas was  
 then bubbled in the mixture for 30 minutes resulting in a  
 20 clear solution. The reaction vessel was sealed and stored at 0°C for 18 hours. The mixture was concentrated  
 in vacuo and dried. The resulting residue was suspended in 1,4-dioxane. Semicarbazide hydrochloride (1.7 eq) was  
 then added, followed by N-methylmorpholine (7.2 eq). The  
 25 mixture was refluxed for 48 hours. The precipitate was filtered and washed with 1,4-dioxane, water, and ether.  
 The solid was pumped dry to afford the title compound. <sup>1</sup>H  
 NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>, 300 MHz) δ 11.87 (s, 1H), 11.56 (s, 1H),  
 8.11(d, J= 8.1 Hz, 1H), 7.75 (m, 2H), 7.47 (m, 2H), 7.37  
 30 (d, J=11.0 Hz, 1H), 7.29 (d, J=7.9Hz, 1H), 7.15 (t, J=7.9  
 Hz, 1H), 7.08 (br m, 1H), 6.96 (d, J= 7.3Hz, 1H), 6.78  
 (br d, J= 9.5 Hz, 1H), 4.28 (m, 1H), 3.73 (t, J=6.2 Hz,  
 2H), 2.90 (s, 3H), 2.30 (m, 1H), 2.10 (m, 2H), 1.90 (m,  
 1H); MS ESI (M+H) 522.4.

**Example 58d**

**N-[1-(3-Fluoro-2'-methanesulfonyl-biphenyl-4-yl)-2-oxo-piperidin-3-yl]-3-(5-oxo-4,5-dihydro-1H-[1,2,4]triazol-3-yl)-benzenesulfonamide**

This compound was similarly prepared from the compound of Ex 1 using the procedure of Ex. 58c. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>, 300 MHz) δ 11.98 (s, 1H), 11.68 (s, 1H), 8.11 (d, J=7.7 Hz, 1H), 7.70 (m, 2H), 7.45 (t, J=7.9Hz, 1H), 7.30 (m, 6H), 7.20 (m, 1H), 5.10 (m, 1H), 3.65 (m, 2H), 2.84 (s, 3H), 2.30 (m, 1H), 2.05 (m, 3H); MS ESI (M+H) 523.4.

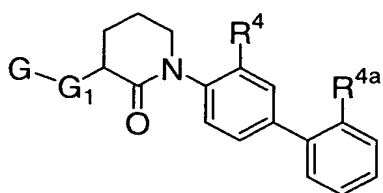
**Example 58f**

**1-(3-Fluoro-2'-methanesulfonyl-biphenyl-4-yl)-3-[3-(5-oxo-4,5-dihydro-1H-[1,2,4]triazol-3-yl)-phenoxy]-piperidin-2-one**

This compound was prepared 1-(3-Fluoro-2'-methanesulfonyl-biphenyl-4-yl)-3-[3-cyanophenoxy]-piperidin-2-one as described for the preparation of Ex. 58c. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>, 300 MHz) δ 11.87 (s, 1H), 11.56 (s, 1H), 8.11(d, J= 8.1 Hz, 1H), 7.75 (m, 2H), 7.47 (m, 2H), 7.37 (d, J=11.0 Hz, 1H), 7.29 (d, J=7.9Hz, 1H), 7.15 (t, J=7.9 Hz, 1H), 7.08 (br m, 1H), 6.96 (d, J= 7.3Hz, 1H), 6.78 (br d, J= 9.5 Hz, 1H), 4.28 (m, 1H), 3.73 (t, J=6.2 Hz, 2H), 2.90 (s, 3H), 2.30 (m, 1H), 2.10 (m, 2H), 1.90 (m, 1H); MS ESI (M+H) 522.4.

Table 1 below provides representative Examples, the synthesis of which is described above, of the compounds of Formula (I) of the present invention.

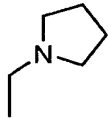
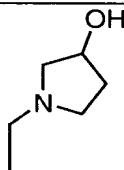
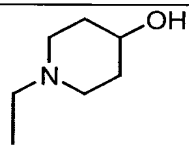
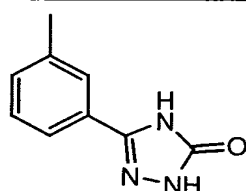
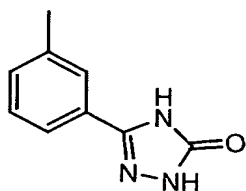
Table 1

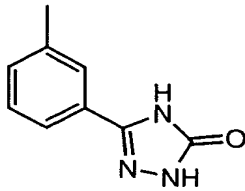
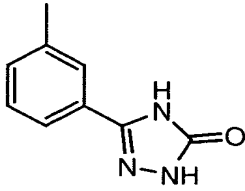


Ex. #	G	G <sub>1</sub>	R <sup>4</sup>	R <sup>4a</sup>	MS (M+H) <sup>+</sup>
1	3-CN-phenyl	O	F	-SO <sub>2</sub> Me	465.5
2	3-amidino-phenyl	O	F	-SO <sub>2</sub> Me	482.3
3	4-amidino-phenyl	O	F	-SO <sub>2</sub> Me	482.5
4	3-CN-phenyl	O	F	-CH <sub>2</sub> N(Me) <sub>2</sub>	427.2
5	3-amidino-phenyl	O	F	-CH <sub>2</sub> N(Me) <sub>2</sub>	461.55
6	3-amidino-phenyl	O	H	-CH <sub>2</sub> N(Me) <sub>2</sub>	442.5
7	3-amidino-phenyl	NH	F	-CH <sub>2</sub> N(Me) <sub>2</sub>	460.6
8	2,4-diCl-phenyl	CONH	F	-SO <sub>2</sub> Me	536.4
9	3-Cl-phenyl	CONH	F	-SO <sub>2</sub> Me	501.9
10	3,4-diCl-phenyl	CONH	F	-SO <sub>2</sub> Me	536.4
11	4-F-phenyl	CONH	F	-SO <sub>2</sub> Me	485.4
12	4-Cl-phenyl	CONH	F	-SO <sub>2</sub> Me	501.9
12a	4-MeO-phenyl	CONH	F	-SO <sub>2</sub> Me	497.1
12b	3-MeO-phenyl	CONH	F	-SO <sub>2</sub> Me	497.1
13	2-Cl-4-pyridyl	CONH	F	-SO <sub>2</sub> Me	502.9
14	6-Cl-3-pyridyl	CONH	F	-SO <sub>2</sub> Me	502.9
15	6-(1H-pyrazol-1-yl)-3-pyridyl	CONH	F	-SO <sub>2</sub> Me	534.6
16	2-Cl-3-pyridyl	C(O)O	F	-SO <sub>2</sub> Me	503.9
17	4-MeO-phenyl	C(O)O	F	-SO <sub>2</sub> Me	498.5
18	4-MeO-2-CHO-phenyl	O	F	-SO <sub>2</sub> Me	498.5
19	5-Cl-2-pyridyl	NH	F	-SO <sub>2</sub> Me	381.6
20	4-MeO-phenyl	O	F	-SO <sub>2</sub> Me	470.5
20a	4-MeO-phenyl	NH	F	-SO <sub>2</sub> Me	469.3
21	4-MeO-2-(methoxy	O	F	-SO <sub>2</sub> Me	528.5



	carbonyl)-phenyl				
<b>22</b>	3-aminomethyl-phenyl	O	F	-SO <sub>2</sub> Me	469.5
<b>23</b>	4-MeO-2-anilinomethyl-phenyl	O	F	-SO <sub>2</sub> Me	517.5
<b>23a</b>	4-MeO-2-(4-pyridyl-aminocarbonyl)-phenyl	O	H	-SO <sub>2</sub> Me	590.6
<b>24</b>	3-Cl-phenyl	CONMe	F	-SO <sub>2</sub> Me	501.9
<b>25</b>	4-Cl-phenyl	CONBn	F	-SO <sub>2</sub> Me	592.2
<b>26</b>	1H-5-indolyl	CONH	F	-SMe	474.6
<b>26a</b>	5-benzimidazolyl	CONH	F	-SMe	475.5
<b>27</b>	1H-pyrazol-4-yl	CONH	F	-SMe	423.4
<b>28</b>	4-pyridyl	CONH	F	-SMe	436.4
<b>29</b>	3-pyridyl	CONH	F	-SMe	436.4
<b>29a</b>	3-pyridyl	CONH	F	-SO <sub>2</sub> Me	468.5
<b>30</b>	6-amino-3-pyridyl	CONH	F	-SMe	451.4
<b>31</b>	4-Cl-phenyl	CH <sub>2</sub> NH	F	-SMe	455.9
<b>32</b>	3-amidino-phenyl	SO <sub>2</sub> NH	H	-SO <sub>2</sub> NH <sub>2</sub>	528.2
<b>33</b>	3-amidino-phenyl	SO <sub>2</sub> NBn	H	-SO <sub>2</sub> NH <sub>2</sub>	618.2
<b>34</b>	4-Cl-phenyl	SO <sub>2</sub> NH	F	-SO <sub>2</sub> Me	537.1
<b>35</b>	6-Cl-naphthyl	SO <sub>2</sub> NH	F	-SO <sub>2</sub> Me	587.3
<b>36</b>	7-Cl-naphthyl	SO <sub>2</sub> NH	F	-SO <sub>2</sub> Me	587.3
<b>37</b>	5-Cl-2-thienyl	SO <sub>2</sub> NH	F	-SO <sub>2</sub> Me	543.0
<b>38</b>	5-(3-isoxazolyl)-2-thienyl	SO <sub>2</sub> NH	F	-SO <sub>2</sub> Me	576.3
<b>39</b>	4-F-phenyl	SO <sub>2</sub> NH	F	-SO <sub>2</sub> Me	521.3
<b>40</b>	4-MeO-phenyl	SO <sub>2</sub> NH	F	-SO <sub>2</sub> Me	533.1
<b>41</b>	4-Et-phenyl	SO <sub>2</sub> NH	F	-SO <sub>2</sub> Me	531.2
<b>42</b>	3-MeO-phenyl	SO <sub>2</sub> NH	F	-SO <sub>2</sub> Me	533.3
<b>43</b>	5-Br-6-Cl-3-pyridyl	SO <sub>2</sub> NH	F	-SO <sub>2</sub> Me	616.2/ 618.2
<b>44</b>	5-(2-pyridyl)-2-thienyl	SO <sub>2</sub> NH	F	-SO <sub>2</sub> Me	586.3
<b>45</b>	3,4-diF-phenyl	SO <sub>2</sub> NH	F	-SO <sub>2</sub> Me	539.1
<b>46</b>	3-Cl-phenyl	SO <sub>2</sub> NH	F	-SO <sub>2</sub> Me	537.1

47	3,5-diCl-2-thienyl	SO <sub>2</sub> NH	F	-SO <sub>2</sub> Me	577.0
48	4-CN-phenyl	SO <sub>2</sub> NH	F	-SO <sub>2</sub> Me	528.2
49	3-Cl-4-F-phenyl	SO <sub>2</sub> NH	F	-SO <sub>2</sub> Me	555.2
50	1-Me-4-imidazolyl	SO <sub>2</sub> NH	F	-SO <sub>2</sub> Me	507.1
51	2,5-diCl-phenyl	SO <sub>2</sub> NH	F	-SO <sub>2</sub> Me	571.1
52	3,5-diCl-phenyl	SO <sub>2</sub> NH	F	-SO <sub>2</sub> Me	571.0
53	5-Cl-2-thienyl	SO <sub>2</sub> NH	H	-CH <sub>2</sub> N(Et) <sub>2</sub>	532.4
54	5-Cl-2-thienyl	SO <sub>2</sub> NH	H		530.4
55	5-Cl-2-thienyl	SO <sub>2</sub> NH	H		546.4
56	5-Cl-2-thienyl	SO <sub>2</sub> NH	H		560.4
57	5-Cl-2-thienyl	SO <sub>2</sub> NH	H	-CH <sub>2</sub> N(Me)-CH <sub>2</sub> CH <sub>2</sub> OH	534.4
58	3-amino-benzisoxazol-5-yl	SO <sub>2</sub> NH	F	-SO <sub>2</sub> Me	559.3
58a	3-aminobenzisoxazol-5-yl	NH	F	SO <sub>2</sub> Me	495.4
58b	4-F-3-(N-hydroxy-amidino)-phenyl	NH	F	-SO <sub>2</sub> Me	515.3
58c		NH	F	-SO <sub>2</sub> Me	522.4
58d		SO <sub>2</sub> NH	F	-SO <sub>2</sub> Me	586.4

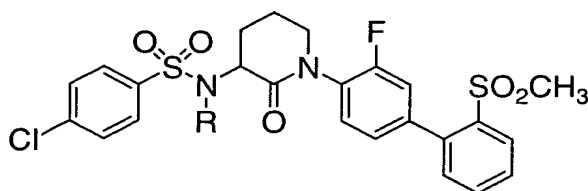
<b>58e</b>		CONH	F	-SO <sub>2</sub> Me	
<b>58f</b>		O	F	-SO <sub>2</sub> Me	523.4
<b>101</b>	phenyl	SO <sub>2</sub> NH	F	-SO <sub>2</sub> Me	503.4
<b>102</b>	3-pyridyl	SO <sub>2</sub> NH	F	-SO <sub>2</sub> Me	504.3
<b>103</b>	5-Cl-3-Me-2-thienyl	SO <sub>2</sub> NH	F	-SO <sub>2</sub> Me	607.3
<b>104</b>	3-quinolinyl	SO <sub>2</sub> NH	F	-SO <sub>2</sub> Me	554.4
<b>105</b>	6-quinolinyl	SO <sub>2</sub> NH	F	-SO <sub>2</sub> Me	554.4
<b>106</b>	6-quinoxaliny	SO <sub>2</sub> NH	F	-SO <sub>2</sub> Me	555.3
<b>107</b>	6-amino-3-pyridyl	SO <sub>2</sub> NH	F	-SO <sub>2</sub> Me	519.4
<b>108</b>	6-indazolyl	SO <sub>2</sub> NH	F	-SO <sub>2</sub> Me	543.4

**Examples 59-63** were prepared from Ex. 34 by alkylation

with the indicated alkylhalide in the presence of

5 potassium carbonate in DMF as solvent using the procedure described for the synthesis of the compound of Ex. 33, Part A.

**Table 2**



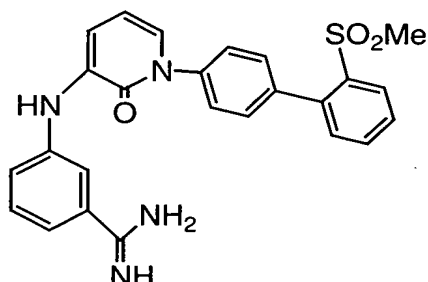
10

<b>Ex. No.</b>	<b>Alkylhalide</b>	<b>R</b>	<b>MS (M+H)<sup>+</sup></b>
<b>59</b>	Benzylbromide	Benzyl	627.4

60	Methyl iodide	Methyl	551.3
61	Ethyl iodide	Ethyl	565.4
62	2-picolychloride·HCl	2-pyridylmethyl	628.4
63	3-picolychloride·HCl	3-pyridylmethyl	628.4

**Example 64**

3-[[1,2-dihydro-1-[2'-(methylsulfonyl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]-2-oxo-3-pyridinyl]amino]-benzenecarboximidamide

**Part A. 1-(4-Bromophenyl)-3-nitro-)-3-2(1H)-pyridinone:**

3-Nitro-2-hydroxypyridine (1.00 g, 7.12 mmol), 4-bromophenylboronic acid (2.86 g, 14.24 mmol), copper acetate (2.58 g, 14.24 mmol), triethylamine (2 mL, 14.24 mmol), and pyridine (1.16 mL, 14.24 mmol) were added together with 50 mL of CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>. The mixture was stirred at RT with a drying tube for 36h. The mixture was filtered through Celite® and washed with CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>. The filtrate was concentrated and chromatographed with 50% EtOAc in hexane to give 1.62 g of the desired product. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 8.40-8.37 (d, J=7.7 Hz, 1H), 7.70-7.69 (d, J=1.3 Hz, 1H), 7.68-7.65 (d, J=8.8 Hz, 2H), 7.30-7.26 (d, J=8.8 Hz, 2H), 6.44-6.39 (t, 1H). MS (AP<sup>+</sup>): 296.9, (M+H)<sup>+</sup>.

**Part B. 1-[2'-(Methylthio)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]-3-nitro-2(1H)-pyridinone:** The compound of Ex. 64, Part A (1.62 g, 5.49 mmol), 2-methylthiophenylboronic acid (1.38 g, 8.24 mmol), potassium phosphate (4.66 g, 21.96 mmol), and tetrakis(triphenyl-phosphine)palladium (0.32 g, 5% mmol)

were added together with 100 mL of dioxane. The mixture was degassed and then refluxed for 5.5 h under N<sub>2</sub>. After cooling to RT, it was filtered through Celite®, washed with EtOAc and CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>, concentrated, and chromatographed with CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> to give 1.95 g of the desired product. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 8.42-8.39 (d, J=7.7 Hz, 1H), 7.84-7.81 (d, J=6.9 Hz, 1H), 7.61-7.58 (d, J=8.3 Hz, 2H), 7.447-7.43 (d, J=8.8 Hz, 2H), 7.39-7.23 (m, 4H), 6.44-6.39 (t, 1H), 2.40 (s, 1H); MS (AP<sup>+</sup>): 339.1, (M+H)<sup>+</sup>.

**Part C. 1-[2'-(Methylsulfonyl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]-3-nitro-2(1H)-pyridinone:** The compound of Ex. 64, Part B (1.95 g, 5.77 mmol) was dissolved in 50 mL CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> and then cooled to 0°C. m-CPBA (4.65 g with 60% purity, 16.16 mmol) was added. The mixture was stirred at 0°C and then warmed up to RT overnight under N<sub>2</sub>. The reaction was quenched with saturated Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>3</sub>. The organic layer was washed with saturated NaHCO<sub>3</sub> and brine, dried over Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>, and concentrated to give 2.15 g of the crude product as a yellow solid. MS (AP<sup>+</sup>): 371.0, (M+H)<sup>+</sup>.

**Part D. 3-Amino-1-[2'-(methylsulfonyl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]-2(1H)-pyridinone:** To a suspension of the compound of Ex. 64, Part C (2.15 g, 5.81 mmol) in EtOAc (100 mL) was added tin chloride (10.22, 46.4 mmol). The mixture was refluxed for 1.5 h under N<sub>2</sub>. EtOH (100 mL) was added and the mixture was refluxed for another 1.5 h. The mixture was cooled to RT and water was added. The mixture was filtered through Celite®, washed with 1:5 EtOH/CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>, and concentrated, and chromatographed with 50% EtOAc in CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> to give 0.63 g of the desired product. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 8.27-8.24 (d, J=8.1 Hz, 1H), 7.72-7.66 (m, 1H), 7.63-7.57 (m, 3H), 7.53-7.50 (d, J=7.8 Hz, 2H), 7.44-7.41 (d, J=7.7 Hz, 1H), 6.91-6.88 (d, J=6.9 Hz, 1H), 6.64-6.61

(d, J=7.0 Hz, 1H), 6.23-6.18 (t, 1H), 2.73 (s, 3H); MS (ES<sup>+</sup>): 341.3, (M+H)<sup>+</sup>, 363.3, (M+Na)<sup>+</sup>.

**Part E. 3-[[1,2-dihydro-1-[2'-(methylsulfonyl)-[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]-2-oxo-3-pyridinyl]amino]-benzonitrile:**

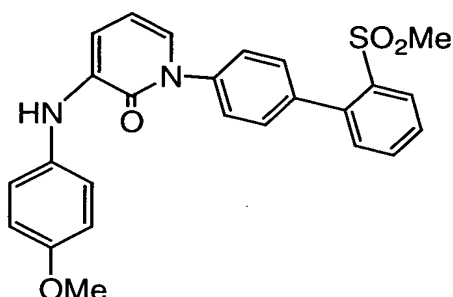
5 The compound of Ex. 64, Part D (100 mg, 0.294 mmol), 3-cyanophenylboronic acid (86 mg, 0.588 mmol), pyridine (0.04 mL, 0.647 mmol), triethylamine (0.09 mL, 0.647 mmol), copper acetate (106 mg, 0.588 mmol), and 4Å molecular sieves were added together with CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (20 mL) in a round-bottom flask equipped with a drying tube. The mixture was stirred at RT overnight, filtered through Celite®, washed with CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>, concentrated, and chromatographed with 2:3 EtOAc/CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> to give 0.14 g of the desired product. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>): δ 8.27-8.24 (d, J=8.0 Hz, 1H), 7.71-7.51 (m, 6H), 7.43-7.27 (m, 5H), 7.22-7.19 (d, J=7.4 Hz, 1H), 7.06-7.7.03 (d, J=7.0 Hz, 1H), 6.38-6.36 (t, 1H), 2.74 (s, 1H); MS (ES<sup>+</sup>): 442.4, (M+H)<sup>+</sup>, 464.2, (M+Na)<sup>+</sup>.

**Part F. 3-[[1,2-dihydro-1-[2'-(methylsulfonyl)-[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]-2-oxo-3-pyridinyl]amino]-benzene-carboximidamide:** A solution of the compound of Ex. 64, Part E (0.14 g) in 6 mL of CHCl<sub>3</sub> and 4 mL of MeOH was cooled at 0°C with a ice bath, HCl gas was bubbled in for 15 minutes. The reaction mixture was sealed and put in a refrigerator over the weekend. The solvent was removed and the residue was dried under vacuum to give 0.12 g of a yellow solid. This solid was dissolved in 8 mL of MeOH. Ammonium acetate (147 mg, 19.02 mmol) was added. The mixture was sealed and stirred at RT overnight. The solvent was removed and the residue was purified by HPLC (C18 reverse phase) with 5% TFA in acetonitrile/water to give 52 mg of the benzamidine TFA salt. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CD<sub>3</sub>OD) δ 8.25-8.21 (d, 1H), 7.83-7.74 (t, 1H), 7.72-7.55 (m, 9H),

7.50-7.47 (d, 1H), 7.38-7.33 (d, 1H), 6.59-6.46 (t, 1H),  
2.86 (s, 3H); MS (ES<sup>+</sup>): 459.2, (M+H)<sup>+</sup>; HPLC purity 97%.

### Example 65

5     **3-[(4-Methoxyphenyl)amino]-1-[2'-(methylsulfonyl)[1,1'-  
biphenyl]-4-yl]-2(1H)-pyridinone**

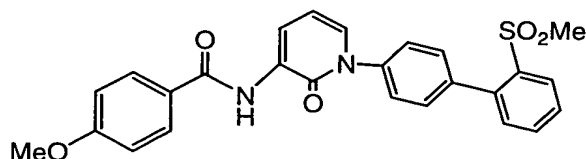


The compound of Ex. 64, Part D (100 mg, 0.294 mmol),  
4-methoxyphenylboronic acid (89 mg, 0.588 mmol), pyridine  
10 (0.04 mL, 0.647 mmol), triethylamine (0.09 mL, 0.647  
mmol), copper acetate (106 mg, 0.588 mmol), and 4Å  
molecular sieves were added together with CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (20 mL).  
The mixture was stirred at RT with a drying tube  
overnight. It was filtered through Celite®, washed with  
15 CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>, concentrated, and chromatographed with 1:3  
EtOAc/CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> to give 40 mg of the title compound with some  
impurities. It was further purified by HPLC in 3:10  
EtOAc/CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> to give 15 mg of the pure title compound as a  
brownish solid. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CD<sub>3</sub>Cl) δ 8.27-8.25 (d, J=8.1 Hz,  
20 1H), 7.72-7.53 (m, 6H), 7.45-7.43 (d, J=7.3 Hz, 1H),  
7.19-7.16 (d, J=8.8, 2H), 6.94-6.84 (m, 4H), 6.27-6.22  
(t, 1H), 3.83 (s, 3H), 2.73 (s, 3H); MS (ES<sup>+</sup>): 447.4,  
(M+H)<sup>+</sup>.

25

### Example 66

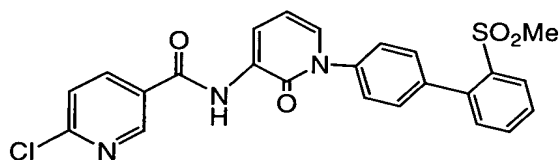
**N-[1,2-dihydro-1-[2'-(methylsulfonyl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-  
yl]-2-oxo-3-pyridinyl]-4-methoxy-benzamide**



The compound of Ex. 64, Part D (50.0 mg, 0.147 mmol), 4-anisoyl chloride (38.0 mg, 0.221 mmol), and DMAP (45.0 mg, 0.368 mmol) were added together with 6 mL of CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>. The mixture was stirred at RT overnight under N<sub>2</sub>. It was concentrated, and chromatographed with 2:3 EtOAc/Hex to give 37 mg of the title compound as a white solid. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 9.24 (s, 1H), 8.66-8.63 (d, J=7.3 Hz, 1H), 8.28-8.25 (d, J=8.1 Hz, 1H), 7.93-7.90 (d, J=8.8 Hz, 2H), 7.73-7.59 (m, 4H), 7.55-7.52 (d, J=8.4 Hz, 2H), 7.44-7.41 (d, J=7.3 Hz, 1H), 7.22-7.19 (d, J=7.0 Hz, 1H), 6.99-6.96 (d, J=9.2 Hz, 2H), 6.48-6.43 (m, 1H), 3.87 (s, 3H), 2.74 (s, 3H); MS (ES<sup>+</sup>): 475.3, (M+H)<sup>+</sup>, 497.3, (M+Na)<sup>+</sup>.

#### Example 67

**6-chloro-N-[1,2-dihydro-1-[2'-(methylsulfonyl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]-2-oxo-3-pyridinyl]-3-pyridinecarboxamide**



The compound of Ex. 64, Part D (50.0 mg, 0.147 mmol), 2-chloropyridine-5-carbonyl chloride (39.0 mg, 0.221 mmol), and DMAP (45.0 mg, 0.368mmol) were added together with 6 mL of CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>. The mixture was stirred at RT overnight under N<sub>2</sub>. It was concentrated, and chromatographed with 2:3 EtOAc/Hexane to give 20 mg of the title compound as a white solid. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CD<sub>3</sub>Cl) δ 9.27 (s, 1H), 8.95 (s, 1H), 8.64-8.61 (d, J=7.3 Hz, 1H), 8.28-8.25 (d, J=7.7 Hz, 1H), 8.21-8.17 (d, J=8.4 Hz, 1H),

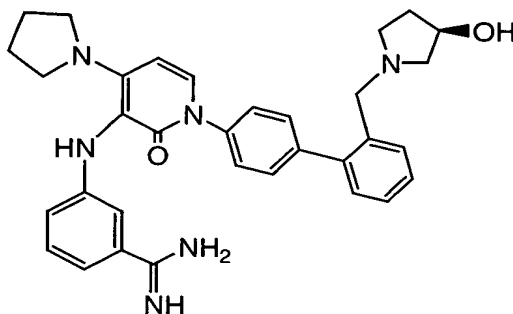


7.71-7.60 (m, 4H), 7.55-7.41 (m, 4H), 7.29-7.26 (m, 1H), 6.50-6.45 (t, 1H), 2.75 (s, 1H); MS (ES<sup>+</sup>): 480.3, (M+H)<sup>+</sup>, 502.3, (M+Na)<sup>+</sup>.

5

**Example 68**

**3-[[[1,2-dihydro-1-[2'-[(3-hydroxy-1-pyrrolidinyl)methyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]-2-oxo-4-(1-pyrrolidinyl)-3-pyridinyl]amino]-benzenecarboximidamide**



10 **Part A. 4-chloro-3-nitro-2(1H)-pyridinone:** To a solution of 2,4-dihydroxy-3-nitropyridine (5.00 g, 32.03 mmol) and benzyltriethylammonium chloride (29.18 g, 128.12 mmol) in 100 mL of CH<sub>3</sub>CN was added dropwise phosphorus oxychloride (11.9 mL, 128.12 mmol). The mixture was heated at 60°C  
15 for 1h and refluxed for 1h. The solvent was removed and 150 mL of iced water was added. The resulting mixture was stirred at 0°C for 1.2h. The precipitate was filtered and dried to give 4.48g of yellow solid as the desired product. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ 7.79-7.76 (d, 1H),  
20 6.61-6.59 (d, 1H); MS (AP<sup>+</sup>): 216.0, (M+CH<sub>3</sub>CN+H)<sup>+</sup>.

**Part B: 3-nitro-4-(1-pyrrolidinyl)-2(1H)-pyridinone:** The compound of Ex. 68, Part A (0.50 g, 2.86 mmol) and pyrrolidine (0.72 mL, 8.58 mmol) were added together with 30 mL of ethanol. The mixture was refluxed under N<sub>2</sub> for  
25 15 minutes. The solvent was removed. The residue was added with CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> and washed with 1N aqueous HCl. The CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> solution was washed with brine, dried over MgSO<sub>4</sub>,

and concentrated to a yellow solid (0.52 g).  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3 + \text{MeOD}-d_4$ )  $\delta$  7.21 (d, 1H), 5.98 (d, 1H); 3.40 (m, 4H); 2.01 (m, 4H). MS ( $\text{AP}^+$ ): 210.1,  $(\text{M}+\text{H})^+$ .

**Part C: 1-(4-bromophenyl)-3-nitro-4-(1-pyrrolidinyl)-**

5 **2(1H)-pyridinone:** The compound of Ex. 68, Part B (0.52 g, 2.49 mmol), 4-bromophenylboronic acid (0.75 g, 3.74 mmol), copper acetate (0.92 g, 4.98 mmol), triethylamine (0.70 mL, 4.98 mmol), and pyridine (0.40 mL, 4.98 mmol) were added together with 20 mL of  $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2$ . Molecular  
10 sieves ( $4\text{\AA}$ ) were added. The mixture was equipped with a drying tube and stirred at RT for 36h. The mixture was filtered through Celite® and washed with  $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2$ . The filtrate was concentrated and chromatographed with  $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2$  and the EtOAc to give 0.80 g of the desired product.  $^1\text{H}$   
15 NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  7.53-7.48 (d, 2H), 7.22 (d, 4H), 7.18 (d, 1H), 5.91 (d, 1H), 4.20 (m, 4H), 2.00 (m, 4H). MS ( $\text{AP}^+$ ): 363, 365,  $(\text{M}+\text{H})^+$ .

**Part D: 3-amino-1-(4-bromophenyl)-4-(1-pyrrolidinyl)-**

**2(1H)-pyridinone:** To the compound of Ex. 68, Part C (0.55  
20 g, 1.52 mmol) in 30 mL of EtOAc was added  $\text{SnCl}_2$  (2.68 g). The mixture was refluxed for 1h under  $\text{N}_2$ . It was cooled to RT, filtered through Celite®, and washed with EtOAc. The organic layer washed with brine, dried with  $\text{Na}_2\text{SO}_4$ , and concentrated to give 0.57 g of the title compound as  
25 a yellowish solid.  $^1\text{H}$  NMR  $\delta$  7.53-7.48 (dd, 2H), 7.23-7.18 (dd, 2H), 6.75-6.72 (d, 1H), 6.02-6.99 (d, 1H), 3.39-3.34 (t, 4H), 1.94-1.84 (m, 4H).

**Part E: 3-([1-(4-bromophenyl)-2-oxo-4-(1-pyrrolidinyl)-**

**1,2-dihydro-3-pyridinyl]amino)benzonitrile:** The compound  
30 of Ex. 68, Part D (0.57 g, 1.70 mmol), 3-cyanophenylboronic acid (375 mg g, 2.55 mmol), pyridine (0.27 mL, 3.74 mmol), triethylamine (0.53mL, 3.74 mmol),

copper acetate (616 mg, 3.40 mmol), and 4 Å molecular sieves were added together with CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (20 mL). The mixture was stirred at RT with a drying tube for 1h. It was filtered through Celite®, washed with CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>,

5 concentrated, and chromatographed with CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> to give 1.00 g of a yellow solid as the desired product. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 7.58-7.53 (dd, 2H), 7.28-7.23 (dd, 2H), 7.20-7.18 (d, 1H), 7.12-7.09 (d, 1H), 7.02-7.70 (dd, 1H), 6.90-6.87 (dd, 1H), 6.75-6.73 (t, 1H), 6.07-6.04 (d, 1H),  
10 5.81 (s, 1H), 3.48-3.44 (t, 4H), 1.88-1.82 (m, 4H); MS (ES<sup>+</sup>): 435.3~437.3 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>.

**Part F: 3-{[1-(2'-formyl[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl)-2-oxo-4-(1-pyrrolidinyl)-1,2-dihydro-3-pyridinyl]amino}-**

**benzonitrile:** The compound of Ex. 68, Part E (0.12 g, 0.275 mmol), 2-formylphenylboronic acid (82 mg, 0.55 mmol), potassium phosphate (234 mg, 1.10 mmol), and tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium (31 mg, 10% mmol) were added together with 100 mL of dioxane. The mixture was degassed and then refluxed for 20 h under N<sub>2</sub>. After  
20 cooling to room temperature, the mixture was filtered through Celite®, washed with EtOAc and CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>, the filtrate was concentrated, and the residue chromatographed with CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> to give 0.11 g of the desired product. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 10.00 (s, 1H), 8.07-8.03 (dd, 1H), 7.70-7.65 (t, 1H), 7.63-7.40 (m, 8H), 7.7.30-7.24 (m, 1H), 7.15-7.13 (d, 1H), 7.08-7.05 (d, 1H), 6.69 (s, 1H), 6.37-6.35 (d, 1H), 3.62 (bs, 4H), 1.94-1.90 (bs, 4H); MS (ES<sup>+</sup>): 461.3, (M+H)<sup>+</sup>.

**Part G: 3-{[1-{2'-[(3-hydroxycyclopentyl)methyl] [1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl}-2-oxo-4-(1-pyrrolidinyl)-1,2-dihydro-3-pyridinyl]amino}benzonitrile:** To a solution of the compound of Ex. 68, Part F (0.11 g, 0.239 mmol) in 8 mL of 1,2-dichloroethane was added 3-(R)-pyrrolidinol (0.06

mL, 0.717 mmol). The mixture was stirred for 30 min under N<sub>2</sub>, then NaBH(OAc)<sub>3</sub> (101 mg, 0.478mmol) was added. The resulting mixture was stirred overnight under N<sub>2</sub>.

The solvent was removed and H<sub>2</sub>O was added. It was

5 extracted with EtOAc, dried over Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>, and concentrated to give 0.10 g of the desired product. MS (ES<sup>+</sup>): 532.4, (M+H)<sup>+</sup>.

**Part H: 3-[[1,2-dihydro-1-[2'-[(3-hydroxy-1-pyrrolidinyl)methyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]-2-oxo-4-(1-pyrrolidinyl)-3-pyridinyl]amino]-benzenecarboximidamide:**

A solution of the compound of Ex. 68, Part G (0.10 g) in MeOH was cooled at 0°C with an ice bath, and HCl gas was bubbled in for 15 minutes. The reaction mixture was sealed and put in a refrigerator over the weekend. The

15 solvent was removed and the residue was dried under vacuum to give 0.10 g of the intermediate. MS (ES<sup>+</sup>):

564.5, M+H. The resulting intermediate (50 mg, 0.12mmol) was dissolved in 8 mL of MeOH. Ammonium acetate (55 mg, 0.72 mmol) was added. The mixture was sealed and stirred

20 at RT overnight. The solvent was removed and the residue was purified by HPLC (C18 reverse phase) with 5% TFA in acetonitrile/water to give 52 mg of the benzamidine TFA salt. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CD<sub>3</sub>OD) δ 7.75-7.25 (bs, 1H, 7.58-7.39 (m,

9H), 7.37-7.26 (t, 1H), 7.03-6.97 (dd, 1H), 6.92-6.82

25 (bm, 2H), 6.38-6.30 (d, 1H), 4.59-4.33 (bs, 4H), 3.62-

3.50 (bs, 4H), 3.25-3.30 (bm, 1H), 3.30-2.80 (bm, 3H),

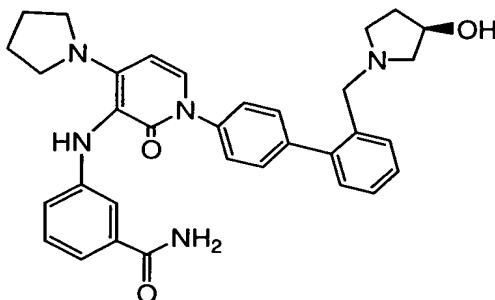
2.20-1.97 (bm, 1H), 1.86-1.78 (bs, 4H); MS (ES<sup>+</sup>): 549.5,

(M+H)<sup>+</sup>. HPLC purity >95%.

30

#### Example 69

**3-[[1,2-dihydro-1-[2'-[(3-hydroxy-1-pyrrolidinyl)methyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]-2-oxo-4-(1-pyrrolidinyl)-3-pyridinyl]amino]-benzamide**

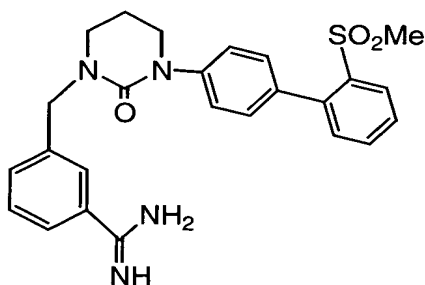


This compound was isolated as a by-product from Part H of Example 68.  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CD}_3\text{OD}$ )  $\delta$  7.75-7.63 (bs, 1H), 7.58-7.38 (m, 9H), 7.25-7.17 (t, 1H), 7.15-7.11 (d, 1H), 7.07-7.05 (s, 1H), 6.77-6.72 (d, 1H), 4.63-4.58 (bs, 1H), 4.46-4.42 (d, 1H), 4.41-4.33 (bs, 2H), 3.63-3.53 (bm, 4H), 3.25-3.30 (bm, 1H), 3.30-3.28 (bm, 3H), 2.20-1.97 (dm, 1H), 1.86-1.78 (bs, 4H); MS ( $\text{ES}^+$ ): 550.2, ( $\text{M}+\text{H}$ ) $^+$ . HPLC purity >95%.

10

### Example 70

#### 3-[3-(2'-Methanesulfonyl-biphenyl-4-yl)-2-oxo-tetrahydropyrimidin-1-ylmethyl]-benzamidine



**Part A: 1-(4-Bromophenyl)-tetrahydropyrimidin-2-one:** 4-Bromophenylisocyanate (5.00 g, 25.3 mmol), and 3-bromopropylamine hydrobromide (5.53 g, 25.3 mmol) were mixed together with 200 mL of  $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2$ . Triethylamine (3.5 mL, 25.3 mmol) was added. The mixture was stirred at RT under  $\text{N}_2$  for 2 h. The solvent was removed, the resulting solid was washed with water and dried (8.0 g). The solid was refluxed in benzene (200 mL) and 50% aqueous NaOH (50

mL) for 2 h. The reaction mixture was cooled, diluted with EtOAc, and was then washed with water and brine, dried over  $\text{MgSO}_4$  and concentrated to a white solid (6.50 g).  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  7.46 (d, 2), 7.18 (d, 2), 4.92 (bs, 1H), 3.68 (t, 2H), 3.42 (m, 2H), 2.09 (m, 2H). MS ( $\text{AP}^+$ ): 254.9, 256.9, ( $\text{M}+\text{H}$ ) $^+$ .

**Part B: 3-[3-(4-Bromophenyl)-2-oxo-tetrahydropyrimidin-1-ylmethyl]-benzonitrile:**

The compound from Ex. 70, Part A (0.52 g, 2.04 mmol) was dissolved in 6 mL of DMF. NaH (98 mg of 60% dispersion) was added. The mixture was stirred at room temperature under  $\text{N}_2$  for 1/2 h and  $\alpha$ -bromo-*m*-tolunitrile (0.42 g, 2.14 mmol) was added. The resulting mixture was stirred at RT for 12 h. The reaction mixture was poured into water and extracted with EtOAc. The organic mixture was washed with water and brine, dried over  $\text{MgSO}_4$ , concentrated, and purified by chromatography on silica gel eluted with EtOAc/hexane (1:3) to give 0.37 g of the desired product.  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  7.59 (m, 3), 7.43 (m, 3H), 7.19 (d, 2), 4.62 (s, 2H), 3.71 (t, 2H), 3.32 (t, 2H), 2.10 (m, 2H). MS ( $\text{AP}^+$ ): 372.0, ( $\text{M}+\text{H}$ ) $^+$ .

**Part C: 3-[3-(2'-Methylthio-biphenyl-4-yl)-2-oxo-tetrahydro-pyrimidin-1-ylmethyl]-benzonitrile:**

The compound of Ex. 70, Part B (0.37 g, 1.0 mmol), 2-methylthiophenylboronic acid (0.34 g, 2.0 mmol),  $\text{K}_3\text{PO}_4$  (0.85 g, 4.0 mmol), tetrakis-(triphenylphosphine) palladium (0) 57 mg, and dioxane (16 mL) were refluxed under  $\text{N}_2$  for 12 h. The reaction mixture was cooled and diluted with EtOAc. It was washed with water and brine, dried over  $\text{MgSO}_4$ , concentrated, and purified by chromatography on silica gel eluted with EtOAc/hexane (2:3) to give 0.34 g of the desired product.  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  7.60 (m, 3), 7.49-7.18 (m, 9H), 4.62 (s, 2H),

3.80 (t, 2H), 3.37 (t, 2H), 2.38 (s, 3H), 2.05 (m, 2H).  
MS (ES<sup>+</sup>): 414.4, (M+H)<sup>+</sup>.

**Part D: 3-[3-(2'-Methylsulfonyl-biphenyl-4-yl)-2-oxo-tetrahydro-pyrimidin-1-ylmethyl]-benzonitrile:** The

5 compound of Ex. 70, Part C (0.31 g, 0.75 mmol) was dissolved in CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (16 mL). The mixture was cooled at 0°C and m-CPBA (0.52 g of 70%) was added. The mixture was stirred at RT under N<sub>2</sub> for 12 h. The reaction was quenched with aqueous Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>3</sub>, diluted with CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>. It was  
10 washed with saturated aqueous NaHCO<sub>3</sub> and brine, dried over MgSO<sub>4</sub>, concentrated, and purified by chromatography on silica gel eluted with EtOAc/hexane (2:3) to give 0.11 g of the desired product. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 8.24 (d, 1H), 7.60 (m, 5), 7.0 (m, 6H), 4.65 (s, 2H), 3.82 (t, 2H),  
15 3.39 (t, 2H), 2.67 (s, 3H), 2.15 (m, 2H). MS (ES<sup>+</sup>): 446.4, (M+H)<sup>+</sup>.

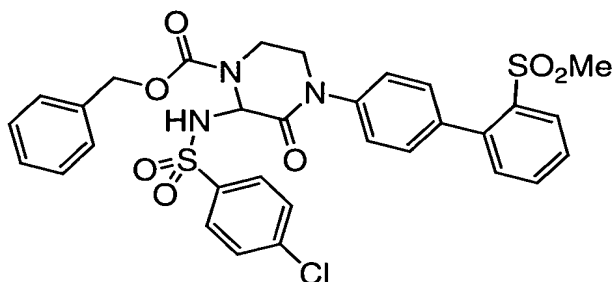
**Part E: 3-[3-(2'-Methylsulfonyl-biphenyl-4-yl)-2-oxo-tetrahydro-pyrimidin-1-ylmethyl]-benzamidine:** The

compound of Ex. 70, Part D (0.11 g, 0.25 mmol) was  
20 dissolved in 6 mL of MeOH and 12 mL of CHCl<sub>3</sub>. The mixture was cooled in an ice-bath and HCl gas was bubbled in for 15 minutes. The reaction flask was sealed and placed in the refrigerator for 12 h. The solvents were removed and the resulting solid was dried under vacuum.  
25 The solid was then dissolved in 10 mL of MeOH and Ammonium acetate (0.28 g, 1.48 mmol) was added. The mixture was sealed and stirred at RT overnight. The solvent was removed and the residue was purified by HPLC (C18 reverse phase) with 5% TFA in acetonitrile/water to  
30 give 72 mg of the benzamidine TFA salt. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ 9.38 (bs, 2H), 9.10 (bs, 2H), 8.12 (d, 1H), 7.70 (m, 5H), 7.38 (m, 4H), 4.62 (s, 2H), 3.78 (t, 2H), 3.39 (t,

2H), 2.82 (s, 3H), 2.08 (m, 2H). MS (ES<sup>+</sup>): 463.5, (M+H)<sup>+</sup>; HPLC purity 96%.

### Example 71

5     **4-Benzyloxycarbonyl-3-(4-chlorobenzenesulfonylamino)-1-(2'-methanesulfonyl-biphenyl-4-yl)-2-oxo-piperazine**



**Part A: 4-Benzyloxycarbonyl-1-(4-bromophenyl)-2-oxo-piperazine:**

10     **piperazine:** 4-Benzyloxycarbonylpiperazin-2-one (18.6 mmol), 4,5-bis(diphenyl-phosphino)-9,9-dimethylxanthene (2.79 mmol), cesium carbonate (27.9 mmol) and palladium acetate (1.86 mmol) were placed in a round bottom flask and it was evacuated and flushed with N<sub>2</sub> (3X). Dioxane

15     (200 mL) and *p*-bromiodobenzene (18.6 mmol) were then added and evacuation and flushing with N<sub>2</sub> were repeated as above. The resulting mixture was heated to 75 °C overnight then cooled and diluted with dichloromethane. The solution was filtered through a pad of Celite® and

20     concentrated to dryness. The residue was purified by flash chromatography eluting with 1:2 EtOAc/Hex to give the product as a yellow solid (48.9%). <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, 300 MHz) δ 7.53 (d, *J* = 8.8 Hz, 2 H), 7.37 (m, 5 H), 2.87 (d, *J* = 8.7 Hz, 2 H), 5.19 (s, 2 H), 4.33 (s, 2 H), 3.87 (m, 2 H), 3.74 (m, 2 H); mass spectrum, ESI (M-H) 387.3, 389.3.

25

**Part B. 3-Azido-4-benzyloxycarbonyl-1-(4-bromophenyl)-2-oxo-piperazine:** To a solution of the compound of Ex. 71,



Part A (1.29 mmol) in 15 mL THF at -78 °C was added 0.5 M KHMDS (1.42 mmol, 2.84 mL) dropwise. After stirring at -78 °C for 5 min, trisyl azide (3.22 mmol) in 5 mL THF was added and stirring was continued for another 5 min before  
5 acetic acid (5.80 mmol, 332 µL) was added. The reaction was allowed to warm to room temperature (30 min). The mixture was diluted with saturated ammonium chloride and extracted three times with ethyl acetate. The combined organic layers were washed once with brine, dried  
10 (MgSO<sub>4</sub>), filtered and concentrated *in vacuo* to give a yellow residue which was purified by flash chromatography on silica gel eluting with 1:1 EtOAc:Hex to give the azide as an off-white oil (74.4 %). IR (KBr) 2107 (N<sub>3</sub>);  
1H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, 300 MHz) δ 7.54 (d, *J* = 8.7 Hz, 2 H), 7.39  
15 (br s, 5 H), 7.18 (d, *J* = 8.8 Hz, 2 H), 6.0 (br s, 1 H), 5.24 (s, 2 H), 4.10 (m, 1 H), 3.82 (m, 1 H), 3.68 (m, 2 H). Mass spectrum, ESI (M+Na) 452.1, 454.1.

**Part C. 3-Amino-4-benzyloxycarbonyl-1-(4-bromophenyl)-2-oxo-piperazine** A solution of the compound of Ex. 71, Part  
20 B (0.83 mmol) in 2 mL methanol was added slowly to a stirred suspension of SnCl<sub>2</sub> (1.2 mmol) in 5 mL of methanol at 0 °C. The mixture was allowed to warm to room temperature after the addition was over and stirring was continued for another 15 min. Methanol was then removed  
25 under reduced pressure and the residue was diluted with cold water and made alkaline with 1N NaOH solution. Dichloromethane was added and the biphasic solution was filtered through a sintered glass funnel. The layers were then separated and the aqueous layer was saturated  
30 with NaCl and re-extracted with dichloromethane. The combined organic layers were dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>) and concentrated to give the product as an off-white foam (96.7 %). <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, 300 MHz) δ 7.53 (d, *J* = 8.8 Hz,

2 H), 7.38 (m, 5 H), 7.17 (d,  $J = 8.8$  Hz, 2 H), 5.54 (s, 1 H), 5.21 (s, 2 H), 4.16 (br m, 1 H), 3.89 (m, 1 H), 3.72 (m, 1 H), 3.59 (m, 1 H). Mass spectrum, ESI (M+H) 404.1, 406.1.

5 **Part D. 4-Benzylloxycarbonyl-3-(4-chlorosulfonylamino) -1-(4-bromophenyl)-2-oxo-piperazine** To a solution of the compound of Ex. 71, Part C (0.50 mmol) in 5 mL dichloromethane was added p-chlorobenzene-sulfonyl chloride (0.74 mmol) and then pyridine (0.60 mL) at room  
10 temperature. Solution turned bright yellow after the addition of pyridine. After stirring for an additional 5 min, the mixture was diluted with 1N HCl and then it was extracted three times with ethyl acetate. The combined organic layers were then washed once with brine, dried  
15 (MgSO<sub>4</sub>), filtered and concentrated under vacuo to give a orange residue which was purified by flash chromatography on silica gel eluting with 0-50% EtOAc/Hex to give the sulfonamide product as a white foam (71%). <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, 300 MHz)  $\delta$  7.82 (br s, 2 H), 7.53 (d,  $J = 8.4$  Hz, 2 H),  
20 7.40 (br s, 7 H), 7.13 (d,  $J = 8.4$  Hz, 2 H), 5.70 (br m, 2 H), 5.18 (s, 2H), 4.18 (br m, 1 H), 3.82 (m, 2 H), 3.59 (m, 1 H). Mass spectrum, ESI (M+H) 578.3, 580.3, (M+Na) 600.2, 602.3.

**Part E. 4-Benzylloxycarbonyl-3-(4-chlorobenzenesulfonyl-amino)-1-(2'-(methylthio)-biphenyl-4-yl)-2-oxo-**  
25 **piperazine:** The compound of Ex. 71, Part D (0.32 mmol), 2-methylthioboronic acid (0.48 mmol), potassium carbonate (1.3 mmol), and tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium(0) (5 mol %) were placed in a round bottom flask which was  
30 flushed twice with N<sub>2</sub>. To this mixture was added 2:1 toluene/ethanol (15 mL) and the resulting mixture was flushed again with N<sub>2</sub> (2x). The mixture was heated to reflux for one hour. The solution was then cooled to room temperature, diluted with water and extracted two

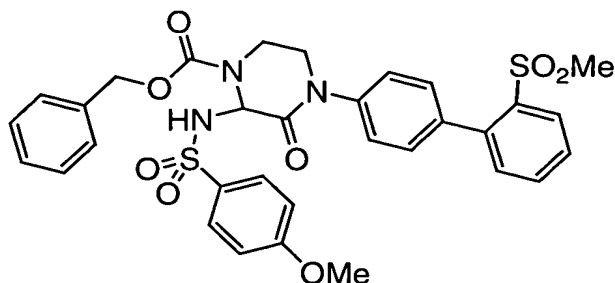
times with ethyl acetate. The combined organic extracts were washed with brine, dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>), filtered and concentrated under vacuo to give an oil which was purified by flash column chromatography eluting with 1:1 EtOAc:Hex to give the product as an off-white foam (85.9%). <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, 300 MHz) δ 7.80 (br d, 2 H), 7.43 (d, *J* = 8.4 Hz, 2 H), 7.38 (m, 9 H), 7.13 (d, *J* = 8.4 Hz, 2 H), 7.20 (m, 2 H), 5.72 (s, 1 H), 5.68 (br s, 1 H), 5.20 (s, 2H), 4.20 (br m, 1 H), 3.80 (m, 3 H). Mass spectrum, ESI (M+H) 622.4, 624.4, (M+Na) 644.4, 646.4.

**Part F. 4-Benzylloxycarbonyl-3-(4-chlorobenzenesulfonyl-amino)-1-(2'-methanesulfonyl-biphenyl-4-yl)-2-oxo-**

**piperazine:** To a mixture of the compound of Ex. 71, Part E (0.261 mmol) in dichloromethane was added MCPBA (0.652 mmol). After stirring at room temperature for five hours, the mixture was quenched with saturated NaHCO<sub>3</sub> and extracted three times with ethyl acetate. The combined organic extracts were washed with once with brine, dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>), filtered and concentrated to dryness to give an oily residue which was purified by with flash column chromatography eluting with 3:1 EtOAc/Hex to afford the title compound as a white foam (73.3 %). <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, 300 MHz) δ 8.23 (d, *J* = 7.7 Hz, 1 H), 7.90 (br s, 2 H), 7.61 (m, 2 H), 7.52 (d, *J* = 8.4 Hz, 2 H) 7.41 (br m, 5 H), 7.36 (m, 3 H), 7.35 (d, *J* = 8.7 Hz), 5.70 (s, 1 H), 5.60 (br s, 1 H), 5.21 (s, 2 H), 4.23 (br m, 1 H), 3.85 (m, 2 H), 3.70 (m, 1 H). Mass spectrum, ESI (M+Na) 676.4, 678.4, (M-H) 652.4, 654.4.

**Example 72**

**4-Benzylloxycarbonyl-3-(4-methoxybenzenesulfonylamino)-1-(2'-methanesulfonyl-biphenyl-4-yl)-2-oxo-piperazine**

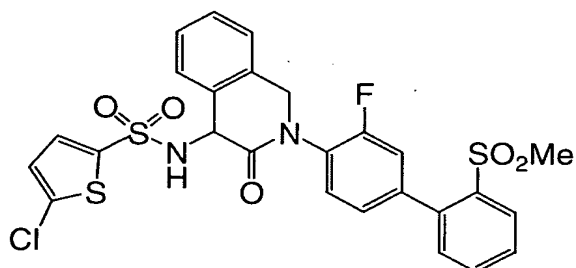


This compound was prepared from the compound of Ex. 71, Part C using 4-methoxysulfonyl chloride and following the same procedures as described for Ex. 71 above. MS (ESI)

5 650.3 (M+H)<sup>+</sup>, 672.3 (M+Na)<sup>+</sup>.

### Example 73

**5-Chloro-N-[2-(3-fluoro-2'-methanesulfonyl-biphenyl-4-yl)-3-oxo-1,2,3,4-tetrahydro-isoquinolin-4-yl]-thiophene-2-sulfonamide**



**Part A. N-(3-Fluoro-2'-methanesulfonyl-biphenyl-4-yl)-2-(2-hydroxymethylphenyl)-acetamide:** To a solution of 2-fluoro-4-[(2-methylsulfonyl)phenyl]aniline (2.43 mmol) in 10 mL of xylene was added 2 M trimethylaluminum in toluene (4 eq). After the addition, stirring was continued at room temperature for 30 min before isochromanone (2 eq) was added in one portion. An exothermic reaction ensued which was further refluxing for three hours, after which the mixture was cooled and then was poured into slurry of silica gel and chloroform. This mixture was stirred for 5 min and then filtered through a sintered glass funnel eluting with methanol. The filtrate was evaporated and the yellow residue was

purified by flash column chromatography eluting with 20% EtOAc/Hex to give the amide as an off-white foam (89%). Mass spectrum, ESI (M+H) 414.3, (M+Na) 436.3.

**Part B. 2-(2-bromomethylphenyl)-N-(3-Fluoro-2'-**

5 **methanesulfonyl-biphenyl-4-yl)acetamide:** To a mixture of the compound of Ex. 73, Part A (0.38 mmol) in 3 mL of dichloromethane was added phosphorous tribromide (1.3 eq) dropwise at 0°C. After stirring for 5 min at room temperature, the mixture was diluted with water and  
10 extracted two times with chloroform. The combined organic extracts were washed once with brine, dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>), filtered and concentrated under vacuo to give the bromide as an off-white foam (98%). This compound was not further purified and was carried directly on to  
15 the next step. Mass spectrum, ESI (M+H) 476.3, 478.3, (M+Na) 498.3, 500.3.

**Part C. 2-(3-Fluoro-2'-methanesulfonyl-biphenyl-4-yl)-**

**1,4-dihydro-2H-isoquinolin-3-one:** To a solution of the compound of Ex. 73, Part B (0.36 mmol) in 3 mL of THF was  
20 added sodium hydride (2 eq) in one portion at 0°C. After stirring for 5 min, the mixture was diluted with water and extracted two times with ethyl acetate. The combined organic extracts were washed once with brine, dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>), filtered and concentrated to dryness to give  
25 yellow residue which was purified with flash chromatography eluting with 50% EtOAc/Hex to give the product as an off-white foam (84%). Mass spectrum, ESI (M+H) 396.3.

**Part D. 4-Azido-2-(3-fluoro-2'-methanesulfonyl-biphenyl-**

30 **4-yl)-1,4-dihydro-2H-isoquinolin-3-one:** To a solution of the compound of Ex. 73, Part C (0.66 mmol) in 8 mL of THF at -78°C was added 1 M LHMDS (1.3 eq) drop-wise. After stirring for 5 min, trisyl azide (2 eq) in 3 mL of THF was added to the mixture. After stirring for another 5

min, acetic acid (4.5 eq) was added and the solution was warmed to room temperature (30 min). The mixture was quenched with saturated ammonium chloride and extracted 3 times with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>), filtered, and concentrated under vacuo to give a yellow residue which was purified by column chromatography eluting with 50% EtOAc/Hex to give the azide as foam (95%). Mass spectrum, APCI (M+1) 437.1, (M+1-N<sub>2</sub>) 409.1.

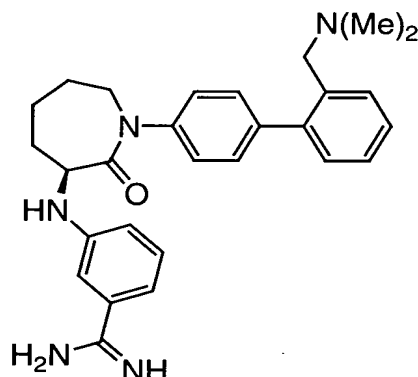
**Part E. 4-Amino-2-(3-fluoro-2'-methanesulfonyl-biphenyl-4-yl)-1,4-dihydro-2H-isoquinolin-3-one: 4-Azido-2-(3-fluoro-2'-methanesulfonyl-biphenyl-4-yl)-1,4-dihydro-2H-isoquinolin-3-one:** To a stirred suspension of tin(II)chloride (1.5 eq) in 3 mL methanol at 0°C was added the compound of Ex. 73, Part D (0.48 mmol) in 2 mL of methanol drop-wise. After the addition was over, the mixture was further stirred at room temperature for 2 hours before methanol was removed under reduced pressure. The residue was diluted with water and made alkaline with 1N NaOH solution. Dichloromethane was added and the layers were separated. The aqueous layer was saturated with brine and reextracted with dichloromethane. The combined organic layer was dried with MgSO<sub>4</sub>, filtered and concentrated in vacuo to give a residue. It was purified by column chromatography eluting with 10% MeOH/CHCl<sub>3</sub> to give the amine as a film (25%). Mass spectrum, ESI (M+H) 411.3.

**Part F. 5-Chloro-N-[2-(3-fluoro-2'-methanesulfonyl-biphenyl-4-yl)-3-oxo-1,2,3,4-tetrahydro-isoquinolin-4-yl]-thiophene-2-sulfonamide:** To a solution of the compound of Ex. 73, Part E (0.048mmol) and pyridine (10 eq) in 1 mL of dichloromethane was added 5-chlorothiophene-2-sulfonyl chloride (5 eq). Solution turned bright yellow instantly. After stirring for 5

min, the mixture was diluted with 1N HCl and extracted 3 times with ethyl acetate. The combined organic extracts were washed once with brine, dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>), filtered and concentrated under vacuo to give a residue which was  
 5 purified by flash column chromatography eluting with 50-75% EtOAc/Hex to give the title compound as a foam (64%).  
<sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, 300 MHz) δ 8.23 (d, *J* = 7.4 Hz, 1H), 7.83 (d, *J* = 8.0 Hz, 1H), 7.63 (m, 2H), 7.53 (d, *J* = 4 Hz, 1H), 7.48 (d, *J* = 7.3 Hz, 1H) 7.30 (m, 6H), 6.97 (d, *J* = 4.0 Hz, 1H), 6.16 (d, *J* = 5.9 Hz, 1H), 5.10 (d, *J* = 15.4 Hz, 1 H), 4.98 (br s, 1H), 4.58 (d, *J* = 15.4 Hz, 1H), 2.77 (s, 3H); Mass spectrum, ESI (M+H) 591.3.

#### Example 74

15 **3-[1-(2'-Dimethylaminomethyl-biphenyl-4-yl)-2-oxo-azepan-3-ylamino]-benzamidine**



**Part A. [1-(4-Bromo-phenyl)-2-oxo-azepan-3-yl]-carbamic acid tert-butyl ester:** 3-t-butoxycarbonylamino-2-oxoazepane (4.4 mmol), p-bromiodobenzene (1 eq), 4,5-bis(diphenyl-phosphino)-9,9-dimethylxanthene (0.15 eq), cesium carbonate (1.5 eq), and palladium acetate (0.1 eq) were placed in a round bottom flask and it was evacuated and flushed 3 times with nitrogen. To this solution, 45  
 20 mL of dioxane was added and the resulting solution was evacuated and flushed 3 more times with nitrogen gas.  
 The mixture was allowed to stir at 75°C overnight. The

mixture turned from black to bright yellow suspension. The mixture was cooled and diluted with dichloromethane and then was filtered through a pad of Celite®. The filtrate was removed under reduced pressure and the residue was purified by flash column chromatography eluting with 50% EtOAc/Hex to give the desired product as an off-white foam (68%). Mass spectrum, ESI (M+H) 383.2, 385.2.

**Part B. 3-Amino-1-(4-bromo-phenyl)-azepan-2-one:** To a solution of the compound of Ex. 74, Part A (2.9 mmol) in 5 mL of dichloromethane was added 5 mL of trifluoroacetic acid. After stirring for 30 min, the excess solvents were evaporated off and the residue was treated with 1N NaOH and extracted 3 times with dichloromethane. The combined organic extracts were washed with brine, dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>), filtered and concentrated under vacuo to give the deprotected amino compound as oil (98%). Mass spectrum, ESI (M+H) 283.2, 285.2.

**Part C. 3-[1-(4-Bromo-phenyl)-2-oxo-azepan-3-ylamino]-benzonitrile:** A mixture of the compound of Ex. 74, Part B (0.35 mmol), 3-cyanophenylboronic acid (1.5 eq), copper acetate (2 eq), triethyl amine (2 eq), pyridine (2 eq), 4 Å molecular sieves was stirred in dichloromethane for 30 min. The mixture was then filtered through a pad of silica gel eluting with ethyl acetate. The filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure and the residue was purified by column chromatography eluting with 0-25% EtOAc/Hex to give the product as clear oil (44%). Mass spectrum, ESI (M+H) 384.2, 386.2.

**Part D. 3-[1-(2'-Formyl-biphenyl-4-yl)-2-oxo-azepan-3-ylamino]-benzonitrile:** The compound of Ex. 74, Part C (0.13 mmol), 2-formylphenylboronic acid (1.5 eq), potassium carbonate (4 eq), tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium(0) (5 mol %) were



placed in a round bottom flask and was flushed twice with N<sub>2</sub>. To this mixture was added 2:1 toluene/ethanol (9 mL) and the resulting mixture was flushed again with N<sub>2</sub> (2x). The mixture was allowed to heated to reflux overnight.

- 5 The solution was then cooled to room temperature, diluted with water and extracted two times with ethyl acetate. The combined organic extracts were washed with brine, dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>), filtered and concentrated under vacuo to give an oil which was purified by flash column  
10 chromatography eluting with 1:1 EtOAc:Hex to give compound the product as an off-white foam (88%). Mass spectrum, ESI (M+H) 410.3 (M+Na) 432.3.

- Part E. 3-[1-(2'-Dimethylaminomethyl-biphenyl-4-yl)-2-oxo-azepan-3-ylamino]-benzonitrile:** To a solution of the  
15 compound of Ex. 74, Part D (0.11 mmol) and dimethylamine hydrochloride (3 eq) in 3 mL of dichloroethane was added diisoproylethylamine (3 eq). After stirring at room temperature for 15 min, sodium triacetoxyborohydride (3 eq) was added to the mixture. After stirring at room  
20 temperature overnight, the mixture was diluted with water and extracted two times with dichloromethane. The combined organic extracts were washed with brine, dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>), filtered and concentrated under vacuo to give **14** as a yellow film (quantitative). Mass spectrum, ESI  
25 (M+H) 439.4.

- Part F. 3-[1-(2'-Dimethylaminomethyl-biphenyl-4-yl)-2-oxo-azepan-3-ylamino]-benzamidine:** Hydrogen chloride gas was bubbled to a solution of the compound of Ex. 74, Part E (0.21 mmol) in 20 mL of ethanol for 10 min at 0°C. The  
30 reaction was sealed with glass stopper and parafilm and was stirred at room temperature overnight. The solvent was then evaporated off and the solid residue was redissolved in ethanol (5 mL) and pyridine (50 µL). To this mixture was then added ammonium carbonate and it was

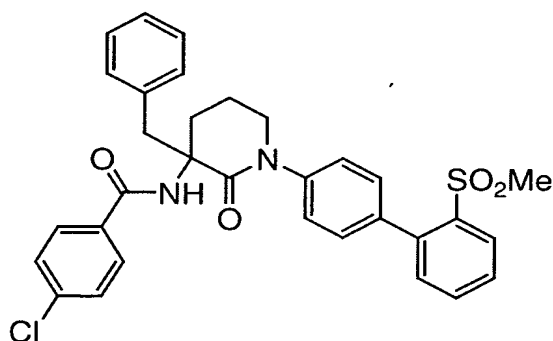
further stirred at room temperature overnight. The excess solvents were evaporated off and the residue was purified by HPLC and the solvent was lypholized off to give the title compound as powder.  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CD}_3\text{OD}$ , 300

5 MHz)  $\delta$  7.67 (m, 1H), 7.57 (m, 2H), 7.40 (m, 6H), 7.02 (m, 3H), 4.65 (d, 1H), 4.39 (s, 2H), 4.30 (m, 1H), 3.80 (m, 1H), 2.65 (s, 6H), 2.18 (m, 2H), 2.00 (m, 2H), 1.82 (m, 2H); mass spectrum, ESI ( $\text{M}+\text{H}$ ) 456.5.

10

**Example 75**

**N-[3-Benzyl-1-(2'-methanesulfonyl-biphenyl-4-yl)-2-oxo-piperidin-3-yl]-4-chlorobenzamide**



15 **Part A. 3-Amino-1-(4-bromophenyl)-piperidin-2-one:** 1-(4-Bromophenyl)-3-hydroxy-2-oxopiperidine (2.66g, 10 mmol) was stirred in  $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2$  at  $0^\circ\text{C}$  under  $\text{N}_2$ .  $\text{Et}_3\text{N}$  (2.8 mL, 1.5 eq) was added, followed by dropwise addition of  $\text{MsCl}$  (0.85 mL, 11 mmol) and addition of DMAP (150 mg). The mixture was warmed up to RT for 7 h. TLC showed completion of the reaction. EtOAc was added, washed with  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  (1x), brine (2x), dried over  $\text{MgSO}_4$ , filtered, and concentrated to dryness. The residue was used directly for the next step without purification. It was dissolved in dry DMF (15 mL), and  $\text{NaN}_3$  (1.9g, 29 mmol, 2.9 eq) was added. The mixture was stirred at RT under  $\text{N}_2$  O/N. TLC showed completion. EtOAc was added, washed with  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$

(1x), brine (2x), dried over  $\text{MgSO}_4$ , filtered, and concentrated to dryness. Flash column chromatography (silica gel,  $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2$ : EtOAc = 2:1 to 1:1) gave pure azide product (2.25g, yield: 76%).  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (300MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  7.48 (AA'BB',  $J$  = 8.8 Hz, 2H), 7.13 (48 (AA'BB',  $J$  = 8.8 Hz, 2H), 4.16 (dd,  $J$  = 8.3, 6.0 Hz, 1H), 3.56 (m, 2H), 2.16-1.82 (m, 6H). The azide (0.77g, 2.62 mmol) was stirred in THF (15 mL) at RT.  $\text{PPh}_3$  (0.82 g, 3.14 mmol, 1.2 eq) was added as one single portion. The mixture was stirred at RT for 30 min until the emission of  $\text{N}_2$  ceased.  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  (2.9 mL) was added, and the resulting mixture was heated at  $50^\circ\text{C}$  for 5h. TLC showed completion. The mixture was cooled, and EtOAc was added. It was washed with  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  (1x), brine (2x), dried over  $\text{MgSO}_4$ , filtered, and concentrated to dryness. Flash column chromatography (silica gel,  $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2$ , then  $\text{Et}_3\text{N}$ :EtOAc: $\text{CH}_3\text{OH}$  = 1:50:10 to 2:50:10) gave the amine product as colorless solid (0.70 g, yield: 100%).  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (300MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  7.50 (AA'BB',  $J$  = 8.8 Hz, 2H), 7.14 (AA'BB',  $J$  = 8.8 Hz, 2H), 3.70 (m, Ha, 1H), 3.57 (m, 2H), 2.31 (m, Hb, 1H), 2.05 (m, 2H), 1.82 (m, 1H).

**Part B. 3-Amino-3-benzyl-1-(4-bromophenyl)-piperidin-2-**

**one:** The product of Ex 75, Part A (0.61 g, 2.27 mmol) was stirred at  $0^\circ\text{C}$  in dry  $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2$  (6 mL) under  $\text{N}_2$ .

Benzaldehyde (0.23 mL, 1.0 eq) was added, followed by the addition of  $\text{MgSO}_4$  (0.65 g) and  $\text{Et}_3\text{N}$  (0.64 mL, 2.0 eq). The mixture was slowly warmed to RT for 24 h.  $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2$  (5 mL) was added and stirred for 10 h more. The mixture was filtered, rinsed with  $\text{Et}_2\text{O}$ , washed with  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  (2x), brine (2x), dried over  $\text{MgSO}_4$ , filtered, and concentrated to dryness (0.71g, yield: 88%). The compound was directly used for the next step without purification.  $^1\text{H}$  NMR

(300MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$  8.46 (s, 1H), 7.78 (m, 2H), 7.50 (AA'BB',  $J$  = 8.8 Hz, 2H), 7.42 (m, 3H), 7.18 (AA'BB',  $J$  = 8.4 Hz, 2H), 4.10 (t,  $J$  = 5.9 Hz, 1H), 3.76 (m, 2H), 2.39 (m, 1H), 2.24 (m, 2H), 2.03 (m, 1H). Potassium t-butoxide (0.24 g, 2.16 mmol) was dissolved in dry THF (2 mL) under N<sub>2</sub>. A solution of the Schiff base prepared above (0.70 g, 1.97 mmol) in THF (3 mL) was added dropwise to the above stirring solution at RT. The mixture was then stirred at RT for 40 min. PhCH<sub>2</sub>Br (0.24 mL, 2.02 mmol) was added to the dark brown solution as one single portion. The color changed to orange yellow. The resulting solution was stirred at RT for 24 h. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (300MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$  8.68 (s, 1H), 7.78 (m, 2H), 7.54 (AA'BB',  $J$  = 8.4 Hz, 2H), 7.47 (m, 3H), 7.33 (m, 5H), 7.08 (AA'BB',  $J$  = 8.6 Hz, 2H), 3.56 (d,  $J$  = 12.8 Hz, Ha, 1H), 3.45 (m, 2H), 2.98 (d,  $J$  = 13.4 Hz, Hb, 1H), 2.24 (m, 1), 2.06 (m, 2H), 1.78 (m, 1H). The mixture was dissolved in Et<sub>2</sub>O (3 mL), and 1N HCl (20 mL) was added. The reaction was stirred at RT for 5 h. LC-MS showed completion of the reaction. The mixture was extracted with Et<sub>2</sub>O (2x). The aqueous layer was basified with 1N NaOH, then extracted with Et<sub>2</sub>O (3x), washed with brine, dried over MgSO<sub>4</sub>, and concentrated to give the amine product (0.61g, yield: 87%). <sup>1</sup>H NMR (300MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$  7.47 (AA'BB',  $J$  = 8.8 Hz, 2H), 7.25 (m, 5H), 7.06 (AA'BB',  $J$  = 8.8 Hz, 2H), 3.49 (m, Ha1, 1H), 3.38 (m, Hb2, 1H), 3.22 (d,  $J$  = 12.9 Hz, Ha1, 1H), 2.83 (d,  $J$  = 13.2 Hz, Hb2, 1H), 1.99-1.80 (m, 6H).

**Part C. N-[3-Benzyl-1-(4-bromophenyl)-2-oxo-piperidin-3-yl]-4-chlorobenzamide:** The compound of Ex. 75, Part B (0.19 g, 0.53 mmol) and *p*-chlorobenzoyl chloride (0.10 mL, 0.79 mmol) were stirred in dry CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (4 mL) at RT

under N<sub>2</sub>. Disopropylethylamine (0.18 mL, 1.03 mmol) was added dropwise, followed by the addition of DMAP (40 mg). The reaction mixture was stirred at RT for 6 h. It was then quenched with sat'd NH<sub>4</sub>Cl, extracted with EtOAc, washed with brine (2 x), dried over MgSO<sub>4</sub>, and concentrated to dryness. Flash column chromatography (silica gel, hexanes:EtOAc = 1:0 to 10:1, to 4:1, then to 1:1) gave the desired product as a colorless amorphous solid (0.23g, 87%). <sup>1</sup>H NMR (300MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 7.63 (d, *J* = 8.4 Hz, 2H), 7.52 (d, *J* = 8.4 Hz, 2H), 7.34 (m, 4H), 7.28 (m, 3H), 7.19 (d, *J* = 8.4 Hz, 2H), 3.81 (td, *J* = 11.2, 4.6 Hz, 1H), 3.49 (d, *J* = 13.2 Hz, Ha1, 1H), 3.42 (m, 1H), 3.18 (d, *J* = 13.2 Hz, Hb1, 1H), 2.47 (m, 2H), 1.87 (m, 2H).

15

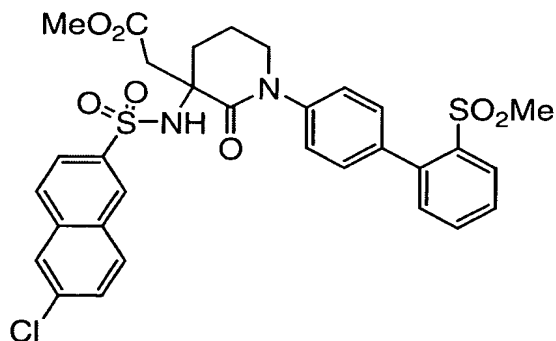
**Part D. N-[3-Benzyl-1-(2'-methanesulfonyl-biphenyl-4-yl)-2-oxo-piperidin-3-yl]-4-chlorobenzamide:** The compound of Ex. 75, Part C (0.18g, 0.36 mmol) and 2-(methylthio)phenylboronic acid (91.5 mg, 0.54 mmol, 1.5 eq) were stirred in toluene (3 mL). Water (0.5 mL) was added followed by Na<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub> (104 mg), then Pd(PPh<sub>3</sub>)<sub>4</sub> (41 mg, 0.035 mmol, 10%mol). The mixture was degassed (3x), and heated at 90-100°C overnight. TLC showed completion. EtOAc was added, extracted with sat'd NH<sub>4</sub>Cl, H<sub>2</sub>O, then brine, and dried over MgSO<sub>4</sub>, and concentrated to dryness. Flash column chromatography (silica gel, hexanes:EtOAc = 1:0 to 1:1) gave the product as colorless crystals (yield: 0.189 g, 96.4%). <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, 300MHz) δ 7.64 (d, *J* = 8.4 Hz, 2H), 7.47 (d, *J* = 8.0 Hz, 2H), 7.45-7.20 (m, 13H), 3.87 (m, 1H), 3.61 (d, *J* = 13.2 Hz, 1H), 3.60 (m, 1H), 3.33 (d, *J* = 13.2 Hz, 1H), 2.71 (m, 1H), 2.50 (m, 1H), 2.38 (s, 3H), 1.97 (m, 2H). RP LC-MS (10-90% CH<sub>3</sub>CN in H<sub>2</sub>O, *t*<sub>R</sub> = 2.87 min) 541.2 (M+H). This product (8 mg,

30

14.9 mmol) was dissolved in  $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2$  (1 mL) and stirred at RT under  $\text{N}_2$ . MCPBA (33 mg, 190 mmol, 13 eq) was added. The mixture was stirred at RT for 1 h. LC-MS showed completion. EtOAc was added, extracted with sat'd  $\text{NaHCO}_3$  (2x), brine (2x), dried over  $\text{MgSO}_4$ , and concentrated to dryness. Flash column chromatography (silica gel,  $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2:\text{EtOAc} = 1:0$  then 1:1) gave the product with ~90% purity. This residue was purified by RP LC-MS to give the title compound as a colorless solid (6 mg, yield: 71%).  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (300MHz,  $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  7.64 (d,  $J = 8.4$  Hz, 2H), 7.47 (d,  $J = 8.0$  Hz, 2H), 7.45-7.20 (m, 13H), 3.98 (m, 1H), 3.65 (m, 1H), 3.59 (d,  $J = 13.6$  Hz, Ha1, 1H), 3.29 (d,  $J = 13.2$  Hz, Hb1, 1H), 2.71 (m, 1H), 2.50 (m, 1H), 2.68 (s, 3H), 2.60 (m, 2H), 2.01 (m, 2H). RP LC-MS (10-90  $\text{CH}_3\text{CN}$  in  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ ,  $t_R = 2.50$  min) 573.6 (M+H), 595.2 (M+Na).

### Example 76

**[3-(6-Chloro-naphthalene-2-sulfonylamino)-1-(2'-methanesulfonyl-biphenyl-4-yl)-2-oxo-piperidin-3-yl]-acetic acid methyl ester**



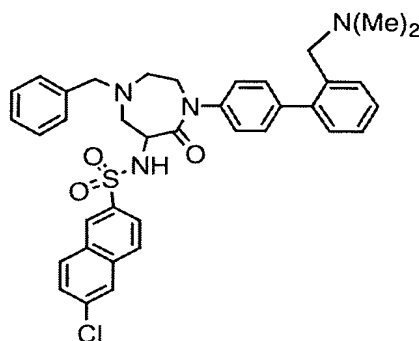
The title compound was prepared from the compound of Ex. 75, Part A in similar fashion by using  $\text{BrCH}_2\text{COOMe}$  in place of benzyl bromide as the alkylating reagent in the procedure of Ex. 75, Part B.  $^1\text{H}$  NMR (300MHz,  $\text{CD}_3\text{COCD}_3$ )  $\delta$  8.52 (s, br, 1H), 8.14-8.02 (m, 5H), 7.73 (m, 1H), 7.63

(m, 2H), 7.39 (m, 3H), 7.16 (m, 2H), 3.70 (m, 2H), 3.57 (s, 3H), 3.08 (m, 4H). 2.65 (s, 3H). RP LC-MS (35-98% CH<sub>3</sub>CN in H<sub>2</sub>O, t<sub>R</sub> = 5.27 min in a 9-min run): 583.4 (M+H).

5

**Example 77**

**6-Chloronaphthalene-2-sulfonic acid [1-benzyl-4-(2'-dimethylaminomethylbiphenyl-4-yl)-5-oxo-[1,4]-diazepan-6-yl]amide**



10

**Part A. 1-Benzyl-4-(4-bromo-phenyl)-[1,4]diazepan-5-one:**

Commercially available 1-benzyl-(1,4)-diazepan-5-one (14.7 mmol), p-bromiodobenzene (1 eq), 4,5-bis(diphenylphosphino)-9,9-dimethylxanthene (0.15 eq), cesium

15

carbonate (1.5 eq), and palladium acetate (0.1 eq) were placed in a round bottom flask and it was evacuated and flushed 3X with nitrogen. To this mixture was then added 200 mL of dioxane and the resulting solution was again evacuated and flushed 3X times with nitrogen gas. The

20

mixture was allowed to stir at 75°C overnight during which time the mixture turned from brown to bright yellow suspension. The mixture was cooled and diluted with

dichloromethane and then was filtered through a pad of celite. The filtrate was removed under reduced pressure

25

and the residue was purified by flash column chromatography eluting with 50% EtOAc/Hex to give compound **1** as an off-white solid (63%). Mass spectrum, ESI (M+H) 359.3, 361.3.

**Part B. 6-Azido-1-benzyl-4-(4-bromo-phenyl)-****[1,4]diazepan-5-one:** To a solution of diisopropylamine

(1.3 eq) in 1 mL THF at -78 °C was added 2.5 n-BuLi (1.3

eq) dropwise. After stirring at -78 °C for 15 min, a

5 solution of the compound of Ex. 77, Part A (0.56 mmol) in

1 mL of THF was added dropwise. After another 15 min, a

solution of trisyl azide (1.3 eq) in 1 mL THF was added

and stirring was continued for another 5 min before

acetic acid (1.3 eq) was added. The reaction was allowed

10 to warm to room temperature overnight. The mixture was

diluted with saturated ammonium chloride and extracted

three times with ethyl acetate. The combined organic

layers were washed once with brine, dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>),

filtered and concentrated under vacuo to give a yellow

15 residue which was purified by flash column chromatography

eluting with 30% EtOAc:Hex to give the azide product as

an oil (63 %). Mass spectrum, ESI (M+H) 400.3, 402.3.

**Part C. 6-Amino-1-benzyl-4-(4-bromo-phenyl)-****[1,4]diazepan-5-one:** A solution of the compound of Ex.

20 77, Part B (0.19 mmol) in 2 mL methanol was added slowly

to a stirred suspension of SnCl<sub>2</sub> (2 eq) in 1 mL of

methanol at 0 °C. The mixture was allowed to warm to room

temperature after the addition was over and stirring was

continued overnight. Methanol was then removed under

25 reduced pressure and the residue was diluted with cold

water and made alkaline with 1N NaOH solution.

Dichloromethane was added and the biphasic solution was

filtered through a sintered glass funnel. The layers

were then separated and the aqueous layer was saturated

30 with brine and re-extracted with dichloromethane. The

combined organic layers were dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>) and

concentrated to give the amine as an oil (86%). Mass

spectrum, ESI (M+H) 374.3, 376.3.



**Part D. 6-Chloro-naphthalene-2-sulfonic acid [1-benzyl-4-(4-bromo-phenyl)-5-oxo-[1,4]diazepan-6-yl]-amide:** To a solution of the compound of Ex. 77, Part C (0.16 mmol) in 2 mL dichloromethane was added 6-chloronaphthalene-2-sulfonyl chloride (1.3 eq) then pyridine (3 eq) at room temperature. After stirring for an additional 5 hours, the excess reagent and solvent were evaporated off and then the residue was purified by flash column chromatography eluting with 0-2% MeOH/CHCl<sub>3</sub> to give the sulfonamide product as a clear film (75%). Mass spectrum, ESI (M+H) 598.3, 600.3.

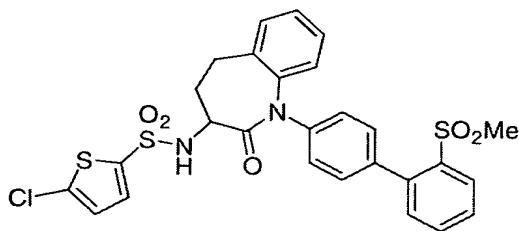
**Part E. 6-Chloro-naphthalene-2-sulfonic acid {1-benzyl-5-oxo-4-[2'-(2-oxo-ethyl)-biphenyl-4-yl]-[1,4]diazepan-6-yl}-amide:** The compound of Ex. 77, Part D (0.12 mmol), 2-formylbenzeneboronic acid (1.5 eq), potassium carbonate (4 eq), and tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium(0) (10 mol %) were placed in a round bottom flask and evacuated and flushed twice with N<sub>2</sub>. To this mixture was added 2:1 toluene/ethanol (9 mL) and the resulting mixture was evacuated and flushed again with N<sub>2</sub> (2x). The mixture was allowed to heated to reflux for two hours. The solution was then cooled to room temperature, diluted with water and extracted two times with ethyl acetate. The combined organic extracts were washed with brine, dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>), filtered and concentrated *in vacuo* to give a brown residue which was purified by flash column chromatography eluting with 30% EtOAc:Hex to give the product as a clear film (73%). Mass spectrum, ESI (M+H) 624.4, 626.4.

**Part F. 6-Chloro-naphthalene-2-sulfonic acid [1-benzyl-4-(2'-dimethylaminomethyl-biphenyl-4-yl)-5-oxo-[1,4]diazepan-6-yl]-amide:** To a solution of the compound of Ex. 77, Part E (0.09 mmol) and dimethylamine hydrochloride (3

eq) in 3 mL of dichloroethane was added diisopropylethylamine (3 eq). After stirring at room temperature for 15 min, sodium triacetoxyborohydride (3 eq) was added to the mixture. After stirring at room temperature overnight, the mixture was diluted with water and extracted two times with chloroform. The combined organic extracts were washed with brine, dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>), filtered and concentrated in vacuo to give the crude product as a yellow film which was purified by column chromatography eluting with 5% MeOH:CHCl<sub>3</sub> to give the target as a foam (73%). <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>, 300 MHz) δ 8.44 (s, 1H), 7.92 (m, 2H), 7.85 (s, 2H), 7.55 (m, 2H), 7.30 (m, 8H), 7.17 (d, *J*=7.5 Hz, 1H), 6.96 (d, *J*=8.4 Hz, 2H), 6.37 (br d, *J*= 5.1 Hz, 1H), 4.36 (br s, 1H), 3.87 (m, 1H), 3.67 (dd, *J*=36.1, 13.4 Hz, 2H), 3.60 (br m, 1H), 3.30 (s, 2H), 3.50 (br m, 1H), 2.90 (m, 1H), 2.52 (m, 2H), 2.14 (s, 6H); mass spectrum, ESI (M+H) 653.5, 655.5.

### Example 78

**5-chloro-*N*-{1-[2'-(methylsulfonyl)-1,1'-biphenyl-4-yl]-2-oxo-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1*H*-1-benzazepin-3-yl}-2-thiophenesulfonamide**



**Part A. 2-Bromo-3,4-dihydro-2*H*-naphthalen-1-one oxime: α-Tetralone:** (31.25 g, 0.214 mol) was stirred in MeOH (300 mL). Br<sub>2</sub> (11.02 mL, 1.0 eq) was added dropwise during a 1.5h-period. LC-MS showed completion of the reaction after the addition. NH<sub>2</sub>OH·HCl (38.10 g, 2.6 eq) was added to the above stirred solution, followed by the addition

of H<sub>2</sub>O (35 mL). The resulting mixture was stirred at RT O/N. LC-MS showed completion of the reaction. H<sub>2</sub>O (155 mL) was added. The mixture was stirred at RT for 5h. The light tan oil at the lower level was precipitated out while cooling in an ice bath for 30 min. The precipitate was filtered, and rinsed with H<sub>2</sub>O. It was azeotroped with toluene (2 x 50), vacuum dried, and used directly in the next step. LC-MS (ESI<sup>+</sup>) 240.2, 242.4 (M+H).

**Part B. 3-Bromo-1,3,4,5-tetrahydro-benzo[b]azepin-2-one:**

The product from Ex. 78, Part A (9.0 g, 37.66 mmol) was added portionwise to PPA (48 g) with stirring at 80°C under N<sub>2</sub>. The resulting mixture was stirred at 80°C for 36h. The hot mixture was poured into ice H<sub>2</sub>O, extracted with EtOAc (2 x), washed with H<sub>2</sub>O (2 x), brine (2 x), and dried over MgSO<sub>4</sub>. The residue was purified by flash column chromatography (silica gel, hexanes: CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> = 1:1 to 0:1, then CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>: EtOAc = 4:1) to produce light tan crystals of the product (3.53 g, 39%). <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 9.03 (br, s, 1H), 7.29-7.07 (m, 4H), 4.53 (m, 1H), 3.05-2.93 (m, 1H), 2.82-2.60 (m, 3H). <sup>13</sup>C NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 169.6, 136.8, 133.0, 129.7, 128.0, 126.4, 122.5, 47.1, 40.3, 30.3 (10 out of 10 expected peaks obtained). LC-MS (ESI<sup>+</sup>) 240.2, 242.4 (M+H).

**Part C. 3-Azido-1,3,4,5-tetrahydro-benzo[b]azepin-2-one:**

The product from Ex. 78, Part B (1.9g, 7.95 mmol) and NaN<sub>3</sub> (1.0 g, 15.38 mmol, 2.0 eq) were stirred in DMF at RT under N<sub>2</sub> O/N. LC-MS showed completion of the reaction (t<sub>R</sub> = 2.81 min, 10-90% CH<sub>3</sub>CN in H<sub>2</sub>O in a 4-min run). EtOAc was added; the organic layer was washed with H<sub>2</sub>O (2 x), brine (2 x), dried over MgSO<sub>4</sub>, and concentrated (ca. 1.8 g, yield: 100%). The crude product was used directly in the next step. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 8.85 (br, s, 1H), 7.26-

7.19 (m, 2H), 7.14 (dd,  $J = 7.7, 1.4$  Hz, 1H), 7.05 (d,  $J = 7.7$  Hz, 1H), 3.86 (dd,  $J = 11.3, 8.0$  Hz, 1H), 2.96 (m, 1H), 2.70 (m, 1H), 2.49 (m, 1H), 2.27 (m, 1H).  $^{13}\text{C}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  171.4, 136.3, 133.3, 129.6, 128.0, 126.3, 122.4, 59.1, 34.9, 28.3. LC-MS ( $\text{ESI}^+$ ) 203.4 ( $\text{M}+\text{H}$ ), 405.6 ( $2\text{M}+\text{H}$ ).

**Part D. 3-Amino-1,3,4,5-tetrahydro-benzo[b]azepin-2-one:**

The product from Ex. 78, Part C (1.8 g, 8.91 mmol) was stirred in THF (20 mL) at RT.  $\text{PPh}_3$  (2.8 g, 1.2 eq) was added. The mixture was stirred for 30 min.  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  (6 mL) was added. The mixture was stirred at  $50^\circ\text{C}$  for 3h. LC-MS showed completion of the reaction. The mixture was concentrated, and acidified with 1N HCl. It was extracted with  $\text{Et}_2\text{O}$  (2 x). The aqueous layer was basified with 50% NaOH, extracted with  $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2$  (2 x), washed with brine, dried over  $\text{MgSO}_4$ , and concentrated to dryness to produce 3-amino-1,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2H-1-benzazepin-2-one (1.06 g, 76%).  $^1\text{H}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  8.69 (br, s, 1H), 7.25 (m, 2H), 7.12 (dd,  $J = 7.5, 1.2$  Hz, 1H), 6.99 (dd,  $J = 7.5, 1.2$  Hz, 1H), 3.42 (dd,  $J = 11.3, 7.7$  Hz, 1H), 2.90 (m, 1H), 2.56 (m, 1H), 2.45 (m, 1H), 1.92 (m, 1H).  $^{13}\text{C}$  NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$  177.4, 136.8, 134.4, 129.6, 127.5, 125.9, 122.0, 51.5, 39.2, 29.0. LC-MS ( $\text{ESI}^+$ ) 353.6 ( $2\text{M}+\text{H}$ ).

**Part E. 3-Amino-1-(4-bromophenyl)-1,3,4,5-tetrahydro-benzo[b]azepin-2-one:** The product from Ex. 78, Part D (1.02 g, 5.80 mmol) was stirring in dry  $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2$  (15 mL) under  $\text{N}_2$  at RT.  $\text{PhCHO}$  (0.58 mL, 1.0 eq) was added, followed by the addition of  $\text{Et}_3\text{N}$  (1.63 mL) and  $\text{MgSO}_4$  (1.65 g). The resulting mixture was stirred at RT for 1 day. The mixture was filtered, rinsed with  $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2$ , washed with  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ , brine, dried over  $\text{MgSO}_4$ , and concentrated to dryness.

The residue (1.3 g, 4.92 mmol) and 4-bromo-1-iodobenzene (1.66 g, 1.2 eq) were stirred in 1,4-dioxane (5 mL) at RT under N<sub>2</sub>. K<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub> (1.36 g, 2.0 eq) was added, followed by the addition of CuI (0.19 g, 10%mol) and *trans*-1,2-cyclohexyldiamine (0.1 ml, 10%mol). The resulting mixture was stirred at 110°C for 2 h. LC-MS showed 80% of conversion with 20% starting material remaining. The mixture was cooled to RT, and sat'd NH<sub>4</sub>Cl was added. The mixture was extracted with EtOAc, washed with H<sub>2</sub>O, brine, and concentrated. The resulting residue was dissolved in Et<sub>2</sub>O (10 ml). 1N HCl (30 mL) was added. The mixture was stirred at RT for 3h. LC-MS showed completion of the reaction. The Et<sub>2</sub>O layer was separated. The aqueous layer was washed with Et<sub>2</sub>O (2 x), basified with 50% aqueous NaOH. It was extracted with CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (2 x), washed with brine, and dried over MgSO<sub>4</sub>. The crude product of 3-amino-1-(4-bromophenyl)-1,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2H-1-benzazepin-2-one was used directly in the next step after vacuum drying. LC-MS (ESI<sup>+</sup>) 331.4 (M+H), *t*<sub>R</sub> = 7.72 min (5-98%CH<sub>3</sub>CN in H<sub>2</sub>O in a 10-min run).

**Part F. [1-(4-Bromophenyl)-2-oxo-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-benzo[b]azepin-3-yl]carbamic acid tert-butyl**

**ester:** The product from Ex. 78, Part E (0.87 g, 2.64 mmol) was stirred in CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (18 mL). (Boc)<sub>2</sub>O (0.69 g, 1.2 eq) was added as one single portion, followed by the addition of 1N NaOH (3 mL). The resulting mixture was stirred at RT under N<sub>2</sub> for 1h. LC-MS showed completion of the reaction (*t*<sub>R</sub> = 9.01 min, 5-98% CH<sub>3</sub>CN in H<sub>2</sub>O in a 10-min run) with M+H = 333.2. NH<sub>4</sub>Cl was added, extracted with EtOAc (2 x), washed with brine, dried over MgSO<sub>4</sub>, filtered, and concentrated to give *tert*-butyl 1-(4-iodophenyl)-2-oxo-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-1-benzazepin-3-

ylcarbamate (1.13 g, 100%). It was used directly in the next step without further purification.

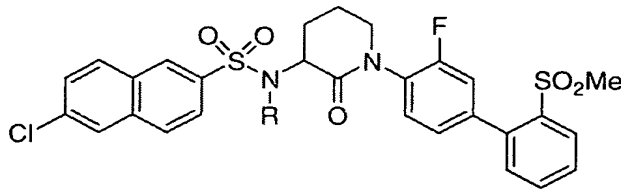
**Part G. *tert*-butyl 1-[2'-(methylthio)-1,1'-biphenyl-4-yl]-2-oxo-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1*H*-1-benzazepin-3-**

5 **ylcarbamate:** The product from Ex. 78, Part F (0.48 g, 1.11 mmol), *o*-thiomethylphenylboronic acid (0.28 g, 1.5 eq), Na<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub> (0.24 g, 2.0 eq), and Pd(PPh<sub>3</sub>)<sub>4</sub> (0.13 g, 10%mol) were degassed twice. Toluene (5 mL) and H<sub>2</sub>O (0.6 mL) were added. The mixture was stirred at 85°C under N<sub>2</sub>  
 10 O/N. LC-MS showed completion of the reaction. NH<sub>4</sub>Cl was added, extracted with EtOAc (2 x), washed with brine, dried over MgSO<sub>4</sub>, filtered, and concentrated. The residue was purified by flash column chromatography (silica gel, CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>:hexanes = 0:1 to 1:0, then 10-20%  
 15 EtOAc in CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub>) produced the product (0.28 g, 53%). <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 7.44 (m, 2H), 7.40-7.21 (m, 9H), 6.96 (m, 1H), 7.36-7.10 (m, 7H), 6.92 (d, *J* = 8.8 Hz, 2H), 5.56 (m, 1H), 4.45 (m, 1H), 3.12 (m, 1H), 2.75 (m, 2H), 2.37 (s, 3H), 2.03 (m, 1H), 1.43 (s, 9H). <sup>13</sup>C NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ  
 20 171.3, 154.9, 141.3, 140.7, 140.0, 138.9, 137.1, 135.4, 130.1, 129.9, 129.3, 128.1, 127.2, 126.7, 126.0, 125.3, 124.8, 79.6, 60.4, 51.1, 37.1, 28.4, 15.9. LC-MS (ESI<sup>+</sup>) 475.4 (M+H), 375.4 (M+H-Boc).

**Part H. 5-Chloro-thiophene-2-sulfonic acid [1-(2'-**  
 25 **methanesulfonyl-biphenyl-4-yl)-2-oxo-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1*H*-benzo[*b*]azepin-3-yl]-amide:** The product from Ex. 78, Part G (0.252 g, 0.53 mmol) was stirred in CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (5 mL) at RT under N<sub>2</sub>. MCPBA (0.61 g, 4.0 eq) was added as one single portion. LC-MS showed completion of the reaction  
 30 after 30 min. Sat'd NaHCO<sub>3</sub> was added. The mixture was extracted with EtOAc, washed with H<sub>2</sub>O, brine, dried over MgSO<sub>4</sub>, and concentrated. The residue was dissolved in

CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (10 mL). TFA (5 mL) was added. The mixture was stirred at RT for 20min. LC-MS showed completion of the reaction ( $t_R$  = 0.65 min, 407.6 (M+H)). The solvents were evaporated. EtOAc was added, washed with sat'd NaHCO<sub>3</sub>,  
 5 brine, dried over MgSO<sub>4</sub>, and concentrated. The above residue (0.13 g, 0.32 mmol) and 5-chloro-2-thiophenesulfonic acid (0.10g, 0.46 mmol) were stirred in CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (2 mL). Aqueous Na<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub> (10% w/w, 0.6 mL) was added. The mixture was stirred at RT under N<sub>2</sub> for 1h.  
 10 NH<sub>4</sub>Cl was added. It was extracted with EtOAc, washed with brine, and concentrated. The residue was purified by prep LC-MS ( $t_R$  = 6.20 min, 5-98% CH<sub>3</sub>CN in H<sub>2</sub>O in a 10-min run) to give the target compound as a pure white floatable solid after lyophilization (25 mg, 14%). <sup>1</sup>H NMR  
 15 (CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$  8.04 (dd, J = 7.9, 1.3 Hz, 1H), 7.89 (m, 1H), 7.64 (td, J = 7.7, 1.5 Hz, 1H), 7.55 (td, J = 7.7, 1.5 Hz, 1H), 7.36-7.10 (m, 7H), 6.92 (d, J = 8.8 Hz, 2H), 6.86 (m, 1H), 3.96 (m, 1H), 2.96 (m, 1H), 2.90 (m, 2H), 2.61 (s, 3H), 2.35 (m, 1H), 2.14 (m, 1H). LC-MS (ESI+)  
 20 587.2 (M+H).

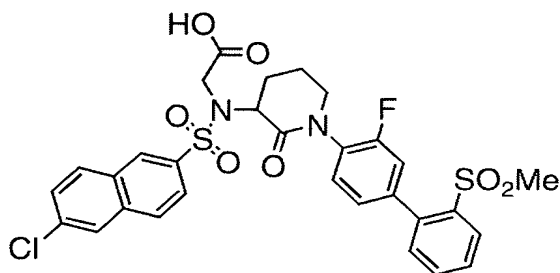
**Examples 79-81** were prepared from Ex. 35 by alkylation with the indicated alkylhalide in the presence of potassium carbonate in DMF as solvent using the procedure  
 25 described for the synthesis of the compound of Ex. 33, Part A.

**Table 3**

Ex.#	Alkylhalide	R	MS (M+H) <sup>+</sup>
79	Ethyl bromoacetate	CH <sub>2</sub> CO <sub>2</sub> Me	681.3
80	Ethyl bromoacetate	CH <sub>2</sub> CO <sub>2</sub> Et	673.1, 695.1 (M+Na) <sup>+</sup>
81	t-Butyl bromoacetate	CH <sub>2</sub> CO <sub>2</sub> tBu	701.4, 645.3 (M+H-tBu) <sup>+</sup>
82	Benzylbromide	Benzyl	677.0

## Example 83

{(6-Chloro-naphthalene-2-sulfonyl)-[1-(3-fluoro-2'-methanesulfonylbiphenyl-4-yl)-2-oxo-piperidin-3-yl]amino}acetic acid

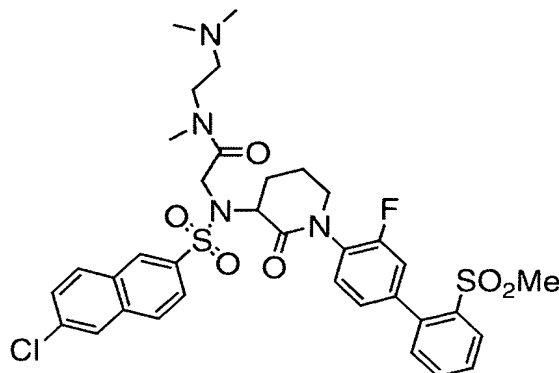


A 50 ml flask was charged with the compound of Ex. 81 (0.300 mg, 0.43 mmol) and CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (3ml) and trifluoroacetic acid (3 ml) was added to the rxn mixture. The rxn mixture was stirred at rt under N<sub>2</sub> atmosphere for 2 h. The solvent was removed under vacuum and the product dried overnight under high vacuum. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 8.47 (s, 1H), 8.22-8.19 (dd, 1H), 7.94-7.90 (m, 4H), 7.66-7.54 (m, 3H), 7.34-7.23 (m, 4H), 3.84-3.78 (m, 1H), 3.63-3.53 (m, 2H), 2.71 (s, 3H), 2.69-2.60 (m, 1H), 2.30-2.30 (m, 2H), 2.10-1.98 (m, 3H). MS ESI<sup>+</sup> 645.3 m/z.



## Example 84

2-((6-Chloronaphthalene-2-sulfonyl)-[1-(3-fluoro-2'-methanesulfonylbiphenyl-4-yl)-2-oxo-piperidin-3-yl]-amino)-N-(2-dimethylaminoethyl)-N-methylacetamide



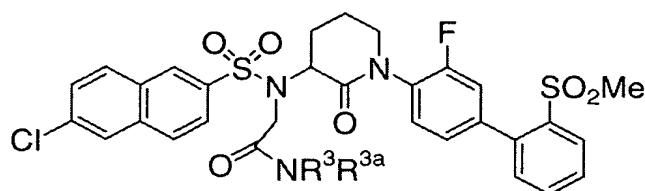
5

A small vial was charged with the the compound of Ex. 83 (25mg, 0.039mmol), 2-dimethylamino-N-methylethylamine(6.0 mg,0.059mmol), 4-methyl morpholine (16mg,0.156 mmol), Castro's reagent (26mg,0.059 mmol), and 1ml of DMF. The rxn mixture was stirred at rt for 48 hours. The rxn was concentrated and purified by LC/MS to provide the title compound. <sup>1</sup>H NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ 8.47 (s,1H), 8.22-8.19 (dd,1H), 7.94-7.90 (m,4H), 7.66-7.54 (m,3H), 7.34-7.23 (m,4H), 4.70-4.60 (m,1H), 4.35-4.20 (m,1H), 4.02-3.98(m,1H), 3.98-3.60 (m,3H), 3.60-3.58(m,1H), 3.10(s,3H), 2.90(s,3H), 2.75(s,3H), 2.39-2.35(m,1H) 2.19-2.01(bs,6H). MS ESI<sup>+</sup> 729.1

Similarly prepared from the compound of Ex. 83 using the procedure of Ex. 84 and the indicated amine were the following:

20

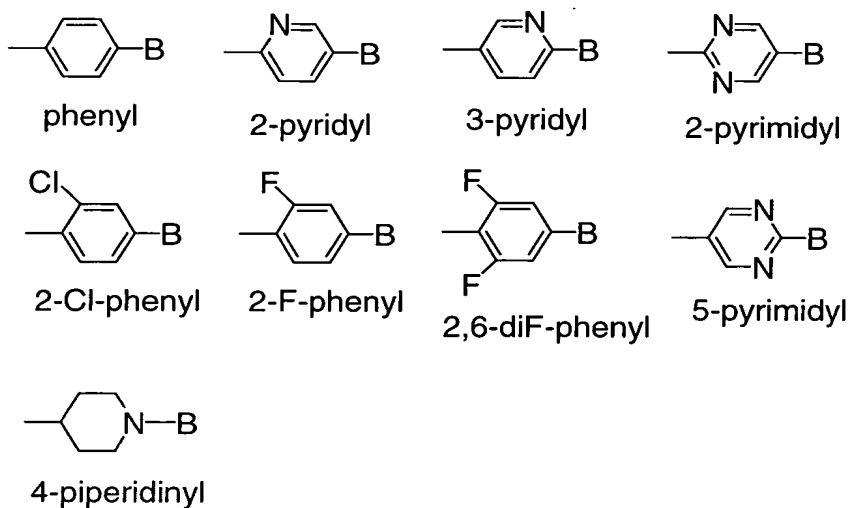
Table 4



Ex. #	Amine	NR <sup>3</sup> R <sup>3a</sup>	MS (M+H) <sup>+</sup>
85	2-aminoethanol	NHCH <sub>2</sub> CH <sub>2</sub> OH	688.1
86	2-dimethylaminoethylamine	NHCH <sub>2</sub> CH <sub>2</sub> NMe <sub>2</sub>	715.1

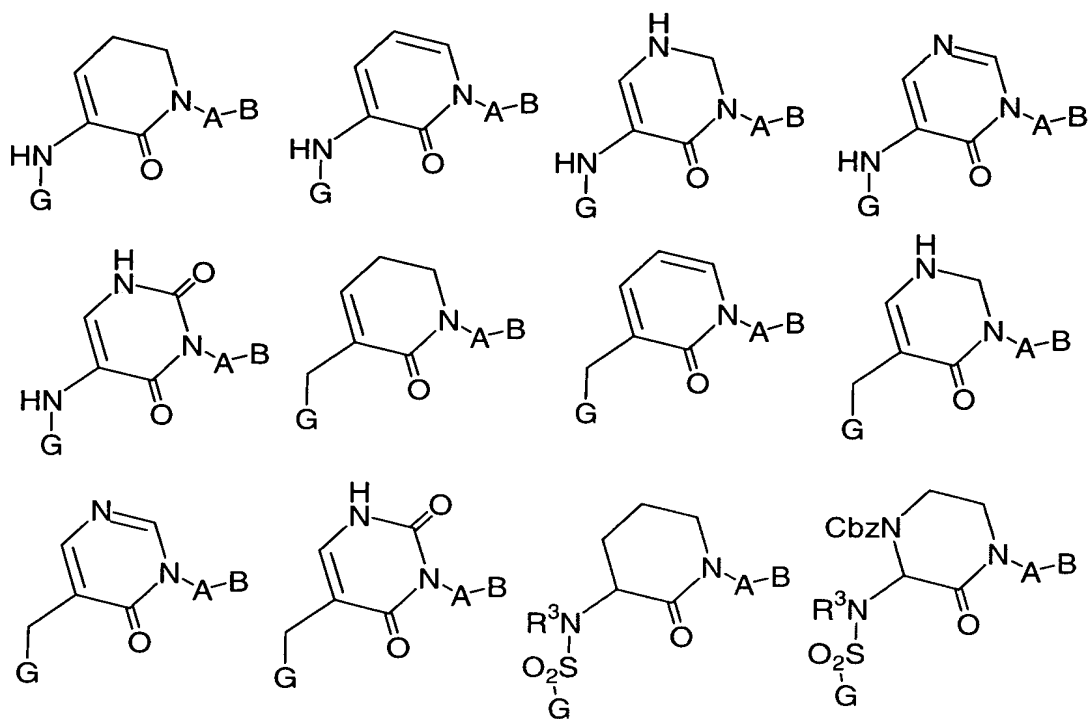
5        The following table contains additional  
 representative examples of the present invention. Each  
 entry in each table is intended to be paired with each  
 formulae at the start of the table. For example, in Table  
 1A, example 1 is intended to be paired with each of the  
 10 formulae.

The following nomenclature is intended for group A  
 in the following table.

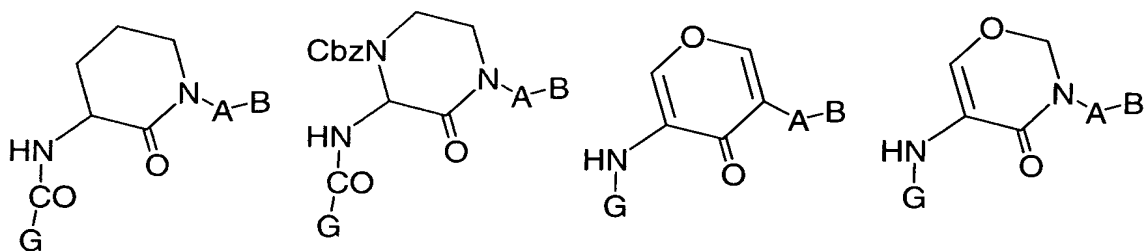


15

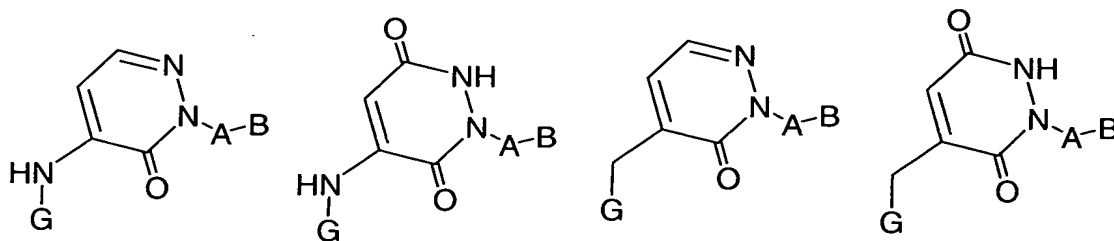
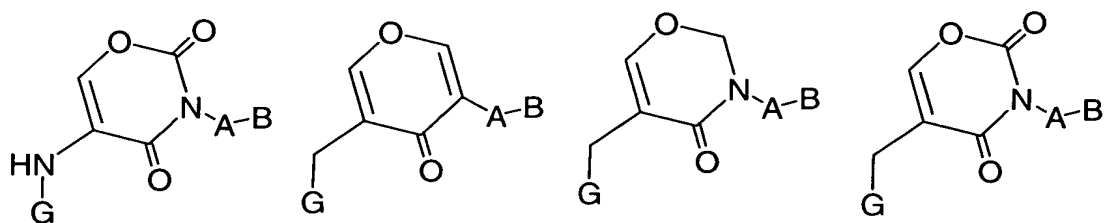
Table 1A

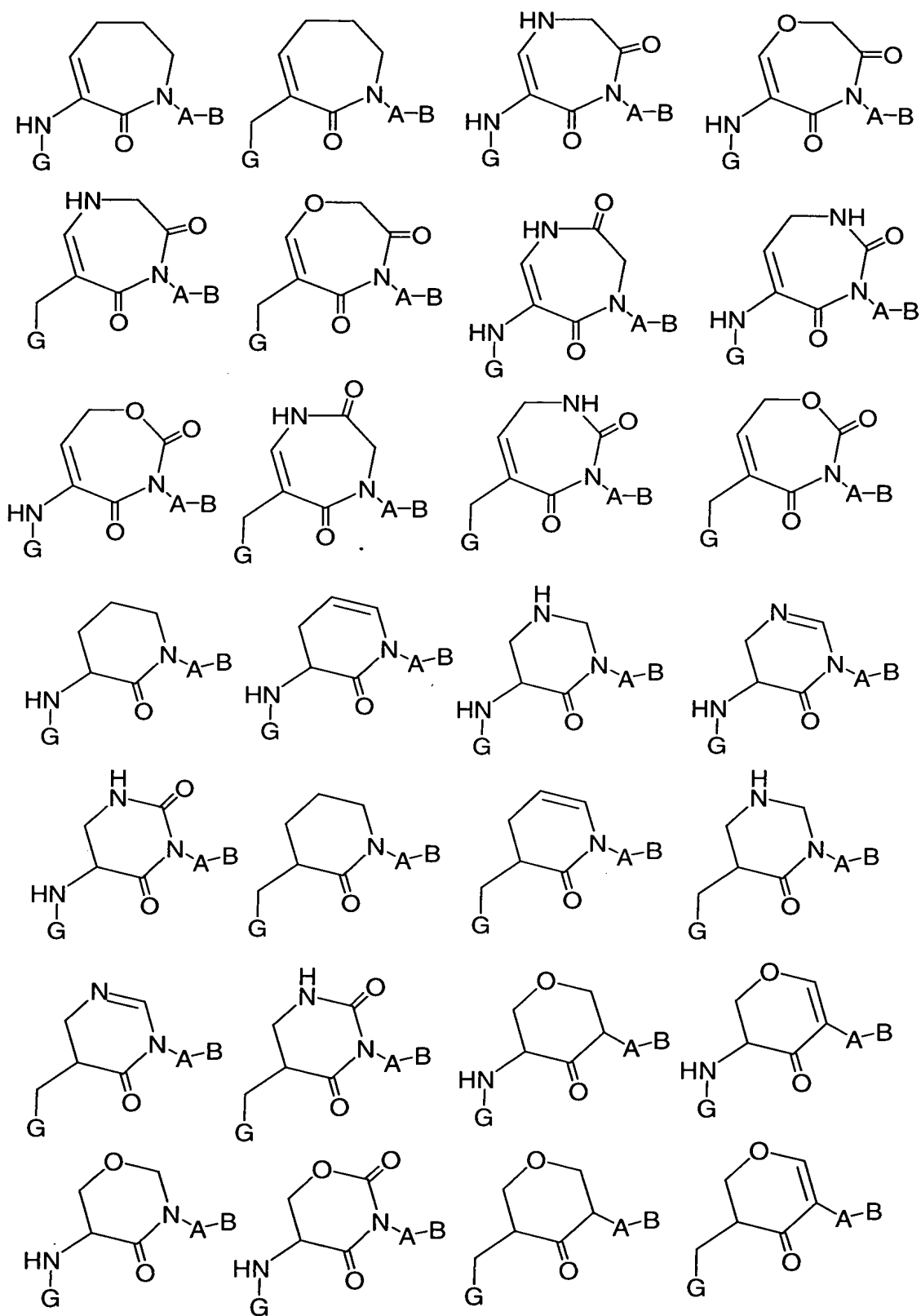


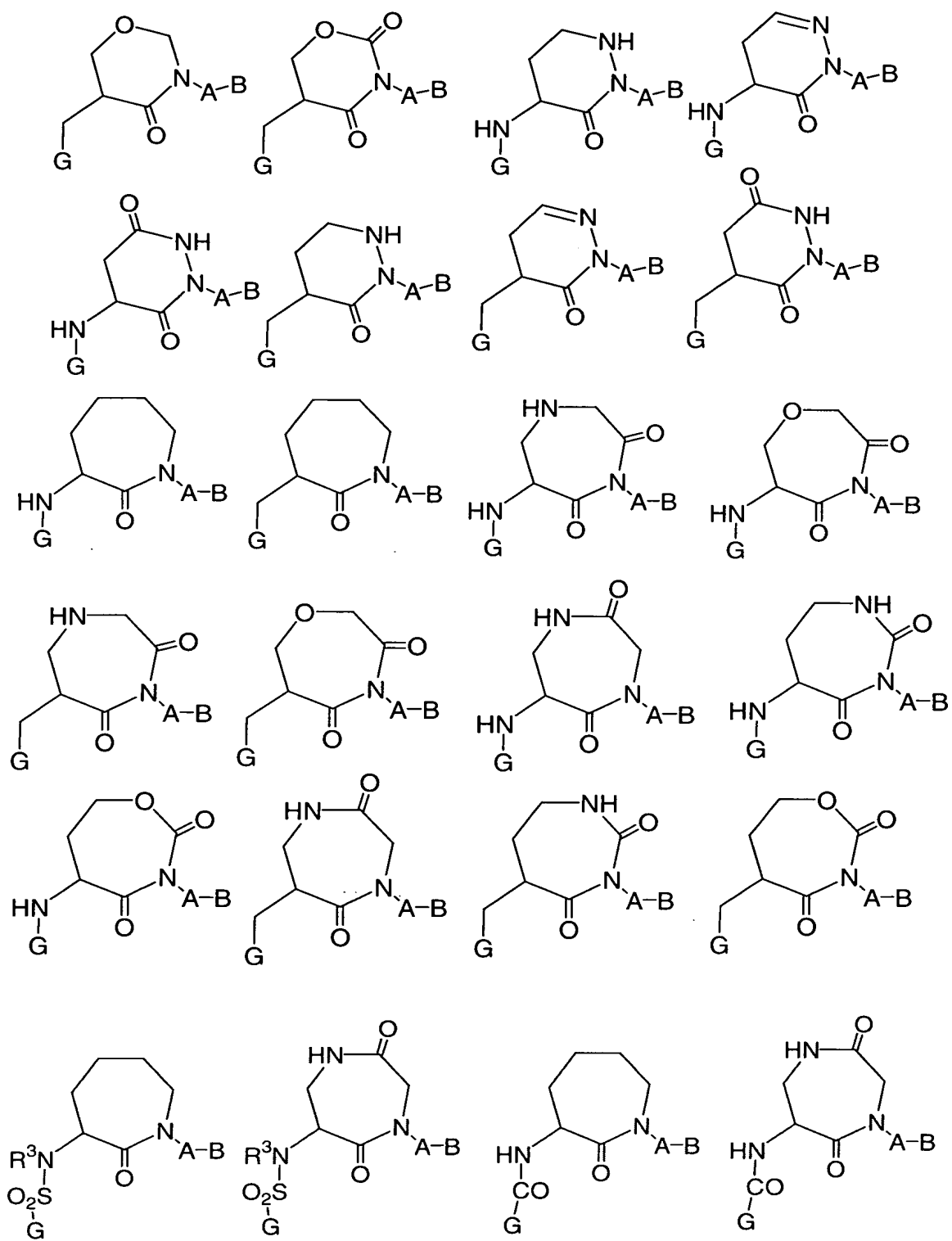
R<sup>3</sup> = H, Me, Et, benzyl, 2-pyridyl,  
3-pyridyl or 4-pyridyl



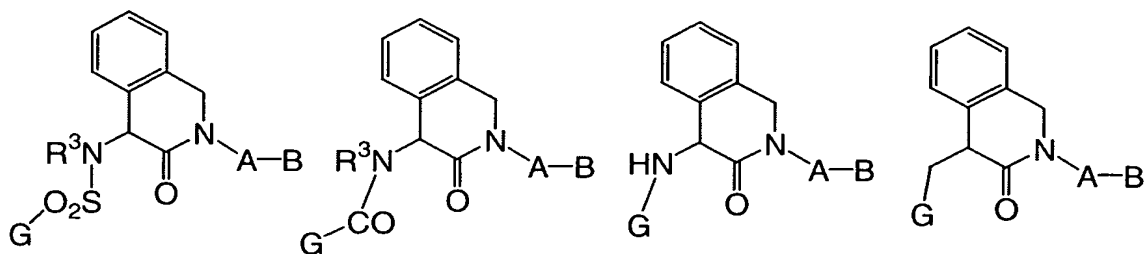
5



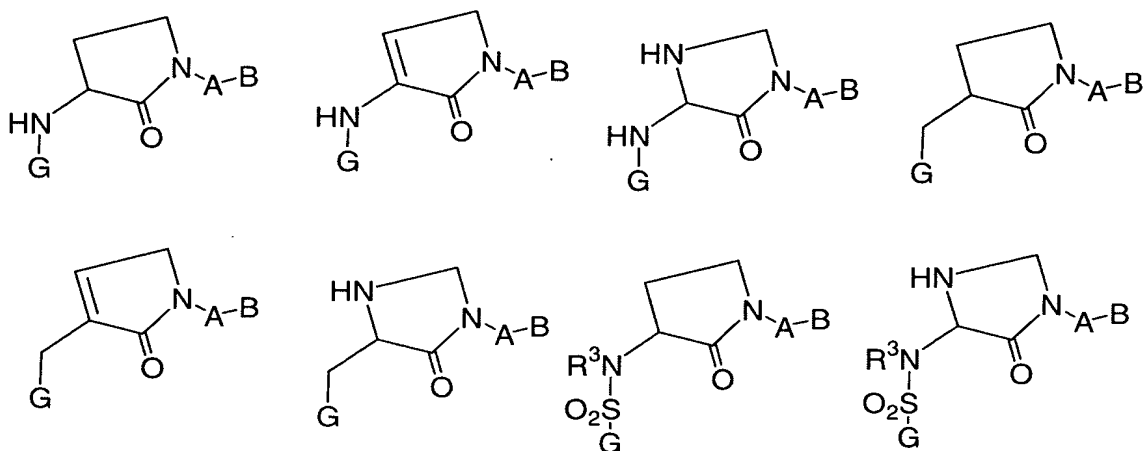




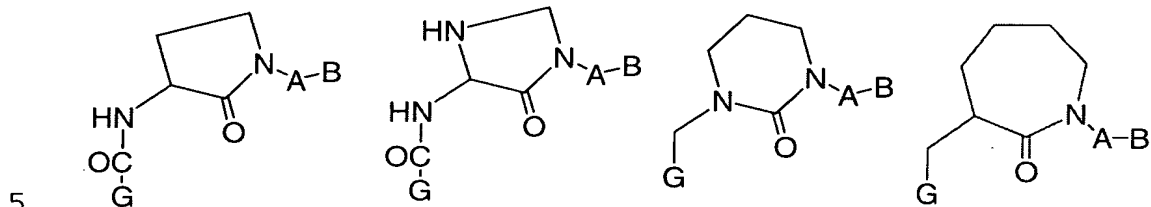
$R^3 = H, Me, Et, \text{benzyl}, 2\text{-pyridyl},$   
3-pyridyl or 4-pyridyl



$R^3 = \text{H, Me, Et, benzyl, 2-pyridyl, 3-pyridyl or 4-pyridyl}$



$R^3 = \text{H, Me, Et, benzyl, 2-pyridyl, 3-pyridyl or 4-pyridyl}$



G is 4-(methoxy)phenyl;

Ex#	A	B
10	1 phenyl	2-(aminosulfonyl)phenyl
	2 phenyl	2-(methylaminosulfonyl)phenyl
	3 phenyl	1-pyrrolidinocarbonyl
	4 phenyl	2-(methylsulfonyl)phenyl
	5 phenyl	2-(N,N-dimethylaminomethyl)phenyl

	6	phenyl	2-(N-pyrrolidinylmethyl)phenyl
	7	phenyl	1-methyl-2-imidazolyl
	8	phenyl	2-methyl-1-imidazolyl
	9	phenyl	2-(dimethylaminomethyl)-1-
5		imidazolyl	
	10	phenyl	2-(N-(cyclopropyl- methyl)aminomethyl)phenyl
	11	phenyl aminomethyl)phenyl	2-(N-(cyclobutyl)-
10	12	phenyl	2-(N-(cyclopentyl)- aminomethyl)phenyl
	13	phenyl	2-(N-(3-hydroxypyrrolidinyl)- methyl)phenyl
	14	2-pyridyl	2-(aminosulfonyl)phenyl
15	15	2-pyridyl	2-(methylaminosulfonyl)phenyl
	16	2-pyridyl	1-pyrrolidinocarbonyl
	17	2-pyridyl	2-(methylsulfonyl)phenyl
	18	2-pyridyl	2-(N,N-dimethylaminomethyl)phenyl
	19	2-pyridyl	2-(N-pyrrolidinylmethyl)phenyl
20	20	2-pyridyl	1-methyl-2-imidazolyl
	21	2-pyridyl	2-methyl-1-imidazolyl
	22	2-pyridyl imidazolyl	2-(dimethylaminomethyl)-1-
25	23	2-pyridyl	2-(N-(cyclopropyl- methyl)aminomethyl)phenyl
	24	2-pyridyl aminomethyl)phenyl	2-(N-(cyclobutyl)-
	25	2-pyridyl	2-(N-(cyclopentyl)- aminomethyl)phenyl
30	26	2-pyridyl	2-(N-(3-hydroxypyrrolidinyl)- methyl)phenyl
	27	3-pyridyl	2-(aminosulfonyl)phenyl
	28	3-pyridyl	2-(methylaminosulfonyl)phenyl
	29	3-pyridyl	1-pyrrolidinocarbonyl
35	30	3-pyridyl	2-(methylsulfonyl)phenyl

	31	3-pyridyl	2-(N,N-dimethylaminomethyl)phenyl
	32	3-pyridyl	2-(N-pyrrolidinylmethyl)phenyl
	33	3-pyridyl	1-methyl-2-imidazolyl
	34	3-pyridyl	2-methyl-1-imidazolyl
5	35	3-pyridyl imidazolyl	2-(dimethylaminomethyl)-1-
	36	3-pyridyl	2-(N-(cyclopropyl- methyl)aminomethyl)phenyl
	37	3-pyridyl	2-(N-(cyclobutyl)-
10		aminomethyl)phenyl	
	38	3-pyridyl	2-(N-(cyclopentyl)- aminomethyl)phenyl
	39	3-pyridyl	2-(N-(3-hydroxypyrrolidinyl)- methyl)phenyl
15	40	2-pyrimidyl	2-(aminosulfonyl)phenyl
	41	2-pyrimidyl	2-(methylaminosulfonyl)phenyl
	42	2-pyrimidyl	1-pyrrolidinocarbonyl
	43	2-pyrimidyl	2-(methylsulfonyl)phenyl
	44	2-pyrimidyl	2-(N,N-dimethylaminomethyl)phenyl
20	45	2-pyrimidyl	2-(N-pyrrolidinylmethyl)phenyl
	46	2-pyrimidyl	1-methyl-2-imidazolyl
	47	2-pyrimidyl	2-methyl-1-imidazolyl
	48	2-pyrimidyl imidazolyl	2-(dimethylaminomethyl)-1-
25	49	2-pyrimidyl	2-(N-(cyclopropyl- methyl)aminomethyl)phenyl
	50	2-pyrimidyl aminomethyl)phenyl	2-(N-(cyclobutyl)-
	51	2-pyrimidyl	2-(N-(cyclopentyl)- aminomethyl)phenyl
30	52	2-pyrimidyl	2-(N-(3-hydroxypyrrolidinyl)- methyl)phenyl
	53	5-pyrimidyl	2-(aminosulfonyl)phenyl
	54	5-pyrimidyl	2-(methylaminosulfonyl)phenyl
35	55	5-pyrimidyl	1-pyrrolidinocarbonyl



	56	5-pyrimidyl	2-(methylsulfonyl)phenyl
	57	5-pyrimidyl	2-(N,N-dimethylaminomethyl)phenyl
	58	5-pyrimidyl	2-(N-pyrrolidinylmethyl)phenyl
	59	5-pyrimidyl	1-methyl-2-imidazolyl
5	60	5-pyrimidyl	2-methyl-1-imidazolyl
	61	5-pyrimidyl imidazolyl	2-(dimethylaminomethyl)-1-
	62	5-pyrimidyl	2-(N-(cyclopropyl- methyl)aminomethyl)phenyl
10	63	5-pyrimidyl, aminomethyl)phenyl	2-(N-(cyclobutyl)-
	64	5-pyrimidyl	2-(N-(cyclopentyl)- aminomethyl)phenyl
15	65	5-pyrimidyl	2-(N-(3-hydroxypyrrolidinyl)- methyl)phenyl
	66	2-Cl-phenyl	2-(aminosulfonyl)phenyl
	67	2-Cl-phenyl	2-(methylaminosulfonyl)phenyl
	68	2-Cl-phenyl	1-pyrrolidinocarbonyl
	69	2-Cl-phenyl	2-(methylsulfonyl)phenyl
20	70	2-Cl-phenyl	2-(N,N-dimethylaminomethyl)phenyl
	71	2-Cl-phenyl	2-(N-pyrrolidinylmethyl)phenyl
	72	2-Cl-phenyl	1-methyl-2-imidazolyl
	73	2-Cl-phenyl	2-methyl-1-imidazolyl
	74	2-Cl-phenyl	2-(dimethylaminomethyl)-1-
25		imidazolyl	
	75	2-Cl-phenyl	2-(N-(cyclopropyl- methyl)aminomethyl)phenyl
	76	2-Cl-phenyl aminomethyl)phenyl	2-(N-(cyclobutyl)-
30	77	2-Cl-phenyl	2-(N-(cyclopentyl)- aminomethyl)phenyl
	78	2-Cl-phenyl	2-(N-(3-hydroxypyrrolidinyl)- methyl)phenyl
	79	2-F-phenyl	2-(aminosulfonyl)phenyl
35	80	2-F-phenyl	2-(methylaminosulfonyl)phenyl

	81	2-F-phenyl	1-pyrrolidinocarbonyl
	82	2-F-phenyl	2-(methylsulfonyl)phenyl
	83	2-F-phenyl	2-(N,N-dimethylaminomethyl)phenyl
	84	2-F-phenyl	2-(N-pyrrolidinylmethyl)phenyl
5	85	2-F-phenyl	1-methyl-2-imidazolyl
	86	2-F-phenyl	2-methyl-1-imidazolyl
	87	2-F-phenyl	2-(dimethylaminomethyl)-1-imidazolyl
10	88	2-F-phenyl	2-(N-(cyclopropyl-methyl)aminomethyl)phenyl
	89	2-F-phenyl aminomethyl)phenyl	2-(N-(cyclobutyl)-aminomethyl)phenyl
	90	2-F-phenyl	2-(N-(cyclopentyl)-aminomethyl)phenyl
15	91	2-F-phenyl	2-(N-(3-hydroxypyrrolidinyl)-methyl)phenyl
	92	2,6-diF-phenyl	2-(aminosulfonyl)phenyl
	93	2,6-diF-phenyl	2-(methylaminosulfonyl)phenyl
	94	2,6-diF-phenyl	1-pyrrolidinocarbonyl
20	95	2,6-diF-phenyl	2-(methylsulfonyl)phenyl
	96	2,6-diF-phenyl	2-(N,N-dimethylaminomethyl)phenyl
	97	2,6-diF-phenyl	2-(N-pyrrolidinylmethyl)phenyl
	98	2,6-diF-phenyl	1-methyl-2-imidazolyl
	99	2,6-diF-phenyl	2-methyl-1-imidazolyl
25	100	2,6-diF-phenyl imidazolyl	2-(dimethylaminomethyl)-1-imidazolyl
	101	2,6-diF-phenyl	2-(N-(cyclopropyl-methyl)aminomethyl)phenyl
30	102	2,6-diF-phenyl aminomethyl)phenyl	2-(N-(cyclobutyl)-aminomethyl)phenyl
	103	2,6-diF-phenyl	2-(N-(cyclopentyl)-aminomethyl)phenyl
	104	2,6-diF-phenyl	2-(N-(3-hydroxypyrrolidinyl)-methyl)phenyl
35	105	4-piperidinyl	2-(aminosulfonyl)phenyl

	106	4-piperidinyl	2-(methyaminosulfonyl)phenyl
	107	4-piperidinyl	1-pyrrolidinocarbonyl
	108	4-piperidinyl	2-(methylsulfonyl)phenyl
	109	4-piperidinyl	2-(N,N-dimethylaminomethyl)phenyl
5	110	4-piperidinyl	2-(N-pyrrolidinylmethyl)phenyl
	111	4-piperidinyl	1-methyl-2-imidazolyl
	112	4-piperidinyl	2-methyl-1-imidazolyl
	113	4-piperidinyl	2-(dimethylaminomethyl)-1-imidazolyl
10	114	4-piperidinyl	2-(N-(cyclopropyl-methyl)aminomethyl)phenyl
	115	4-piperidinyl	2-(N-(cyclobutyl)-aminomethyl)phenyl
	116	4-piperidinyl	2-(N-(cyclopentyl)-aminomethyl)phenyl
15	117	4-piperidinyl	2-(N-(3-hydroxypyrrolidinyl)-methyl)phenyl

Examples 118-3042 use the corresponding A and B groups from Examples 1-117 and the recited G group.

Examples 118-234, G is 2-(aminomethyl)phenyl;

Examples 234-351, G is 3-(aminomethyl)phenyl;

Examples 352-468, G is 2-(aminomethyl)-3-fluorophenyl;

25 Examples 469-585, G is 2-(aminomethyl)-4-fluorophenyl;

Examples 586-702, G is 2-(aminomethyl)-5-fluorophenyl;

30 Examples 703-819, G is 2-(aminomethyl)-6-fluorophenyl;

Examples 820-936, G is 3-amino-phthalazin-5-yl;

Examples 937-1053, G is 3-amino-phthalazin-6-yl;

Examples 1054-1170, G is 1-aminoisoquinolin-6-yl;

Examples 1171-1287, G is 1-aminoisoquinolin-7-yl;

35 Examples 1288-1404, G is 4-aminoquinazol-6-yl;

Examples 1405-1521, G is 4-aminoquinazol-7-yl;  
Examples 1522-1638, G is 3-aminobenzisoxazol-5-yl;  
Examples 1639-1755, G is 3-aminobenzisoxazol-6-yl;  
Examples 1756-1872, G is 3-aminoisobenzazol-5-yl;  
5 Examples 1873-1989, G is 3-aminoisobenzazol-6-yl;  
Examples 1990-2106, G is 4-chlorophenyl;  
Examples 2223-2340, G is 6-chloronaphthyl;  
Examples 2341-2457, G is 5-chloronaphthyl;  
Examples 2457-2574, G is 5-chloro-2-thienyl;  
10 Examples 2575-2691, G is 4-fluorophenyl;  
Examples 2692-2808, G is 3,4-difluorophenyl;  
Examples 2809-2925, G is 3,5-dichloro-thienyl;  
Examples 2926-3042, G is 4-ethyl-phenyl;

15 Numerous modifications and variations of the present invention are possible in light of the above teachings. It is therefore to be understood that within the scope of the appended claims, the invention may be practiced otherwise than as specifically described herein.